



imagePROGRAF W6400 User's Guide

Quick Menu

- » Loading Roll Media
- » Unexpected Printing Results
- » Handling Jams
- » Responding to Error Messages
- » When Ink Runs Out
- » List of Operation Panel Settings
- » Printer Driver

Chapter 1 Basic Procedures

Chapter 2 Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3 Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4 Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6 Troubleshooting

Chapter 7 Operation of the Function Menus

» imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide

[Windows](#) [Macintosh](#)

» imagePROGRAF HDI Driver Guide

[Windows](#)

» Media Configuration Tool Guide

[Windows](#) [Macintosh](#)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

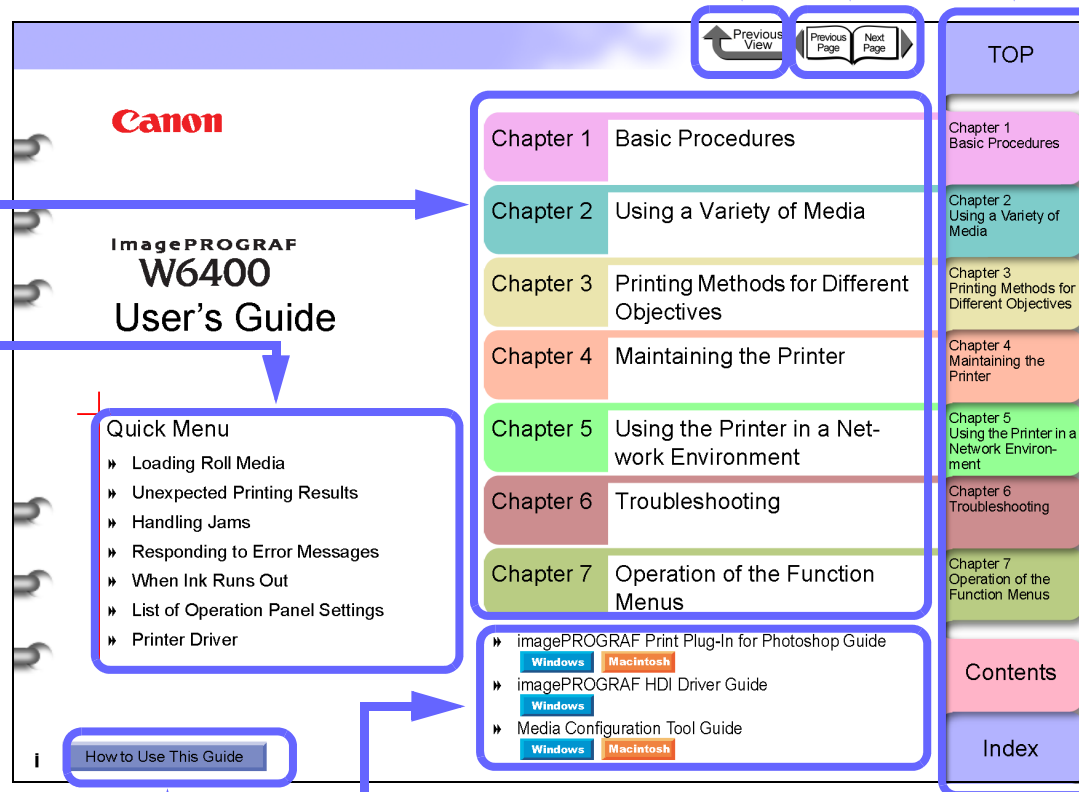
How to Use This Guide

How to Use the Top Page

- Move to top page, chapter contents pages, contents pages, and indexed pages.
- Move to the previous/next page.
- Return to the previous screen.

- Move to each chapter contents page.
- Move to frequently used topics.

- Move to the page that describes how to use this guide.



- **Windows** **Macintosh** Click either button to browse each item of the solutions manual for the selected operating system.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

How to Use the Chapter Contents Pages

- Move to top page, chapter contents pages, contents pages, and indexed pages.
- Move to the previous/next page.
- Return to the previous screen.

- Click the contents page to move to the topic pages.

- Click on the checkbox, then click the **Start Print** button to print the pages of the selected topics. The print job starts immediately after you click the **Start Print** button.

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents

<input type="checkbox"/>	Before Using the Printer	5-2
	Required System Environment	5-2
	The Network Environment	5-3
<input type="checkbox"/>	TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)	5-5
	Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network	5-5
	Connecting the LAN Cable	5-5
	Setting the Printer IP Address	5-7
	Performing the TCP/IP Protocol Settings	5-15
	Setting the Printer for Sharing	5-18
<input type="checkbox"/>	Macintosh Network Settings	5-20
	Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network	5-20
	Setting a Macintosh	5-21
	Setting AppleTalk Protocol	5-25
	Install the Printer Driver	5-31
<input type="checkbox"/>	NetWare Settings (Windows)	5-33
	Procedures Required for a NetWare Network	5-33
	Setting the Printer Frame Type	5-34
	Setting Up a NetWare Print Service	5-37
	Setting NetWare Protocol	5-40
	Setting the Computer for NetWare	5-44
<input type="checkbox"/>	Printing with UNIX	5-45
	Using LPD to Print	5-45
	Using FTP to Print	5-46
<input type="checkbox"/>	Initializing the Settings	5-47
<input type="checkbox"/>	List of Network Settings	5-48
<input type="checkbox"/>	Software Applications that can be used for Network Settings	5-51

How to Use the Chapter Contents Pages

Start Print → Before clicking the Start Print button

Navigation buttons: Previous View, Previous Page, Next Page, TOP, Contents, Index

Important

- Clicking the **Start Print** button begins printing on the printer specified in **Set as Default Printer**. We recommend that you specify the printer you want to print on in **Set as Default Printer** and print on A4 size plain paper.

• Other
Click on blue text to move to the referenced pages.

- Chapter 1 Basic Procedures
- Chapter 2 Using a Variety of Media
- Chapter 3 Printing Methods for Different Objectives
- Chapter 4 Maintaining the Printer
- Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment
- Chapter 6 Troubleshooting
- Chapter 7 Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 1 Basic Procedures

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Printer Part Names	1-2
Printer Main Unit	1-2
Switching the Printer On and Off	1-7
Switching the Printer On	1-7
Switching the Printer Off	1-8
Online and Offline	1-9
What's On the Operation Panel?	1-11
Viewing the Display	1-11
Using the Operation Panel Buttons	1-12
Reading Operation Panel Lamps	1-14
Function Menus	1-15
How to Perform Function Menu Settings	1-17
Menu Settings Summary Tables	1-19
Printer Driver	1-32
Printer Driver Features	1-32
Main Sheet	1-35
Page Setup Sheet	1-37
Layout Sheet	1-38
Maintenance Sheet	1-39
Printing	1-40
Printing From Windows	1-40
Printing from a Macintosh	1-42
Canceling a Print Job	1-46
Canceling a Print Job from Windows	1-46
Canceling a Print Job from Macintosh	1-47
Options	1-52
Consumables	1-53
Specifications	1-56
Basic Environmental Performance	1-59

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

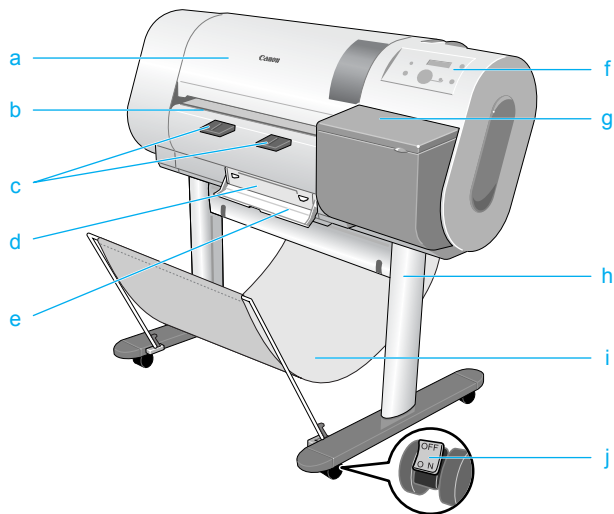
Contents

Index

Printer Part Names

Printer Main Unit

■ Front View



- a Upper cover
Remove this cover to install the printhead, to load media, or to remove sheets of paper jammed in the printer.
(→ [P.4-11](#), [P.6-35](#))
- b Cutting groove
When you cut the media manually, the cut is done along this groove.
- c Output assist guides
Guides the media output and keeps it from floating out of position. Pull this guide out before printing.

- d Maintenance Cartridge
The cartridge that vacuums and collects excess ink. When you see the message prompt that tells you to replace the maintenance cartridge, replace the cartridge.
(→ [P.4-16](#))
- e Maintenance cartridge cover
Open this cover to replace the maintenance cartridge.
(→ [P.4-16](#))
- f Operation panel
Provides the display panel and the operation panel buttons. For more details, please refer to “[Using the Operation Panel Buttons](#)” (→ [P.1-12](#)).
- g Right cover
Open to replace ink tanks.
- h Stand (optional outside the U.S.A.)
This is a table designed specially for this printer. Casters are attached to the legs to make it easy to move.
- i Output stacker (provided with optional stand)
A cloth tray that catches print media ejected from the printer.
- j Stopper
The part that locks the casters of the printer stand.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

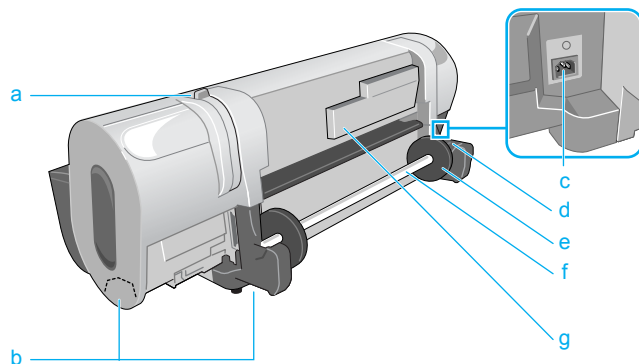
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

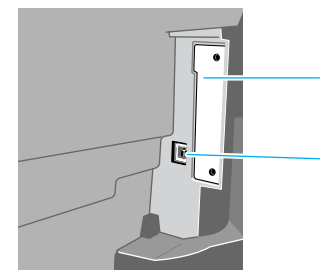
Index

■ Back View



- a Release lever
The lever that releases the media. Push this lever toward the back to release pressure when you load media, when you need to shift the paper manually, or when you must clean inside the printer.
- b Lift handles
Grasp the handles provided on the left and right side to lift or move the printer.
- c Power connector
Provides a connection point for the printer power cord.
- d Roll holder slot
This groove guides the roll holder. (→ [P.2-26](#))
- e Holder stopper
The part that fastens the roll media to the roll holder. (→ [P.2-26](#))
- f Roll holder
The holder where the roll media is loaded. (→ [P.2-26](#))
- g Accessory pocket
Holds the printer instructions, tools for assembly, and extra ink tanks.

■ Interface connection point on the back



- a Expansion board slot
Provided for network interface or IEEE1394 expansion board. Remove the two screws and insert the board. (→ Quick Start Guide)
- b USB port
This is the communication port for USB 2.0 Hi-Speed. Connect the USB cable here to connect the printer to the computer via USB. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

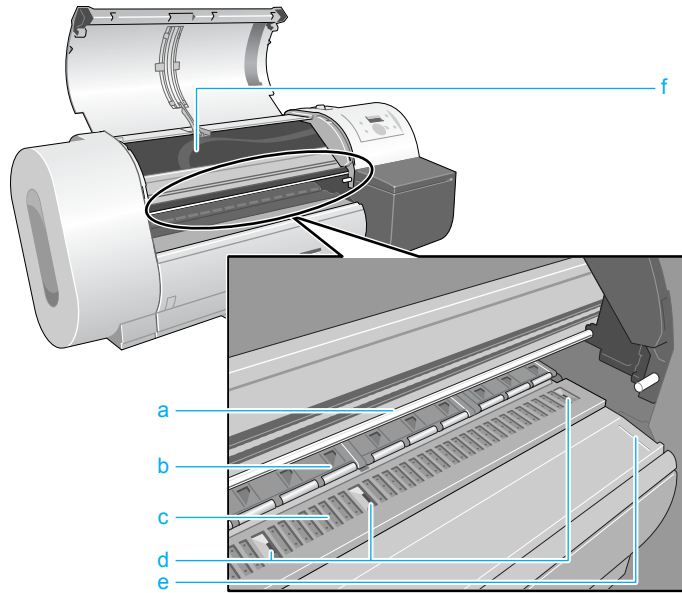
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Inside the Upper Cover



f Upper cover stopper

This arm prevents the upper cover from falling. To close the upper cover, just lift and hold the stopper up then close the upper cover.

a Carriage rail

The carriage moves on this rail.

b Paper restraint

An important part for paper feed. The plate keeps the paper straight in the paper path.

c Platen

The printhead moves across the platen when it prints. A suction port is provided on the front surface to prevent the media from floating out of position.

d Borderless print ink groove

Receives ink that drains from the edges of the media during borderless printing.

e Media guideline

Media is set so it is parallel to this guideline when roll media is loaded. (→ [P.2-26](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

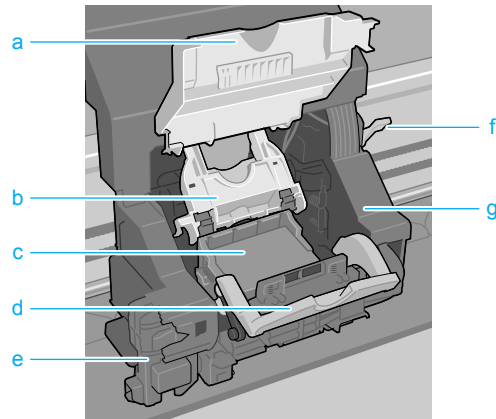
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Carriage (Inside Upper Cover)



a Carriage cover

This cover protects the carriage. Open this cover to replace the printhead. (→ [P.4-23](#))

b Printhead lock cover

This cover locks and holds the printhead in place. Raise this cover to release the printhead lock. (→ [P.4-26](#))

c Replaceable Printhead

The major component equipped with the print nozzles. The printer is shipped without the printhead installed; you must install the printhead after unpacking the printer. (→ Quick Start Guide)

d Printhead lock lever

This is the lever that locks the printhead lock cover. Open this lever to open the printhead cover. (→ [P.4-26](#))

e Cutter Blade

The cutter unit that cuts print media automatically. (→ [P.4-29](#))

f Printhead height adjustment lever

Use to adjust the height of the printhead. You will need to adjust the height of the printhead for high quality printing, or depending on the media you use. (→ [P.2-40](#))

g Carriage

The important part that moves the printhead during printing.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

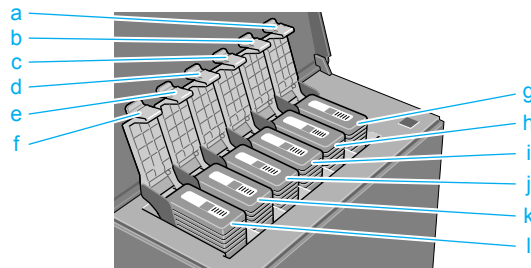
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Inside the Right Front Cover



a Y Ink Tank Cover

b M Ink Tank Cover

c PM Ink Tank Cover

d C Ink Tank Cover

e PC Ink Tank Cover

f Bk/MBk Ink Tank Covers

These covers lock and protect the ink tanks. Open this cover to replace an ink tank.

g Y Ink Tank

h M Ink Tank

i PM Ink Tank

j C Ink Tank

k PC Ink Tank

l Bk/MBk Ink Tanks

These are the ink tanks. The ink tanks are not installed in the printer when you unpack it; you must install them when you set up the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Switching the Printer On and Off

Follow the procedure below to switch the printer on and off.

 Note

- Now we will show you examples of how to use the printer for normal operations after it has been set up. If you are not finished setting up the printer, first follow the instructions in the Quick Start Guide to confirm the setup and operation of the printer.
- If the printer is connected to a Macintosh computer via a USB cable and the computer has been shut down, when the printer is switched on the computer may also switch on. If this occurs disconnect the USB cable. (You may be able to solve the problem by connecting the printer and Macintosh via a USB hub.)

Switching the Printer On

Switch on the printer before you execute a print job from the computer.

- 1 Press the **Power** button.



Processing to prepare the printer starts after the **Online** lamp and **Message** lamp start flashing. After preparation processing is completed and media is loaded, the **Online** lamp light, and the printer is ready to print.



If no print media is loaded in the printer when the printer is switched on, **Offline** is displayed and the printer waits for you to load media in the printer.



If the **Message** lamp is flashing, read the message on the printer operation display and take the appropriate action. [“Responding to Error Messages”](#) (→ [P.6-2](#))

If the display or **Online** lamp do not light, check the power cord connections at the printer and the power supply and make sure that they are secure. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Switching the Printer Off

When you are finished using the printer, follow this procedure to switch the printer off.

Important

- Never switch the printer off, and never unplug its power cord during a print job. This could damage the printer.
- Remove the roll from the printer if you do not intend to print from the roll for a long period. Leaving the roll media at the standby position for an extended period could cause poor feeding.

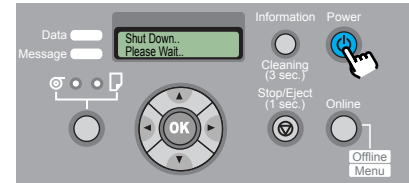
- 1 Look at the display and confirm that a print job is not in progress.



If you see an error message displayed, follow the procedure to correct the problem, and make sure the print job has completed.

If a print job is in progress, wait for the print job to complete before switching off the printer.

- 2 Press and hold down the **Power** button until you see **Shut Down..** in the display then release the button.



Please Wait.. is displayed for a few seconds, then the printer goes off.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Online and Offline

■ When the Printer Is Operating

This printer has three operation modes: online, offline and menu mode. Each mode is described below.

- Online mode

The printer immediately processes a print job sent from the computer.

- Offline mode

The printer receives a job from the computer but the job is held in the standby status without processing it. While the printer is offline, you can load or cut media manually, access the carriage, and perform other procedures.

The printer also goes offline automatically any time the printer cannot start processing a print job, such as when there is no print media loaded, when an error occurs, and so on.

- Menu mode

The menu mode displays the function menus on the printer display. Press the buttons on the operation panel to set or execute the functions in the menus. Like the offline mode, this mode places all jobs in standby status.



Note

- Use the **Use Power Save** and **Sleep Timer** settings on the printer operation panel to set the sleep mode on/off timing. When **Use Power Save** is set **On**, you can use the **Sleep Timer** to set the length of time until the printer enters sleep mode. (→ P.1-28)
- If the printer remains idle for more than 15 minutes with the cover closed (if no print jobs are received or if no operation panel buttons are pressed), the printer automatically enters the sleep mode to conserve energy. Only the **Online** lamp remains on while the printer is in the sleep mode; the display and other lamps remain off. The printer awakens from the sleep mode as soon as it receives a print job or if you press any button on the operation panel. The printer requires about 5 seconds to recover from the sleep mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

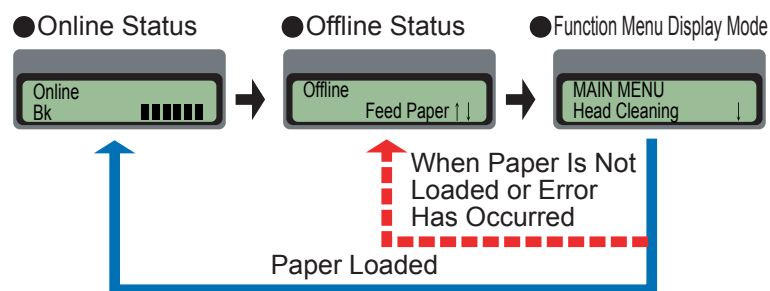
Index

■ How to Switch Modes

Press the **Online** button to switch the operation mode.

- 1 Press the **Online** button then select the operation mode.

Every time you press the **Online** button, the mode selection changes in this order: **Online** > **Offline** > **MAIN MENU**.



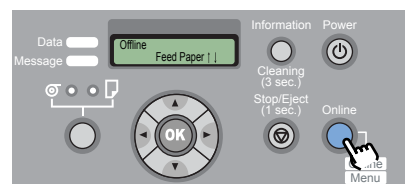
● Online mode



With **Online** displayed on the operation panel, the **Online** lamp lights.

If no media is loaded, or if a message is displayed on the operation panel, the printer will not enter the online mode even when you press the **Online** button. Every time you remove the cause of a printer error, the printer will automatically enter the online mode.

● Offline Mode



With **Offline** displayed on the operation panel, the **Online** lamp goes off.

● Menu mode



While **MAIN MENU** is displayed on the operation panel, you can use the arrow keys ([◀] [▶] [▲] [▼]) and the **OK** key to operate the function menus.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

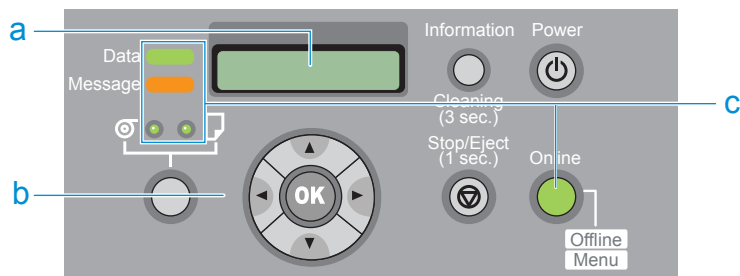
Contents

Index

What's On the Operation Panel?

The printer operation panel of this printer provides a display (a), 10 buttons (b) and 5 lamps (c).

- “Viewing the Display” (→ P.1-11)
- “Using the Operation Panel Buttons” (→ P.1-12)
- “Reading Operation Panel Lamps” (→ P.1-14)

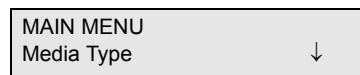


■ Print Job Processing



- Line 1:
The first line of the display indicates the current processing status of the printer.
- Line 2:
Displays the job name and other information.

■ Function Menu mode



- Line 1:
Displays the name of the menu and menu items.
- Line 2:
Displays each item for selection on the menu. A right arrow at the right end of the line indicates that there are more items. A down arrow at the right end of the line indicates that there are more sublevels. When both cases exist, you will see a down arrow and right arrow displaying alternately.



- For more details about the function menus, please refer to “How to Perform Function Menu Settings” (→ P.1-17)

Viewing the Display

The display indicates the current status of the printer.

■ Standby



- Line 1:
The first line of the display indicates the current operating status of the printer.
- Line 2:
The abbreviation for the currently installed black ink tank (Bk for Photo Black Ink, MBk for Matte Black Ink) is displayed at the left. (→ P.2-2)
The level of the ink supply in each ink tank is displayed in the center, and the remaining capacity of the maintenance cartridge is displayed at the right.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

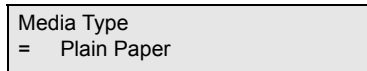
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Current Selection

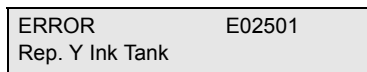


- **Line 1:**
Displays the items on the menu.
- **Line 2:**
Displays the item or value of the setting.
A setting prefixed with an equals sign (=) indicates the current selection.

Note

- For more details about the function menus, please refer to [“How to Perform Function Menu Settings”](#) (→ P.1-17)

■ Message Display



Printing stops and the Message lamp starts flashing when the printer requires servicing. Perform the appropriate procedure when this occurs.

In some cases you can continue printing once a message notifies you that the printer needs servicing. When the Message lamp lights, press any button to extinguish the lamp and the message.

Note

- For more details about what to do when an error message appears, see [Chapter 6 “Responding to Error Messages”](#) (→ P.6-2).

Using the Operation Panel Buttons

The buttons on the operation panel are used for the functions described below.



- a **Power** button
Press this button to switch the printer on and off.
- **Printer off:**
Press to switch the printer on.
 - **Printer on:**
Press for at least 1 second to display **Shut Down..** and switch the printer off.
- b **Online** button
Press this button to switch printer offline and online and the menu display.
- **Printer online:**
Press to switch the printer to offline.
 - **Printer offline:**
Press to switch the menu display.
 - **Menu display:**
Cancels the menu operation mode and switches to the online mode. Also temporarily suspends a maintenance cartridge error so you can switch the printer to online mode after a maintenance cartridge error displays. However, you cannot switch to the online mode when other messages are displayed or when paper is not set.
 - **Job processing:**
Puts the printer in the pause mode. The current print job pauses temporarily.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

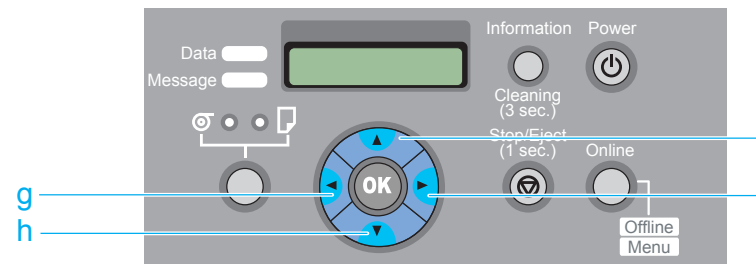
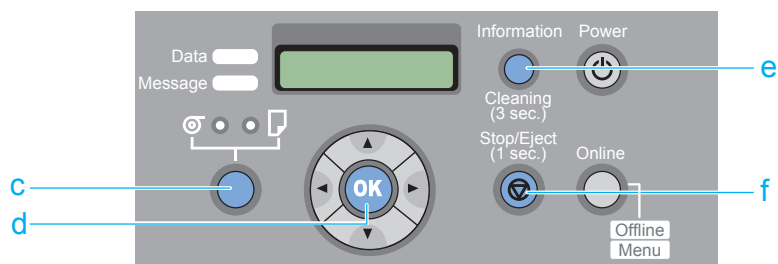
Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index



c Paper Source button

● Online, Offline, Menu Display Status:

Press and hold for 1 second or more to switch between Roll Media and Cut Sheet as the feed source. However, this switching cannot be performed if the upper cover, right cover, or release lever is open.

d OK button

● Setting value display:

Selects the value or setting, or executes the function, currently displayed on the operation panel.

e Information button

Displays the submenus. The information about ink, the maintenance cartridge, media, and printhead height, printhead service life, and parts service life displays in a prescribed order on a rolling display. Pressing and holding this button for 3 seconds also starts **Head Cleaning A.** (→ P.4-38)

The length of the media remaining also displays if the function that checks the amount of media remaining on the roll is switched on.

f Stop/Eject button

● Online, Offline, Menu Display Status:

Press and hold for over 1 second to cancel printing, ink drying, or eject the media.

● Pause Status:

Press and hold for over 1 seconds to cancel a paused job and eject the media.

g [◀] button

● Printer offline:

Press and hold for 1 second to move the carriage to the center of the platen.

● Menu display:

Operates as a function select button to display the previous candidate (menu item or value) for selection.

h [▼] button

● Printer offline:

Does manual feeding from the roll automatically when you are using the roll as the feed source.

● Menu display:

Press this button to open the next menu level below.

i [▲] button

● Printer offline:

Manually reverse feeds paper onto the roll.

● Menu display:

Press to return one level up and display the previous menu item.

j [▶] button

● Printer offline:

Press and hold for 1 second to move the carriage to the center of the platen.

● Menu display:

Operates as a scroll button to display the next candidate (menu item and value) for selection.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

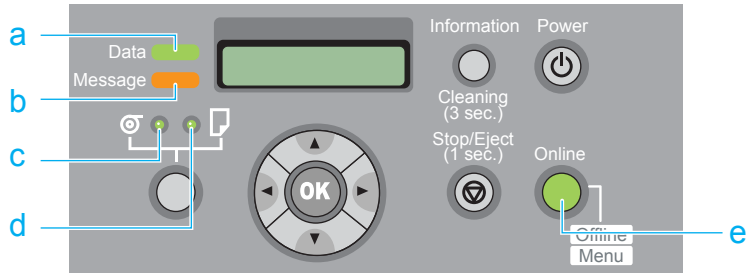
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Reading Operation Panel Lamps

The lamps on the operation panel indicate the following states.



a Data lamp

- **Flashing:**

The printer is printing, receiving or processing a print job.

When the printer is not printing, this indicates that a job has been stopped and the printer is in the pause mode, the printer has received data that it cannot process, or the firmware is being updated.

- **Off:**

There are no jobs in the printer.

b Message lamp

- **On:**

A warning is displayed on the operation panel.

- **Flashing:**

An error has occurred.

- **Off:**

The printer is operating normally, or the printer is switched off.

c Roll Media lamp

- **On:**

Roll media is selected as the paper source.

d Cut Sheet lamp

- **On:**

Cut sheet is selected as the paper source.

e Online lamp

- **On:**

The printer is online or the printer is processing a print job or sleeping.

- **Off:**

The printer is offline or in pause mode, in menu display mode, is initializing immediately after power on, or has been switched off.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Function Menu

You can use the operation panel to access and use all the functions built into the printer. You can use the menus to perform system settings, set up options, clean the printhead, perform test prints and other functions. You can press the **Information** button at any time to view the submenus and read information about the ink levels, media, and height of the printhead.

■ Printer Function Priorities

The settings done on the printer operation panel reset all the default settings and are applied to all print jobs. However, if the same settings are done with the printer driver then the printer driver settings have priority when print jobs are executed.

■ Function Menu Flow Summaries

The following illustration shows you how the items of the function menus are organized. Press [◀] or [▶] to display the next item, press [▼] to display the next level below, or press [▲] to return to the previous level. You can also press the **OK** button to enter the settings for each menu item.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

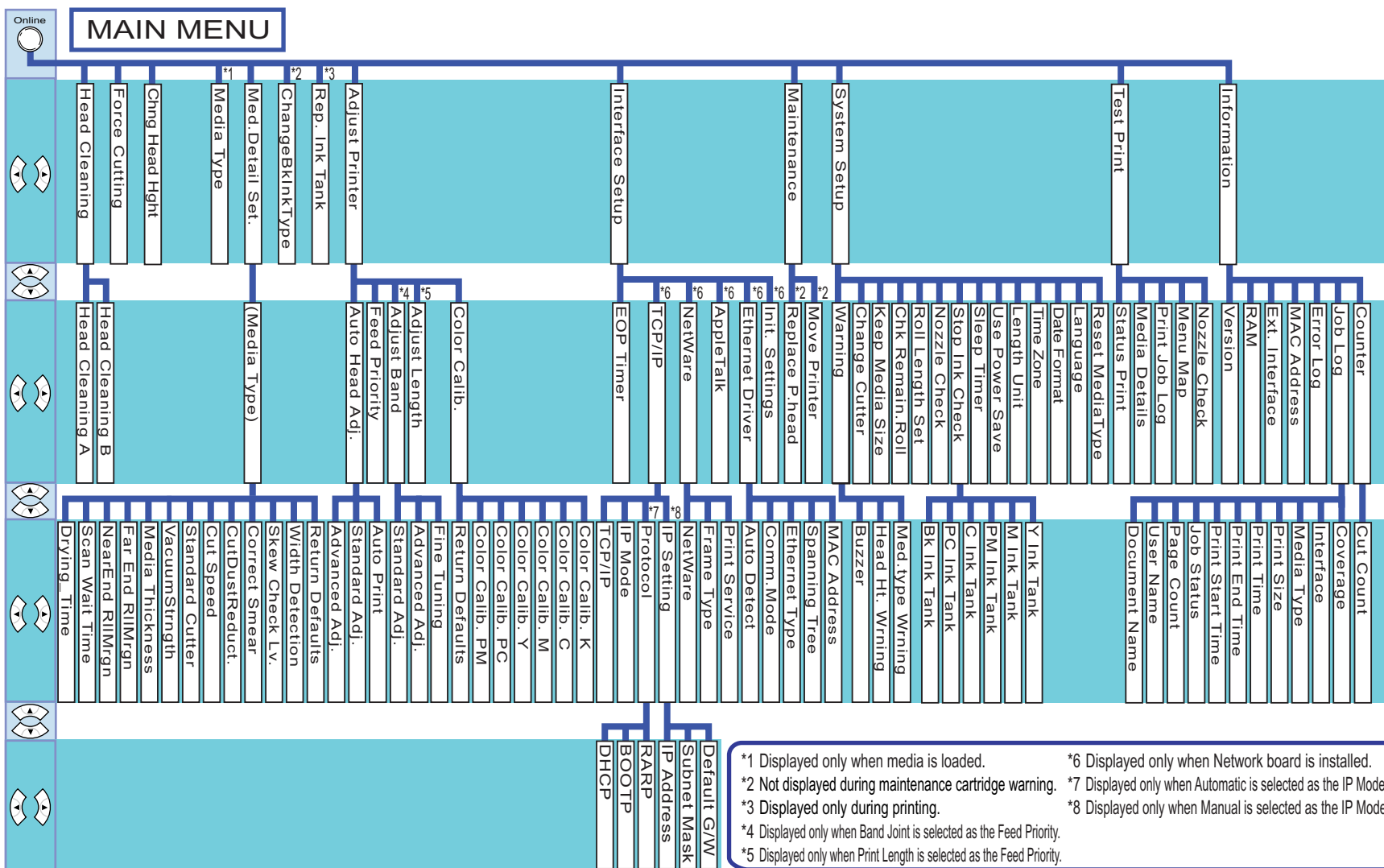
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

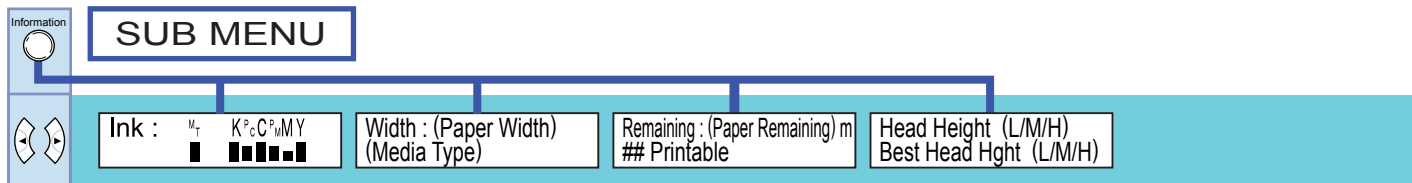
Contents

Index

● MAIN MENU



● Sub Menu (Information Button)



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

How to Perform Function Menu Settings

When you do the function menu settings, press **Online** to display the menus, then use the [◀], [▶], [▼], [▲], and **OK** buttons to operate the menus.

■ Making Settings

Here we will show you how set the sleep timer as an example of how to use the operation panel buttons.



Note

- Confirm that **Use Power Save** is switched on. The sleep timer cannot be set while **Use Power Save** is switched off.

- 1 If the printer is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

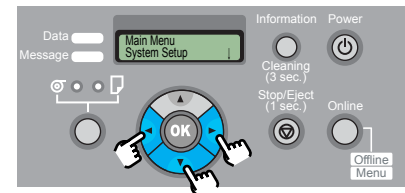
After a few seconds **Online** is displayed in the operation panel and the **Online** lamp lights.



- 2 Press the **Online** button then select **MAIN MENU**.

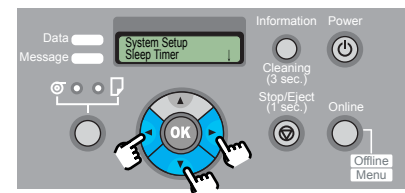


- 3 Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select **System Setup** then press [▼].



The next level of the menu is displayed.

- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Sleep Timer** then press [▼].



The setting value for the selected item appears.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

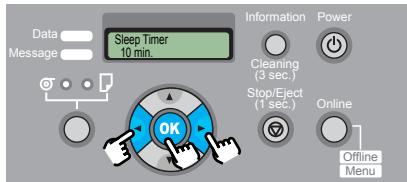
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 5** Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select the desired setting then press the **OK** button.



The selected value is prefixed with an equals sign (=).

- 6** Press the **Online** button to display **Online**.



The **Online** lamp lights and the printer is ready to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Settings Summary Tables

Each menu has the functions described below. A setting value marked with an asterisk (*) is the initial setting for that menu item.

■ MAIN MENU

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Head Cleaning	Head Cleaning A	Cleans the printhead.
	Head Cleaning B	Performs stronger cleaning than Head Cleaning A.
Force Cutting	No, Yes	Executes a roll cut at the current position. However, if the media is cut within 10 cm from the leading edge the media still feeds the prescribed distance before the cut is performed. This menu item is displayed only while Roll Media is selected for printing. If the feed distance is very small, the cut is not performed.
Chng Head Hght	No, Yes	Adjusts the height of the Printhead. (→ P.2-40)
Media Type	Plain Paper*, CAD Plain Paper, Plain Paper HQ, Recycled Coated, Coated Paper, HW Coated, Premium Matte, Ex HW Coated, Glossy Photo, Semi-GI Photo, HW Glossy Photo, HW SemiGI Photo, Syn. Paper, Adh. Syn. Paper, Backlit Film, Flame-Res. Cloth, Proofing Paper, News Proof 1, News Proof 2, News Proof 3, FineArt Photo, FneArt HW Photo, FineArt Txtr, Canvas Semi-GI, JPN Paper Washi, Colored Coated, CAD Trace Paper, CAD Matte Film, Special 1-5	Selects the type setting for media. Only the names of the types of media that can be used with the set Bk ink are displayed. (→ P.2-4)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer


Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Med. Detail Set		
Media Type	Plain Paper*, CAD Plain Paper, Plain Paper HQ, Recycled Coated, Coated Paper, HW Coated, Premium Matte, Ex HW Coated, Glossy Photo, Semi-GI Photo, HW Glossy Photo, HW SemiGI Photo, Syn. Paper, Adh. Syn. Paper, Backlight Film, Flame-Res. Cloth, Proofing Paper, News Proof 1, News Proof 2, News Proof 3, FineArt Photo, FneArt HW Photo, FineArt Txtr, Canvas Semi-GI, JPN Paper Washi, Colored Coated, CAD Trace Paper, CAD Matte Film, Special 1-5	These are the names of media that you can select. Only the names of the types of media that can be used with the set ink tank are displayed.
Drying Time	Off, 30 sec., 1 min., 3 min., 5 min, 10 min., 30 min., 60 min.	An ink drying time interval for each media is set to allow enough time for a printout to dry before the next sheet prints.
Scan Wait Time	Off, 1 sec., 3 sec., 5 sec., 7 sec., 9 sec.	The printhead can be set to pause after one pass (a scan) and wait for the ink to dry (this allows for the absorption properties of different media). However, the printing time will be much longer.
NearEnd RIIMrgn	20mm, 5mm	<p>This sets the amount of white space to ensure the quality of printing at the leading edge.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If set to 5 mm, the print quality at the leading edge, or the accuracy of feeding, may deteriorate, or the surface of the print may be scratched. Also, ink may stick to the leading edge.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer


Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents


Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Far End RollMrgn	10mm, 5mm	<p>Sets the amount of white space to ensure the quality of printing at the trailing edge.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If set to 5 mm, the print quality at the leading edge, or the accuracy of feeding, may deteriorate, or the surface of the print may be scratched. Also, ink may stick to the leading edge.
Media Thickness	Thick, Standard, Thin	Selects the ideal thickness for the media type. The printhead alert will display based on the value of this setting.
VacuumStrngth	Weak, Standard, Strong, Strongest	Sets the amount of suction on the media on the platen.
Standard Cutter	Enable, Disable	Determines whether the standard, flat blade cutter is enabled.
Cut speed	Standard, Fast	Sets the speed of the cutter cutting the media. Selecting Fast for film and other media that easily generates cutting dust will reduce the amount of dust.
CutDustReduct	Off*, On	When printing on film or other media that creates a large amount of dust during cutting, a line is printed at cutting position to reduce the amount of scattered dust.
Correct Smear	Off*, On	Select for media when the printing results is easily scratched.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Skew Check Lv.	Standard*, Loose, Off	<p>When you are printing on Japanese washi paper or other media of non-standard width, you can lower the amount of skew detected or switch this function off. However, if you switch this function Off, you could cause a paper jam if the sheet is not loaded perfectly straight.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● If media is set at a skewed angle while Off, this could cause jams or fouling the platen.
Width Detection	On*, Off, Media Size?	The Width Detection function can be switched to Off only when printing on cut sheets. You can switch width detection off for Japanese washi or other media of non-standard widths. If you switch this function Off , then Media Size? is displayed and you can enter the width of the media.
Return Defaults	No, Yes	This function restores the media type settings to their default values.
ChangeBkInkType	No, Yes	You can switch the black ink tanks based on the requirements of the print job for different types of black ink.
Rep. Ink Tank	No, Yes	When you must change an ink tank during a print job, the required processing is done so you can change the ink tank. This menu is displayed during printing only.
Adjust Printer		
Auto Head Adj.		Adjusts the printhead. (→ P.4-40)
Advanced Adj.	No, Yes	Prints the pattern used to adjust nozzle gaps, print direction, and color gaps; the printer reads the printed pattern and does the adjustments automatically based on the results of the printout.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Standard Adj.	No, Yes	Prints the adjustment pattern used to adjust the position of the printhead, reads the results of the pattern, and then automatically adjusts the values for printhead positioning.
Auto Print	On*, Off	You can set Advanced Adj. to print automatically immediately after the printhead is replaced.
Feed Priority	Band Joint*, Print Length	Sets the priority for the precision of media feed. Select Print Length when you want the media to feed accurately. When Print Length is selected, color may blur slightly in the direction of carriage scanning.
Adjust Band		Adjusts the amount of line feed for each type of media. (→ P.4-42)
Standard Adj.	No, Yes	The printer prints this pattern and uses it to adjust the amount of feed; it scans the printout and automatically adjusts the values for each type of media.
Advanced Adj.	No, Yes	Use with media other than Canon media or media not approved for output with the printer. The adjustment value is set automatically when the printer reads the printed pattern. However, this requires more time than Standard Adj. and consumes more ink.
Fine Tuning	-3 ~ 0* ~ +3	Allows manual entry of a value to fine adjust the band adjustment of the media selected for printing.
Adjust Length	-0.70 ~ 0.00* ~ 0.70%	Adjusts the amount of stretching and shrinking for each media type. To set a longer feed for a media that stretches easily, adjust the value to the plus (+) side, or adjust it to the minus (-) side to set a shorter feed for a media that shrinks easily. This menu is displayed only when Print Length is selected for Feed Priority .

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Color Adj.		
Return Defaults	Off*, On	This restores all color settings at once to 2 , the factory default setting.
Color Adj. PM	1, 2*, 3	You can adjust the density of PM 1, 2*, 3 Y, M, C, K, PM, PC one by one and perform the corrections. The settings can be performed in the range 1 to 3 (the standard factory default setting is 2). Set to 1 for a light adjustment or set to 3 for a dark adjustment.
Color Adj. PC	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. Y	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. M	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. C	1, 2*, 3	
Color Adj. K	1, 2*, 3	
Interface Setup		
EOP Timer	10 sec., 30 sec., 1 min., 2 min., 5 min., 10 min.*, 30 min., 60 min.	Sets the job timeout setting for the printer.
TCP/IP		Sets the TCP/IP protocol for the network interface. After setting each TCP/IP item, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-12)
TCP/IP	On	The setting for TCP/IP protocol is locked On . This setting cannot be changed.
IP Mode	Manual*, Automatic	This setting determines whether the IP address is set automatically or entered manually.
Protocol		Sets the type of server when the printer is set for automatic entry of the IP address.
DHCP BOOTP RARP	Off*, On	
IP Setting		Sets the printer network information if a fixed IP address has been set.
IP Address Subnet Mask Default G/W	0.0.0.0* ~ 255.255.255.255	Allows entry of the IP address assigned to the printer, network subnet mask, and default gateway.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
NetWare		Sets the network interface for NetWare protocol. After setting each TCP/IP item, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-35)
NetWare	Off*, On	Determines whether NetWare protocol is used.
Frame Type	Auto Detect, Ethernet 2, Ethernet 802.2*, Ethernet 802.3, Ethernet SNAP	Selects the frame type to use.
Print Service	Bindary Pserver, RPrinter, NDS Pserver*, NPrinter	Selects the print service.
AppleTalk	On, Off*,	Determines whether AppleTalk protocol is used. After setting each TCP/IP item, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-30)
Ethernet Driver		Sets the method of communication for the network interface board. After setting each TCP/IP item, select Store Setting to save the settings and enable them. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed. (→ P.5-6)
Auto Detect	On*, Off	Automatically recognizes the LAN communication protocol. If set to Off , the communication method or Ethernet type are enabled.
Comm. Mode	Half Duplex*, Full Duplex	Selects the LAN communication method.
Ethernet Type	10 Base-T*, 100 Base-TX	Selects the LAN communication speed.
Spanning Tree	Not Use*, Use	This selection determines whether the LAN spanning tree signal is received.
MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the network interface board.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Store Setting	OK?	
Init. Settings	OK?	Resets all of the Interface Setup settings to their factory defaults.
Maintenance		
Replace P.head	No, Yes	Sets the printer in the replace printhead mode. This menu is not displayed while the maintenance cartridge capacity warning is displayed. (→ P.4-23)
Move Printer	No, Yes	Sets the printer to the mode that enables you to carry out the procedures required before transporting the printer to another location. This menu is not displayed while the maintenance cartridge capacity warning is displayed. (→ P.4-32)
System Setup		
Warning		
Buzzer	On*, Off	Sets the buzzer function. When set to On , the buzzer sounds when an error occurs.
Head Ht. Wrning	On*, Off, Check Head Hght	Determines whether a prompt is issued when the printhead is not at the correct height for the print media.
Med.type Wrning	On*, Off	Determines whether a warning is issued when the media loaded in the printer does not match the media specified for the print job.
Change Cutter	No, Yes	Prepares the printer so the cutter can be replaced when replacement is necessary. After replacement, you can reset the number of cuts.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer


Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Keep Media Size	Off*, On	<p>When switched to On, the print job executes with the media size specified for the data. Depending on the size of the margins, some of the data may be cut off.</p> <p>When set to Off, the job will print without cutting off part of the image at the top or bottom. However, the printout will be extended by the lengths of the top and bottom margins.</p> <p> Important</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● When On, part of the image may be cut off. (→ P.7-5) <p>When set to Off, the image inside 5 mm from the top, bottom, left, and right edges will be printed clearly as the recommended printing area. However, the printout will be extended by the lengths of the top and bottom margins.</p>
Chk Remain. Roll	Off, On*	<p>When On, the bar code prints when the roll is removed in order to monitor the amount of media remaining on each roll.</p> <p>When Off, the bar code is not printed when the roll is removed. If this is set to Off, the edge will be cut off regardless of the roll paper loading position.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Roll Length Set	## m (meter selected for Length Unit), ## feet (feet/inch selected for Length Unit), Manual Setting, Unknown	When the roll supply remaining detection function is On , the printer sets the media length when the roll media loaded has no bar code. This is displayed only when Chk Remain. Roll is On . Some Length Units are displayed in meters, and others in feet depending on the setting. Also, if Manual Setting is selected you can enter the length directly. If Unknown is selected, the roll supply remains function is switched Off .
Nozzle Check	1 page, 10 pages*, Nozzle check	Allows you to set the number of patterns to print when a nozzle clogs during an automatic check.
Stop Ink Check	Bk Ink Tank PC Ink Tank C Ink Tank PM Ink Tank M Ink Tank Y Ink Tank	Switches off the ink level detection function. (→ P.4-8)
Sleep Timer	5 min., 10 min., 15 min.*, 20 min., 30 min., 40 min., 50 min., 60 min.	Sets the amount of time the printer remains idle before it enters sleep mode.
Use Power Save	On, Off	Sets up the printer sleep mode function. If set to On the printer enters the Sleep Timer mode to reduce its power consumption and conserve energy if the covers are closed and the printer is neither operated nor receives a print job after the prescribed time has elapsed. If set to Off , sleep mode is disabled. (→ P.1-9)
Length Unit	meter*, feet/inch	Sets the units used to display the length of the roll sheet on the display. The units for the roll length display and the roll supply remains display are separate.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Time Zone	0:London (GMT) +1:Paris,Rome +2:Athens,Cairo +3:Moscow +4:Eerevan,Baku +5:Islamabad +6:Dacca +7:Bangkok +8:Hong Kong +9:Tokyo,Seoul +10:Canberra +11NewCaledonia +12:Wellington -12:Eniwetok -11:Midway is. -10Hawaii(AHST) -9:Alaska(AKST) -8:Oregon (PST) -7:Arizona(MST) -6:Texas (CST) -5:NewYork(EST) -4:Santiago -3:Buenos Aires -2: -1:Cape Verde	You can select a representative city in the appropriate time zone, along with the selection of the GMT time difference.
Date Format	yyyy/mm/dd dd/mm/yyyy mm/dd/yyyy	Sets the display format for the date.
Language	English*, Français, Deutsch, Italiano, Español	Sets the display format for the date.
Reset MediaType	No, Yes	Media Configuration Tool can be used to restore the content of changed settings to their factory defaults.
Test Print		
Status Print		Prints the printer information and setting values.
Menu Map		Prints a list of all the items on the MAIN MENU .
Print Job Log		Prints a list of information about printed jobs, including media size and type, amount of ink consumed, etc.
Nozzle Check		Prints the nozzle check pattern.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Media Details		Prints a list of media type settings.
Information		
Version		Displays the version numbers for the printer unit and the firmware.
RAM		Displays the memory capacity of the printer.
Ext. Interface		Displays the name of the interface that can be used at the expansion slot.
MAC Address		Displays the MAC address of the printer in the network. This menu is displayed only when the network interface is installed.
Error Log		Displays the most recent error message.
Job Log		Displays at the end information about the print job.
Document Name		Displays the name of the document in the print job.
User Name		Displays the job user name.
Page Count		Displays the number of pages in the print job.
Job Status		Displays the result of the print job processing.
Print Start Time		Displays the time that the print job was started.
Print End Time		Displays the time that the print jobs ended.
Print Time		Displays the time elapsed for the print job.
Print Size		Displays the size of the media used in the print job.
Media Type		Displays name of the media type used in the print job.
Interface		Displays the name of the job interface.
Coverage		Displays the ink density of each color used in the job.
Counter		
Cut Count		Displays the number of cuts by the cutter. You can reset this counter after the cutter has been replaced.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment


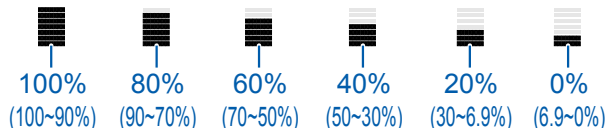
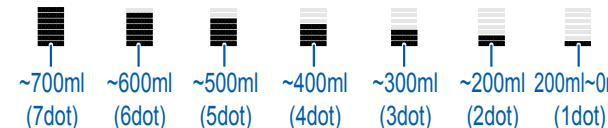
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Sub Menu

Menu Item	Setting Values	Function
Ink: M_T K P_C C P_M M Y 		Displays in the center the ink capacity in 7 steps (100%, 80%, 60%, 40%, 20%, 0%) and no ink.  Displays in seven levels the capacity of ink that the maintenance cartridge can still absorb. 
Width: X Y	X: Media Width Y: Media Type	The width of the media is shown on the top line, and the type of media is shown on the bottom line.
Remaining: Xm YY Printable	X: Roll Remains Y: Sheets printable with remaining ink.	When the roll media supply detection is On , this displays the length of the media that remains on the roll. Also, while the ink remains alert is displayed the number of sheets that can be printed is also displayed.
Head Height X Best Head Hght Y	X: Current printhead position (L, M, H) Y: Best position for media (L, M, H)	When the Head Ht. Wrning is On , an alert is issued if the current height of the printhead is lower than the ideal height for the media.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents


Index


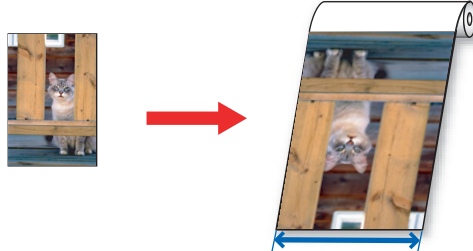
Printer Driver

The computer uses the printer driver to send the print job to the printer. This section describes the functions of the printer driver.

Printer Driver Features

The printer driver presents the items that allow you to perform the settings for the media type, print quality, page size, and other important settings. Also, the printer provides a variety of easy-to-use functions which are described below. For more details about operation procedures, please refer to [Chapter 3 "Printing Methods for Different Objectives"](#) and the printer online Help.

Borderless Printing	
	<p>The printer can do borderless printing at the four edges of the media as shown in the photo. (→ P.3-13, P.3-77)</p>

Banner Printing	
	<p>You can make long printouts up to 15.24 meters long for vertical or horizontal banners for hanging (18 m with Mac OS X or later). (→ P.3-30, P.3-94)</p>
Enlarged/ Reduced Printing	
	<p>You can print and have the image automatically enlarged or reduced to fit on the width of the media on the roll. You can make prints easily that fill the entire width of the media. (→ P.3-6, P.3-65)</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

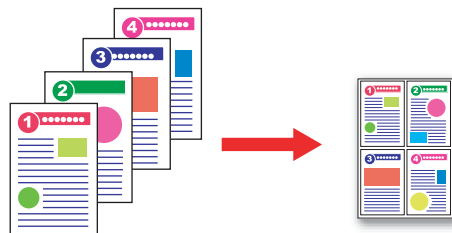
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

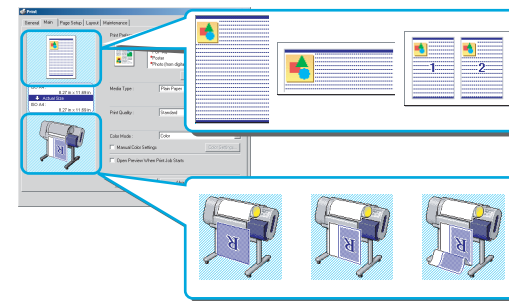
Index

Multiple Page Printing



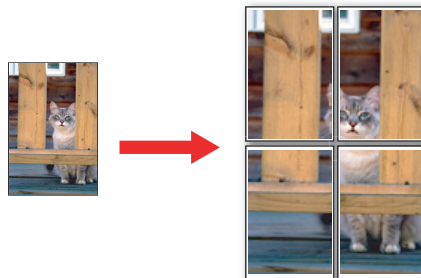
You can reduce the size of the image and print multiple copies on one sheet. Use this feature to save paper when you need to only confirm the content.
(→ [P.3-24](#), [P.3-89](#))

Preview Display



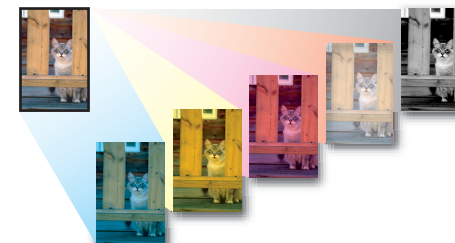
Displays a graphic representation of what the printout will look like by showing the effects of the printer driver settings. This allows you to confirm what the print job will look like before you print it.
(→ [P.3-5](#), [P.3-64](#))

Poster Printing



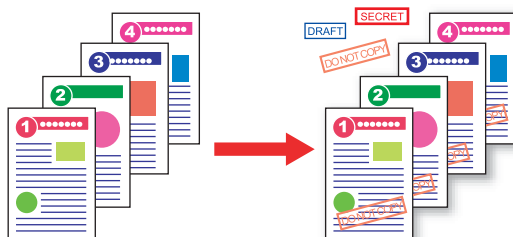
You enlarge an image and have it print in sections on several sheets. This is convenient when you need to paste together sheets to form one large poster.
(→ [P.3-26](#), [P.3-92](#))

Color Adjustment



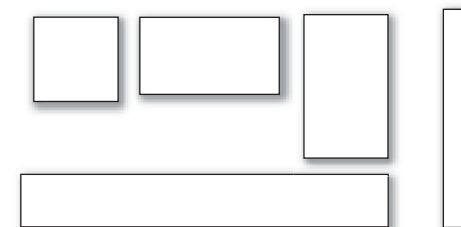
You can use the printer driver to adjust the tones of the colors in your printed materials. (→ [P.3-42](#), [P.3-107](#))

Printing with Watermarks



You can stamp your printouts with watermarks or transparent overlays.
(→ [P.3-28](#))

Custom Sizes



You can register custom sizes for paper and other media. (→ [P.3-51](#), [P.3-121](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer


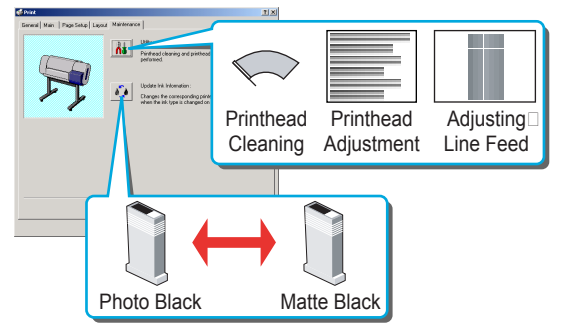
Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

<p>Print Preferences</p>	 <p>Default Settings POP Ad Poster Photo (from digital camera) Photo (from scanner) Long Format (Banner) CAD</p> <p>Settings that match the purpose of the document are registered. You can easily perform print jobs that meet the purpose of the job. Also, you can register the content of the settings under a name that you give it. (→ P.3-2, P.3-59)</p>
<p>Maintenance</p>	 <p>Printhead Cleaning Printhead Adjustment Adjusting Line Feed</p> <p>Photo Black Matte Black</p> <p>Nozzle check pattern prints, printhead cleanings, printhead adjustment, and feed adjustments can all be performed on the computer screen. (→ P.4-36, P.4-38, P.4-40, P.4-42)</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

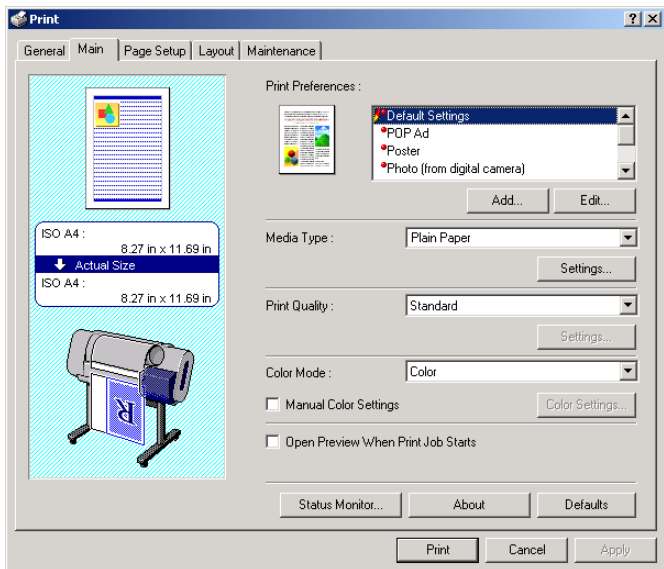
Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Main Sheet

The Main sheet provides the following settings.



<p>Print Preferences</p>	<p>Standard: These settings are best for printing documents that contain text, images, and graphics mixed together.</p> <p>POP Ad: Best selection for printing sharp, bright posters for store advertising.</p> <p>Poster: Best selection for printing a photograph centered in a poster.</p> <p>Photograph (captured with digital camera): Best for printing photographs taken with a digital camera.</p> <p>Photographs (captured with a scanner): Best selection when you need faithful reproduction of color photos captured with a scanner.</p> <p>Long Format (Banner): Best for long print jobs with mixed text and illustrations in hanging vertical or horizontal banners.</p> <p>CAD: Best choice when you want to print fine, sharp lines in architectural or engineering plans.</p>
<p>Media Type</p>	<p>Use this setting to set the paper or media type. A print job is performed to match the special characteristics of the media. If this setting does not match the type of media loaded in the printer, this will cause poor print quality.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Print Quality	<p>High: This print mode places priority on quality.</p> <p>Standard: Prints the printout with normal quality.</p> <p>Draft: This print mode places priority on speed.</p> <p>Custom Settings: The job is printed with the processing method selected by the user. The Highest selection prints with the best possible quality.</p>
Set	<p>With Print Quality selected under Custom Settings, the processing methods for Print Quality, Resolution, Enhance Text With Photos, and Halftones can be set. The items that can be selected and their settings are different, depending on the media type and ink type.</p>

Color Mode	<p>Color: Uses all the inks to print the job in color.</p> <p>Monochrome (Photo): Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.</p> <p>Monochrome: Converts all print data to grayscale and prints using only the black ink.</p> <p>Solid Color: Solid colors are printed differently so they stand out, light color lines print sharp.</p> <p>Black Only: All areas other than white are printed in black.</p>
Manual Color Settings	<p>Allows manual adjustment of color balance, saturation, brightness, and contrast.</p>
Open Preview When Print Job Starts	<p>After executing the print job, check the image of the on the screen and then execute the print.</p>
Status Monitor	<p>Follow the procedure below to start the Status Monitor.</p>
Version Info.	<p>Displays the version number of the printer driver.</p>
Defaults	<p>Returns the settings on the sheets to their initial (default) settings.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

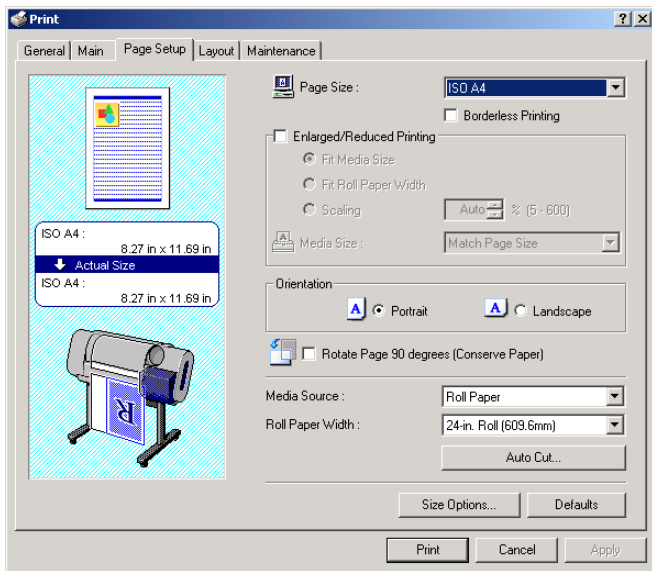
Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Page Setup Sheet

The Page Setup sheet provides the following settings.



Page Size	Sets the size of the page for the print data.
Borderless Printing	Prints the image with no margin at the four edges of the sheet. There are limitations on the width and type of media. (→ P.2-4 , P.3-13 , P.3-77)

Enlarged/Reduced Printing	Allows you to enlarge or reduce printing. You can select one of the following methods to do this.
Fit Media Size	Automatically sets the enlargement/reduction proportionally to match the size selected for the Media Size .
Fit Roll Paper Width	Automatically sets the enlargement/reduction proportionally to match the size selected for the Roll Paper Width .
Scaling	Allows you to scale the size of the image manually in the range 5% to 600%.
Media Size	Allows you to specify the actual size of the media where the job will print.
Orientation	Allows you to select either portrait or landscape printing.
Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)	Automatically rotates the image 90 degrees when print job would result in a printout with the length smaller than the width. This saves paper.
Media Source	Specifies whether roll media, roll media (banner), or cut sheets will be used.
Roll Paper Width	Specifies the width of the roll paper to be used.
Auto Cut...	Specifies whether the sheet is cut after printing.
Size Options	Allows you to define free sizes other than the standard sizes so you can print do long prints.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

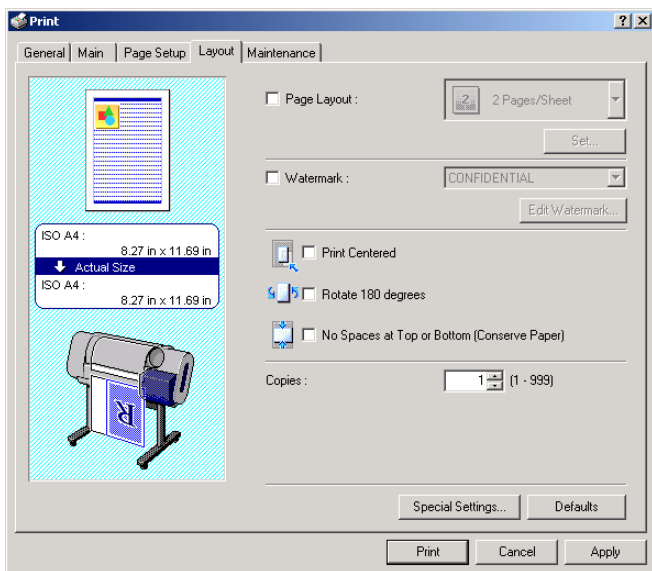
Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Layout Sheet

The Print Layout sheet provides the following settings.



No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)	When the image to be printed is smaller than the media, you can set the printer it does not feed and there is no margin at the top or bottom. This conserves roll paper.
Copies	Specifies the number of copies to print.
Special Settings	If the print results are not what you expect, you can change how the print job is processed.

Page Layout	This feature allows you to print several pages up on the same sheet or break up an enlarged image by printing it over several sheets for a large poster.
Watermark	Overlays a watermark on the printed image. You can freely make your own watermarks (text, text enclosed in boxes, transparent text) positioned freely on the page, give them a name, and register them.
Print Centered	When the image to be printed is smaller than the sheet, you can print the image centered so the margins are even.
Rotate 180 degrees	This feature rotates the image 180 degrees.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

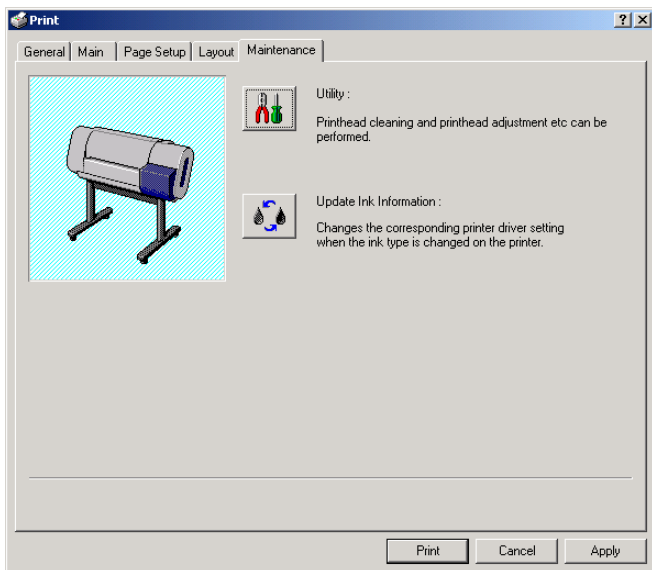
Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Maintenance Sheet

The Maintenance sheet provides the following settings.



<p>Utility</p>	<p>Open the Status Monitor and display the Utility sheet. This allows you to perform nozzle check pattern prints, printhead cleaning, printhead position adjustment, and feed adjustment. The Status Print item is on the Information tab of the Status Monitor.</p>
<p>Update Ink Information</p>	<p>Use this setting to set the type of black ink. Click the Acquire Status button to set the printer to operate with the black ink tank mounted in the printer.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing

Follow the procedure below to start a print job.

Printing From Windows

To print a job from a Windows software application, use the **Print** command in the **File** menu.

Important

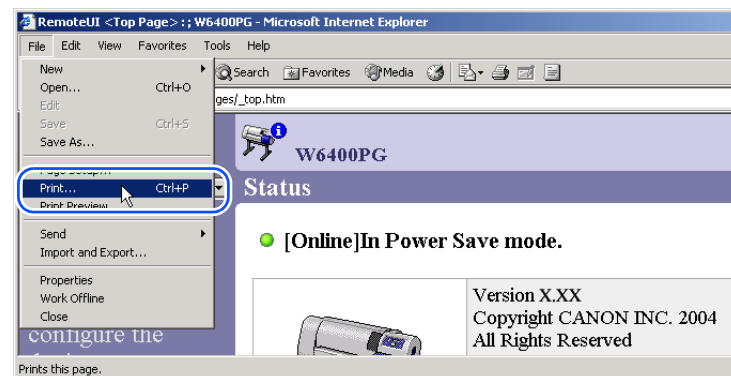
- The Windows printer driver for this printer can be used with Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows Me, Windows 98, and Windows NT 4.0. The printer driver is not compatible with Windows 95. (→ Quick Start Guide)
- Before you start a print job on the computer, close any software applications running in the background. Another program running in the background could break the flow of print data and temporarily stop the printer or cause poor print quality.

Note

- For more details about how to use the printer driver, please refer to [Chapter 3 “Printing Methods for Different Objectives”](#).

■ Operating the Printer

- 1 In the software application, select **Print** from the **File** menu.



The **Print** window opens.

- 2 Make sure the name of the printer is displayed in the **Select Printer** box, perform the settings for the **Page Range** and **Number of Copies**, then click the **Print** button.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

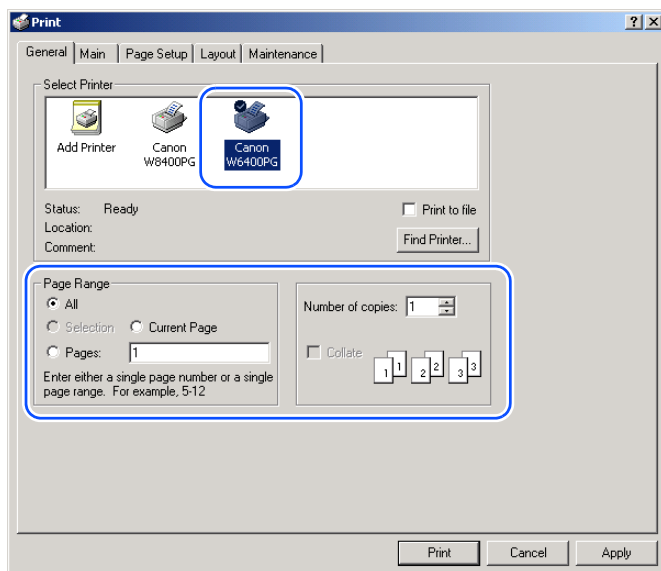
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

On the **Main** and **Page Setup** sheets, select the **Media Type**, **Media Source**, **Print Quality**, **Color Settings**, and **Scaling** settings for the print job.




The print job starts.

Important

- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.

Note

- If the printer estimates that there is not enough ink available to perform a very long print or print several copies of the same document, it will issue the “**Not Enough Ink**” alert on the operation panel. In this case, replace the ink tank where the ink supply is low and print again. However, if you reinstall and use an ink tank that is nearly empty this could cause print quality to deteriorate. Never try to reinstall an ink tank once you see the mark  in the ink level display.

Printing from a Macintosh

To print a job from a Macintosh software application, first select the printer then use the **Print** command in the **File** menu.

Important

- Before you start a print job on the computer, close any software applications running in the background. Another program running in the background could break the flow of print data and temporarily stop the printer or cause poor print quality.

Note

- For more details about how to use the printer driver, please refer to the online Help of the printer driver.

■ Selecting the Printer

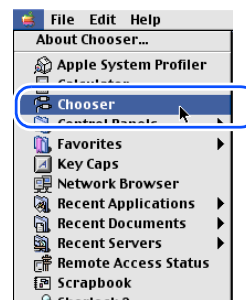
- For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

If you are using Mac OS 8.6 or Mac OS 9.x, select the printer with the **Chooser**. This printer will not be displayed in the list if it is not switched on, or if the printer cable is disconnected. Start the print job after you confirm that the printer is in working order.

Note

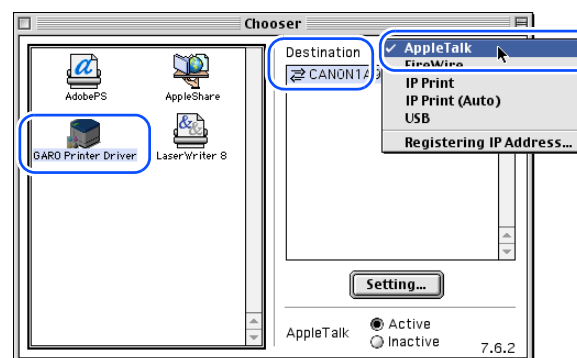
- You may not be able to share the printer with a USB connection. In such a case, connect the printer directly to the computer through its USB or IEEE1394 port (option). If you want to share the printer, perform the print job from a Windows computer.

- 1 From the **Apple** menu, select **Chooser**.



- 2 Click the **GARO Printer Driver** icon in the list on the left, then in the right list under **Destination** select the name of the connected printer.

Select the appropriate setting for the output destination: **USB** for a USB connection, **IEEE1394** for a **FireWire** connection, **AppleTalk** for a network connection, or **IP Print** or **IP Print (Auto)**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

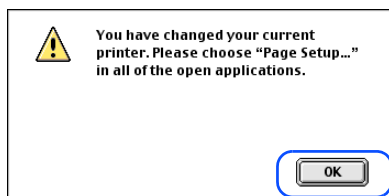
Contents

Index

Important

- If the printer is connected to a network, make sure that **Active** is selected for **AppleTalk**.
- The network interface card used with this printer is not set before shipping for use with AppleTalk. On the printer operation panel, select **Interface Setup > AppleTalk > On**. (→ P.5-30)
- For an IP print connection, register the IP address under **Registering IP Address** and then select the name of the printer under **IP Print**.

- 3** Close the **Chooser** window and click the **OK** button in the message window.



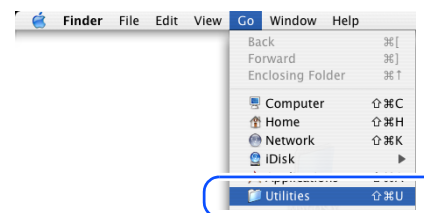
This completes the selection of the printer.

- For Mac OS X

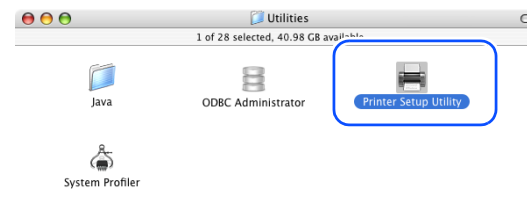
If you are using Mac OS X, use the printer setting utility to select the printer from the Print Center. This printer will not be displayed in the list if it is not switched on, or if the printer cable is disconnected. Start the print job after you confirm that the printer is in working order.

The example here describes Mac OS X Ver. 10.3. The icon name and graphic may be different for other versions.

- 1** Select **Finder**, then select **Utility** or **Applications** from the **Go** menu.



- 2** Open the **Utilities** folder then open **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

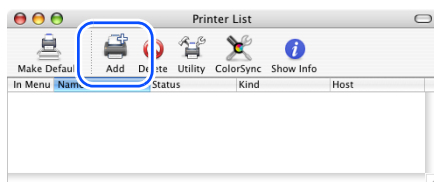
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

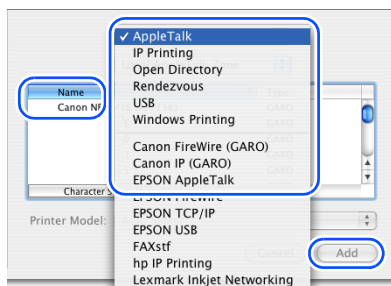
3 If the name of the printer is not in the **Printer List**, click the **Add** icon.

If the printer is already displayed, go to [Step 4](#).



4 In the connection menu select the connection destination for the printer, select the name of the printer from the list, then click the **Add** button.

Select the appropriate setting for the connection destination: **USB** for a USB connection, **Canon FireWire (GARO)** for a IEEE1394 connection, or **Canon IP (GARO)**, Zeroconf or **AppleTalk** for a network connection.



Important

- For the AppleTalk connection, confirm these settings: **System Preferences > Network > AppleTalk > Make AppleTalk Active**.
- The network interface card used with this printer is not set before shipping for use with AppleTalk. On the printer operation panel, select **Interface Settings > AppleTalk > On**. (→ [P.5-30](#))

Note

- This printer can be connected and operated with Zeroconf of Mac OS X. If you are using Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later with a network connection using Zeroconf functions selected on the **Connection** menu, then you can select the name of this printer. If you are using Mac OS 8.6, 9.x with the Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver for Macintosh installed, you can also use the Zeroconf function to connect the printer.
- This printer can be connected and operated with Canon IP (GARO). Select **Canon IP (GARO)** on the **Connection** menu then enter the IP address and printer name of this printer
- If the name of the printer is not displayed, check the printer connection cable, and make sure that the printer and network device are both switched on.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

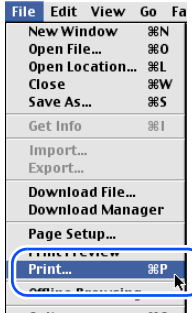
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

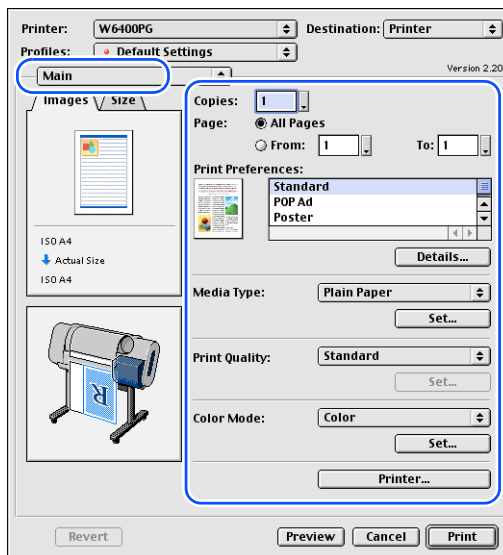
■ Operating the Printer

- 1 In the software application select **Print** from the **File** menu.



The **Print** window appears.

- 2 Check the **Printer** box and make sure that the name of the printer is displayed. On the **Main** panel select the settings for the **Page**, **Copies**, **Media Type**, **Media Source**, **Print Quality**, and other settings.



If you are using Mac OS X, set the **Copies&Pages** panel and the **Main** panel.

- 3 Click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Important

- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.

Note

- Before you start printing a long sheet or multiple copies, you should always check the ink supply levels of the ink tanks. To confirm the ink supply level of the ink tanks, on the **Main** panel click the **Printer information** button to display the levels. However, if you reinstall an ink tank that is nearly out of ink and use it this could cause the print quality to deteriorate. Do not re-install the ink tank marked in the ink supply level display.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

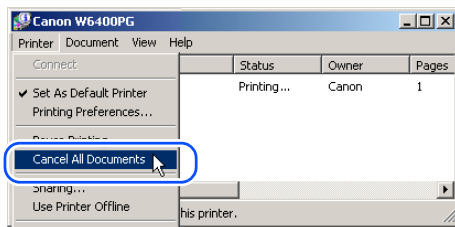
Canceling a Print Job

Follow this procedure to cancel a print job.

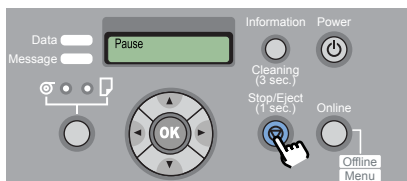
Canceling a Print Job from Windows

- 1 In the **Printers** folder, double-click the icon for the printer.
- 2 Click the name of the job that you want to cancel, click **Printer** in the menu bar and select **Cancel All Documents**.

The print job is deleted.

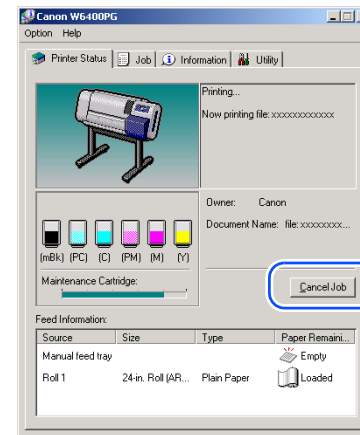


- 3 If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

- 4 If the Data lamp is off and you cannot cancel the print job, click the **GARO Status Monitor** icon on the right end of the taskbar to open, and then on the **Printer Status** sheet select the print job that you want to cancel, then press the **Cancel Job** button.



Note

- You can also cancel a print job in progress, or a job waiting to be printed, by selecting and canceling each job on the on the **Job** sheet.

- 5 If the GARO Status Monitor is not installed, hold down the **Power** button for 1 second or more until the **Shut Down..** is displayed, then switch the printer power off and on.

All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Any print job required must be restarted.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Canceling a Print Job from Macintosh

The procedure to cancel a print job is different, depending on whether the job is printing in the background or the foreground.



Note

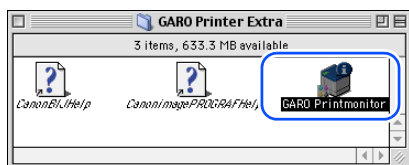
- On Mac OS X all jobs print in the background. Printing cannot be performed in the foreground.

■ Canceling a Background Print Job

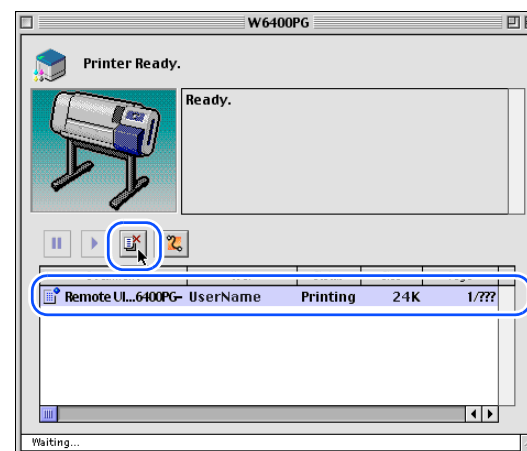
During background printing you can check the status of print jobs and cancel them. Follow this procedure to cancel a print job.

- For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

- 1 In the **GARO Printer Extra** folder installed on the hard disk, click the **GARO Printmonitor** icon.



- 2 Select the print job to cancel, then click the **Printing Paused** button.



The print queue (print processing) is suspended and the **Sending** status display switches to **Send**. While the print queue is paused, a red dot is displayed on the right.

Once the printer enters the Ready to Send mode, select the Job icon is marked with the ● icon, and then press the **Printing Paused** button to delete the job. Continue from [Step 4](#).

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

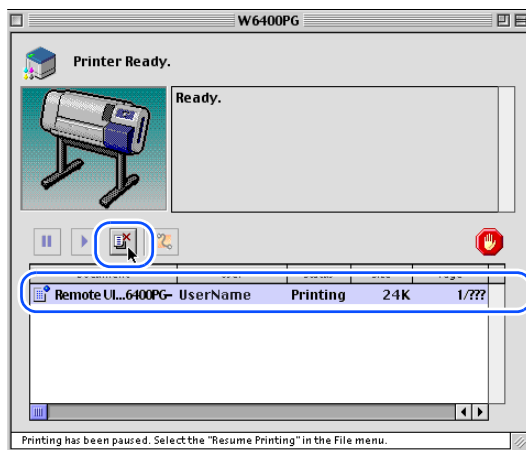
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

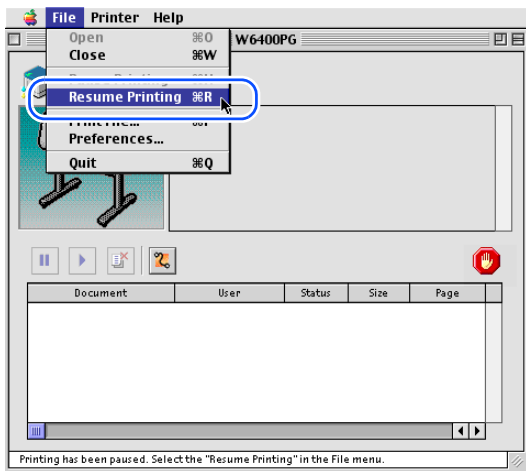
Index

3 With the job selected for deletion, click the **Printing Paused** button again.



The print job is deleted.

4 Select **Resume Printing** from the **File** menu.



The printer re-enters print mode and is ready for operation.

Important

- After you have paused printing, you must select **Resume Printing**. Printing cannot be done while the print queue is paused (with the red dot displayed).

5 If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

6 If the **Data** lamp goes off and you cannot cancel the print job, hold down the **Power** button for at least 1 second, release it after the **Shut down..** message appears, then after the printer switches off, switch it on again.

All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Any print job required must be restarted.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

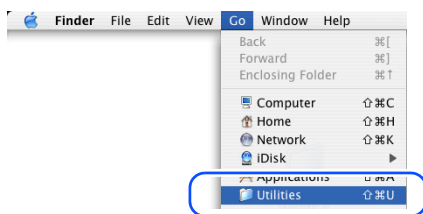
Contents

Index

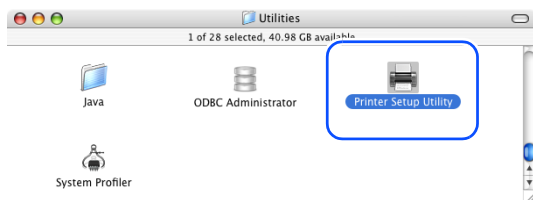
● Mac OS X

The example here describes Mac OS X Ver. 10.3. The icon name and graphic may be different for other versions.

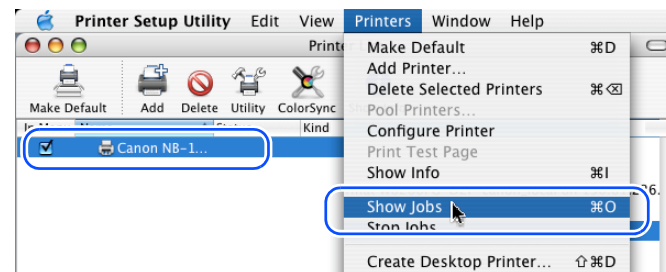
1 Select **Finder**, then select **Utilities** or **Applications** from the **Go** menu.



2 Open the **Utilities** folder then open **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)**.

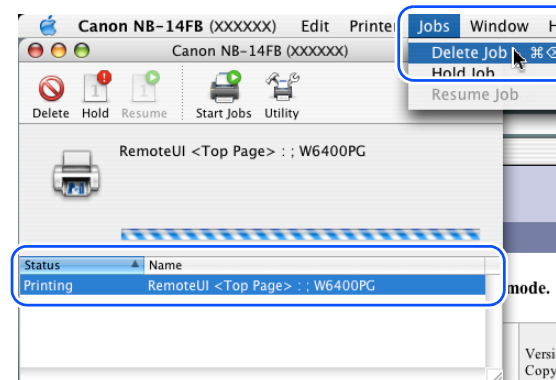


3 Select the name of the printer from the **Printer List**, then select **Show Jobs** from the **Printers** menu.



The queue list for the printer is displayed.

4 Select the print job to cancel, then select **Delete Job** from the **Jobs** menu.



The print job in progress is canceled.

Important

- A print job that has already been sent to the printer cannot be canceled. If you want to cancel other remaining jobs, cancel them with the GARO Printmonitor.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- Select the name of the printer in the **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)**, select the name of the printer, click the **Set** icon, then open GARO Printmonitor for a USB, FireWire, AppleTalk or Canon IP (GARO) connection, connection, or open the Remote UI for a Zeroconf connection.
Select the print job to delete, then click the **Print Cancel** button to cancel the job.

- 5** If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

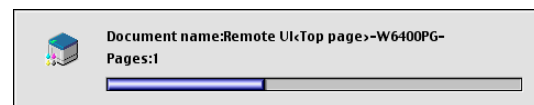
- 6** If the **Data** lamp goes off and you cannot cancel the print job, hold down the **Power** button for at least 1 second to display **Shut Down...**, then after the printer switches off, switch it on again.

All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Any print job required must be restarted.

■ Canceling a Foreground Print Job

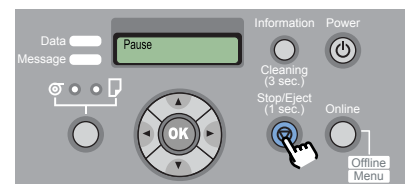
If you are printing in the foreground with Mac OS 8.6/9.x, a print processing dialog box remains open while the job prints. Follow this procedure to cancel a print job.

- 1** When the print-in-progress dialog box opens, press and hold down the **Command** key and press the period (.) key.



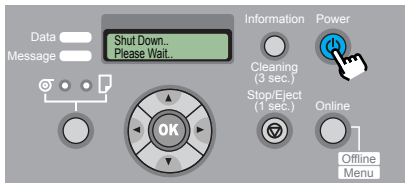
The print job is canceled.

- 2** If the print in progress display on the printer does not go off and online lamp is flashing, press and hold the **Stop** button for 1 sec.



The print job in progress is canceled.

- 3** If the **Data** lamp goes off and you cannot cancel the print job, hold down the **Power** button for at least 1 second to display **Shut Down..**, then after the printer switches off, switch it on again.



All of the print data currently processing in the printer is lost after the printer is switched off. Any print job required must be restarted.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Options

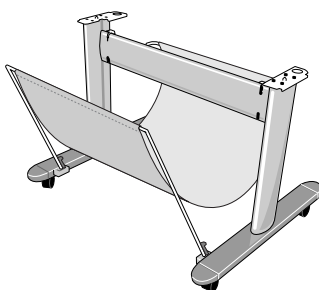
The following options are provided for this printer.

■ Stand

(Provided with the printer in the U.S.A.)

This stand is designed to support the W6400 Printer. The output stacker designed for this printer is provided.

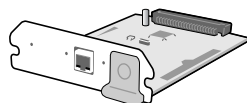
- Print Stand ST-23



■ Network Interface Board

The interface board that allows you add a LAN port.

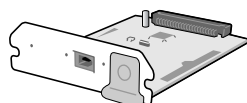
- Canon Network Interface Board NB-15FB



■ IEEE1394 Expansion Board

This board provides the IEEE1394 (FireWire) interface.

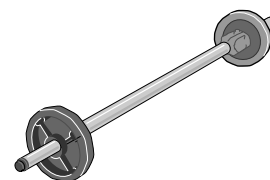
- IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-04



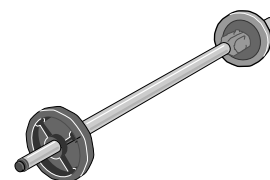
■ Roll Holder Sets

This set contains the roll holder and stoppers. To make proper use of rolls of different media types and widths, it is convenient to have several stoppers and holders on hand. Two types are available: 2-inch (provided on the printer) and 3-inch.

- Roll Holder Set (For 2" Tubes) RH2-23



- Roll Holder Set (For 3" Tubes) RH3-23



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Consumables

The following consumables are available for this printer.
You should have consumables on hand before they run out.
Purchase consumables at the dealer where you purchased the printer.

■ Print Media

The following types of media can be used with this printer.

● Type

Photo:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Glossy Photo Paper ● SemiGlos Photo Paper ● Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper ● Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper
Art:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Premium Matte Paper ● Fine Art Photo ● Fine Art Heavyweight Photo ● Fine Art Textured ● Canvas SemiGlos ● Japanese Paper Washi
Signs:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Synthetic Paper ● Adhesive Synthetic Paper ● Backlit Film ● Flame-Registrant cloth
CAD:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● CAD Plain Paper ● CAD Tracing Paper ● CAD Translucent Matte Film

Proof:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Newsprint for Proofing ● Proofing Paper
Generic:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Plain paper ● Plain Paper (High Quality) ● Recycled Coated Paper ● Coated paper ● Heavyweight coated paper ● Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper ● Colored Coated Paper

● Roll Media Sizes

Width:	24" (609.6mm), ISO A1 (594.0mm), JIS B2 (515.0mm), ISO A2 (420.0mm), 16" (406.4mm), 14" (355.6mm), ISO A3 (297.0mm), 10" (254.0mm)
Roll diameter:	Less than 150 mm (5.1 in.)
Media core inside diameter:	2", 3"
Print surface:	Front side

● Cut Sheets

Size Photo: 203.2 x 254.0 mm to ARCH D 609.6 x 914.4 mm

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index



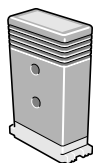
Note

- For more details about media sizes, please refer to [Chapter 2 “Media You Can Use”](#) (→ P.2-2).
- The quality of media varies with the manufacturer. To purchase print media, contact the dealer where you purchased the printer.

■ Replaceable Ink Tanks

The following six types of replaceable ink tanks are used in this printer.

- Ink Tanks for the W6400



Yellow Ink	BCI-1451Y
Magenta Ink	BCI-1431M
Photo Magenta Ink	BCI-1431PM
Cyan Ink	BCI-1431C
Photo Cyan Ink	BCI-1431PC
Black Ink	BCI-1431BK
Matte Black Ink	BCI-1451MBK



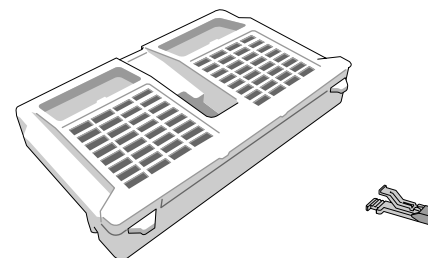
Note

- For more details about how to replace the ink tanks, see [Chapter 4 “Replacing Ink Tanks”](#) (→ P.4-2)
- Hereafter, “Photo Black Ink” is used to distinguish “Black Ink BCI-1431 BK” from the matte black ink.

■ Maintenance Cartridge

The maintenance cartridge (number listed below) is replaceable.

- Maintenance cartridge MC-01



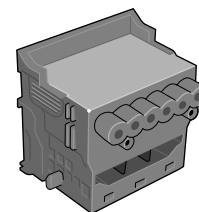
Note

- For more details about how to replace the maintenance cartridge, see [Chapter 4 “Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge”](#) (→ P.4-16)

■ Replaceable Printhead

The product number of the printhead that can be used on the printer is:

- Printhead BC-1350



Note

- For more details about how to replace the printhead, see [Chapter 4 “Replacing the Printhead”](#) (→ P.4-23)

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

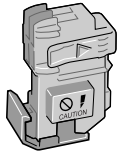
Contents

Index

■ Cutter Blade

The product number of the cutter blade that can be used on the printer is:

- Cutter Blade CT-02



Note

- For more details about how to replace the cutter blade, see [Chapter 4 “Replacing the Cutter Blade”](#) (→ [P.4-29](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Specifications

W6400	
Print Features	
Print Method	Serial Bubble Jet
Print Modes	Highest (Custom Settings) High, Standard, Draft
Max. Resolution	2400 x 1200 dpi
Interface	
USB Interface (USB 2.0 Standard)	1 (If the computer port, operating system, or USB cable does not support USB 2.0 High Speed Mode, you will not be able to use High Speed Mode.) *1
Network Interface (10base-T/100base-TX)	Option*2
IEEE1394 Interface (IEEE1394.a standard)	Option*2
Interface Connector	USB Interface: USB Standard Series B Receptacle USB Interface Recommended Printer Cable: Material: AWG28 or above Type: Twisted-pair sealed cable (high speed mode compliant) Length: max. 5.0 m (4.9 yd.) Connector: USB Standard Series B Plug
	IEEE1394 Interface (option): IEEE1394-1995 Standard 6-pin (without feed) IEEE1394 Interface Recommended Printer Cable Material: AWG28 (signal) AWG22 (power) Type: Dual twisted pair shielded cable (100, 200, 400 Mbps mode compliant) Length: max. 4.5 m (4.9 yd.) Connector: IEEE1394-1995 Compliant 6-pin
Printhead	Replaceable Printhead BC-1350
Nozzle gaps	1200 dpi (600 dpi x 2 lines)
Number of nozzles	1280 nozzles x 6 colors

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

W6400	
Replaceable Ink Tanks	
Yellow Ink	Replaceable BCI-1451Y
Magenta Ink	Replaceable BCI-1431M
Photo Magenta Ink	Replaceable BCI-1431PM
Cyan Ink	Replaceable BCI-1431C
Photo Cyan Ink	Replaceable BCI-1431PC
Photo Black Ink ^{*3}	Replaceable BCI-1431BK
Matte Black Ink ^{*3}	Replaceable BCI-1451MBK
Ink type	Pigment ink
Ink tank capacity	130 ml (each color)
Print Media	
Media Width	Range: 203.2 to 609.6 mm (min. to max.)
Maximum length	Roll: 18 m Cut sheet: 1400 mm
Thickness	70 ~ 800 μm
Type	Plain Paper, CAD Plain Paper, Plain Paper (High Quality), Recycled Coated Paper, Coated Paper, Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, SemiGlos Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Backlit Film, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Proofing Paper 2, Newsprint for Proofing ^{*4} , Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas SemiGlos, Japanese Paper Washi, Colored Coated Paper, CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, Special 1 to 5
Media Size and Print Area ^{*5}	Normal Size: Printable Area Roll Paper: Top 5 mm, Bottom 5 mm, Left/Right: 5 mm Cut Sheet: Top 5 mm, Bottom 23 mm, Left/Right: 5 mm Guaranteed Print Area Roll Paper:, Cut Sheet: Top 20 mm, Bottom 23 mm, Left/Right: 5 mm Borderless Size: Printable Area Roll Paper: Top 0 mm, Bottom 0 mm, Left/Right: 0 mm Oversize ^{*6} : Printable Area Roll Paper:, Cut Sheet: Top 0 mm, Bottom 0 mm, Left/Right: 0 mm
Compatible Media Widths for Borderless	254.0mm, 355.6mm, 406.4mm, 515.0mm, 594.0mm, 609.6mm
Output Stacker Capacity	1 sheet
Main Unit	
Power source	AC100V ~ 240V 1.3A 50/60 Hz
Power Consumption (Operation)	Max. 160 W ^{*7} (same as using Network Interface Board) Sleep Mode: 100-115V: Less than 6W (same as using Network Interface Board) 220-240V: Less than 9W Power off : Less than 1 W ^{*8}

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

W6400	
Noise (Operation)	Approximately 50 dB (A) or less (less than 6.5 Bels)
Ideal operating environment	15 ~ 30 °C (59 ~ 86 °F), 10 ~ 80 % RH with no condensation
Operating Environment	5 ~ 35 °C (41~ 95 °F), 10~90 % RH with no condensation
Dimensions (w x d x h)	
Printer only	1,200 mm x 569 mm x 484 mm (47.3 in x 22.4 in x 19.1 in)
Printer + Stand	1,200 mm x 752 mm x 1,097 mm (47.3 in x 29.6 in x 43.2 in)
Weight (including printhead, ink tanks)	
Printer only	Approximately 40kg
Printer + Stand	Approximately 49kg

*1. The following environment is required to use the High Speed mode of USB 2.0.

- Computer: A computer that supports USB 2.0 High Speed mode.
- OS: Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, or Windows 2000, or MacOS X Ver. 10.3.3 or later.
- USB 2.0 Driver: Microsoft USB 2.0 driver (you can obtain the Microsoft USB 2.0 driver from the Windows Update or Service Pack).
- USB Cable: A USB cable certified for USB 2.0.
- Canon approved USB 2.0 interfaces (USB drivers confirmed for use with Microsoft operating systems):
 - Adaptec USB 2.0 expansion card USB2CONNECT3100
 - Adaptec USB 2.0 expansion card USB2CONNECT5100
 - Adaptec USB 2.0 expansion card USB2CONNECT2000L
 - Intel 845G chip set
 - SiS SiS740 chip set

If you have any questions about a chip set listed above, please contact the manufacturer.

*2. One card can be installed, either the network interface board or the IEEE1394 board.

*3. Either Photo Black Ink or Matte Black Ink can be installed.

*4. Use the RIP software application (sold separately) to print on Newsprint for Proofing.

*5. Cannot use the **Borderless Size** or **Oversize** items to print on some media types and sizes.

*6. With **Oversize** selected, load roll media larger than the selected **Media Size**: roll media 10 mm wider and 10 mm taller, a cut sheet 10 mm wider and 20 mm taller.

*7. This may differ with some optional boards installed.

*8. The printer consumes a small amount of electrical power, even while it is switched off. Unplug the printer from its power source to cut off power consumption completely.

- These specifications are subject to change for improvements.
- The above specifications may vary for different operating environments.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Basic Environmental Performance

W6400	
Printer	
Power Consumption (Operation)	
Energy Save mode (Sleep Mode)	100-115V: Less than 6W (same as using Network Interface Board) 220-240V: Less than 9W
Power switch off (with power plug connected)	Less than 1 W
Power Source Efficiency	
Printer Weight	Approximately 40.0kg
Dimensions (w x d x h)	1,200mm x 569mm x 484mm (47.3 in x 22.4 in x 19.1 in)
Recycling	Exterior covers are technically certified as fully recyclable.
Product Safety	
Content of Harmful Materials	Total Configuration: No special unburnable bromide materials (PBB, PBDE) used.
	External Cover Plastic: No heavy metals (Pb, Hg, Cr (VI), Cd) or Halogen unburnable materials used.
Noise (Operation)	Approximately 50 dB (A) or less (less than 6.5 Bels)
External Cover Material	
Content of Heavy Metals (Pb, Hg, Cr (VI), Cd)	Not Used (Packing Material)
Recycling	All containers, packing material recyclable (from April, 2004)
Applicable Standards	International Energy Star Program, VCCI (class B)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 2 Using a Variety of Media

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Media You Can Use	2-2
The Suitable Black Ink for Media	2-2
Paper Type	2-4
Media Size	2-18
Original data the same as the media	2-20
Handling Paper and Other Print Media	2-25
Printing with Rolls	2-26
Loading Roll Media	2-26
Removing a Roll	2-33
Printing with Cut Sheets	2-35
Loading Cut Sheets	2-35
Removing a Cut Sheet	2-39
Adjusting the Height of the Printhead	2-40
Adjusting Printhead Height	2-40
Aligning the Printhead	2-42
Re-adjusting Printhead Height	2-42

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Media You Can Use

A variety of media types and sizes can be used with this printer. The following media can be used with this printer.

Important

- Some media require more time for the ink to dry after printing. After printing please allow the ink to dry sufficiently before you handle it.
- With some print media, the hue of some colors may change slightly when the ink on the surface of the media has dried completely.

Note

- For details about how to handle and store print media, please refer to the instructions provided with the packet.

The Suitable Black Ink for Media

Either one of two types of black ink can be used with this printer, Photo Black Ink or Matte Black Ink. The characteristics of these two types of ink are different and best suited for different types of media. Carefully select the type of black ink you want to use, based on the type of media you use and how often you use it.

Caution

- If you print with the black ink that is not suited to the type of media, it may result in unsatisfactory printing and foul the media or printer with ink.

Important

- To switch the type of black ink, execute **Change Bk Ink Type** on the printer operation panel and follow the instructions displayed. You can switch between the types of black ink, but please remember that every time you switch the black ink tanks the printer consumes about 45 ml of black ink and about 15 ml of the colored inks in total. (→ [P.4-47](#))

■ Black Ink Types and Characteristics

- **Photo Black Ink (BIC-1431 Bk)**
This ink is best for media like glossy and proof media with high-density black on a glossy surface. This ink can be used to print on most types of media including glossy paper.
- **Matte Black Ink (BIC-1451 MBk)**
This ink is best for black density on matte or fine art media, and even plain paper. Do not use matte black ink on media with a glossy surface.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Black Ink Characteristics

Print Application	Media Type	Usable Ink Types	
		Photo Black Ink	Matte Black Ink
Photo	Glossy Photo Paper	◎	×
	SemiGlos Photo Paper		
	Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper		
	Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper		
Proof	Proofing Paper	◎	×
	Newsprint for Proofing	×	◎
Generic	Plain Paper	○	◎
	Plain Paper (High Quality)		
	Recycled Coated Paper		
	Coated Paper		
	Heavyweight Coated Paper		
Art	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	○	◎
	Colored Coated Paper		
	Premium Matte Paper		
	Fine Art Photo		
	Fine Art Heavyweight Photo		
	Fine Art Textured		
Signs	Canvas SemiGlos	○	◎
	Japanese Paper Washi		
	Synthetic Paper		
	Adhesive Synthetic Paper		
CAD	Backlit Film	○	◎
	Flame-Resistant Cloth		
	CAD Plain Paper		
	CAD Tracing Paper		
	CAD Translucent Matte Film		

◎:Recommended ink, ○:Usable ink, ×:Unusable

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Paper Type

This section describes the types of media that you can use with this printer. To obtain the most recent information about usable media, contact the dealer where you purchased the printer or Canon service center.

The following items are described in the tables.



Note

- For information about media, be sure to read the instructions provided with the media packet and contact the manufacturer of each media.

■ Media Type

Characteristics	Describes the characteristics of each media.	
Print Application	Describes print jobs best suited for media.	
Display	Indoors	○ : Indoors OK × : Indoors NG
	Outdoors	○ : Outdoors OK × : Outdoors NG * Perform laminate processing before displaying outdoors.
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎ : Recommended ○ : Possible × : Not possible
	Matte Black	◎ : Recommended ○ : Possible × : Not possible

Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Describes the Media Type setting in the printer driver.
	Roll Paper Width	Width commercially available media
	Borderless	○ : Borderless Printing Possible △ : Left and Right 2-Edge Borderless Printing × : Borderless Printing Not Possible
Operation Panel Settings	Auto Cut	○ : Auto Cut Possible *Borderless printing possible to all 4 edges. × : Auto Cut Not Possible *Borderless printing possible, only left to right edge.
	Media Type	Name of the media type to appear on the operation panel display
Printhead Optimum Height	L : Low position M : Center position (Standard) H : High position * Press the Information button to display the appropriate height of the print head.	
Comments	Special notes and precautions are described here.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Plain paper

Characteristics	Superior yet economical ink-jet paper. Use for color prints in schools for research presentation, or monochrome prints for ceremonies, rallies, etc. It is low cost, so you can use it for test prints.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Plain paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Plain Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	You can use standard copy machine cut sheets (64~105 g/m ²) in place of plain paper for the printer.	

■ CAD Plain Paper

Characteristics	Superior yet economical ink-jet paper.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Plain Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	CAD Plain Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Plain Paper (High Quality)

Characteristics	High white content makes this plain paper comparatively thick.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Plain Paper (High Quality)
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Plain Paper HQ
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

■ Recycled Coated Paper

Characteristics	Thin coated paper Ideal for line drawings, maps, presentation materials.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Recycled Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Recycled Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Coated Paper

Characteristics	Thin coated paper Ideal for line drawings, maps, presentation materials.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Coated Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

■ Heavyweight Coated Paper

Characteristics	Coated paper with a thick paper base. Use to print full-color images mainly consist of graphic images. Ideal for store POP, presentation materials, many other applications.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Heavyweight Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24", A1, B2
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	HW Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Premium Matte Paper

Characteristics	High-quality ultraheavyweight matte coated paper, the thickest of all Canon's genuine Matte Papers, which supports the widest range of color reproduction, This paper offers a soft texture free of reflective glare for a tranquil feel. Suitable for wide-ranging applications from Photo/Fine Art to Materials for Display such as High-Quality Poster/POP.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Premium Matte Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	△
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Premium Matte
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	The standard cutter cannot be used to perform automatic cutting. After printing, cut the media manually. (→ P.2-34) The borderless printing is performed on the left and right edges.	

■ Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper

Characteristics	A heavy coating is added to this thick paper, making it ideal for handling as art material and a variety of textures.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Ex HW Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Glossy Photo Paper

Characteristics	A glossy photo paper, like that used to develop silver-halide photos. Ideal when you want high-quality finish for photographs. Processed with resin coat processing to prevent rippling and ensure a flat finish.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Glossy Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24", 14", 10", A1, B2
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Glossy Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

■ SemiGlos Photo Paper

Characteristics	Subdues light reflected from its white surface to create a softer effect in its finish. The surface reflects little bright light, making it ideal for show panels, presentation materials, POPs, etc.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	SemiGlos Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24", 14", 10", A1, B2
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Sem-Gl Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper

Characteristics	A glossy photo paper, like that used to develop silver-halide photos. Processed with resin coat processing to prevent rippling and ensure a flat finish. This thick paper is similar to the quality of silver halide photographs.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	HW Glossy Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

■ Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper

Characteristics	Subdues light reflected from its white surface to create a softer effect in its finish. The surface reflects little bright light, making it ideal for show panels, presentation materials, POPs, etc. This thick paper is similar to the quality of silver halide photographs.	
Print Application	Photo	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	○
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	HW SemiGI Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Synthetic Paper

Characteristics	A superior synthetic paper of polypropylene film for display posters. Can be used to display outdoors after laminating.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Synthetic Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Syn. Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

■ Adhesive Synthetic Paper

Characteristics	An economical superior synthetic paper of polypropylene film for display posters. Can be used to display outdoors after laminating.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Adhesive Synthetic Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	×
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Adh. Syn. Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Backlit Film

Characteristics	Printing is performed on the glossy, semi-transparent surface of this film, then a projector light mounted behind the film makes the print surface more beautiful. Use indoors, outdoors as an electrical decoration or beautiful display applications.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Backlit Film
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Backlit Film
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

■ Flame-Resistant Cloth

Characteristics	This is indoor cloth that has superior durability and is flame resistant. Suitable for horizontal banners, tapestries, to create a good mood, or atmosphere.	
Print Application	Signs	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Flame-Resistant Cloth
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	×
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Flame-Res.Cloth
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	The standard cutter cannot be used to perform automatic cutting. After printing, cut the media manually. (→ P.2-34) The borderless printing is performed on the left and right edges.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Proofing Paper

Characteristics	Can cover the color reproduction of offset printing for proofreading, thus achieving color tones close to those of the final print. Ideal for printers who need color output for proofing.	
Print Application	Proof	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	◎
	Matte Black	×
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Proofing Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Proofing Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

■ Newsprint for Proofing

Characteristics	Best for Newsprint for Proofing. Texture almost the same as newsprint, and available in a wide variety of colors. Three main types of Newsprint Proof that are used in Japan are provided.	
Print Application	Proof	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	×
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Newsprint for Proofing 1~3
	Roll Paper Width	A1
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	News Proof 1 News Proof 2 News Proof 3
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	Optional RIP software sold separately is required.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Fine Art Photo

Characteristics	From portraits and landscapes to digital art, this media produces exceedingly high, composed quality.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Photo
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	×
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	The standard cutter cannot be used to perform automatic cutting. After printing, cut the media manually. (→ P.2-34) The borderless printing is performed on the left and right edges.	

■ Fine Art Heavyweight Photo

Characteristics	From portraits and landscapes to digital art, this media produces exceedingly high, composed quality.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Heavyweight Photo
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	×
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	FneArt HW Photo
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	The standard cutter cannot be used to perform automatic cutting. After printing, cut the media manually. (→ P.2-34) The borderless printing is performed on the left and right edges.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Fine Art Textured

Characteristics	For landscapes, watercolors, etc. this media reproduces exceedingly high, composed quality.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Fine Art Textured
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	△
	Auto Cut	×
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	FineArt Txtr
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments	The standard cutter cannot be used to perform automatic cutting. After printing, cut the media manually. (→ P.2-34) The borderless printing is performed on the left and right edges.	

■ Canvas SemiGlos

Characteristics	Using polyester cloth as its base, this media creates a bold, unique feeling. Ideal for output of artworks such as digital paintings, copies of oil paintings, etc.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Canvas SemiGlos
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	×
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Canvas Semi-Gl
Printhead Optimum Height	H	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Japanese Paper Washi

Characteristics	Ink jet printing and texture of traditional Japanese washi paper combine well. This media is ideal for any type of artwork for a warm, calm presentation, including watercolors, ink drawings, Japanese paintings, Japanese style POPs, etc.	
Print Application	Art	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Japanese Paper Washi
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	JPN Paper Washi
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

■ Colored Coated Paper

Characteristics	Ideal for price POPs at drugstores and other retail outlets. Covered on both sides with high-impact yellow.	
Print Application	Generic	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	Colored Coated Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24"
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	Colored Coated
Printhead Optimum Height	M	
Comments		

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ CAD Tracing Paper

Characteristics	Tracing paper that can be used for color printing, and ideal for CAD plans and drawings.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Tracing Paper
	Roll Paper Width	24", A1
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	CAD Trace Paper
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Comments		

■ CAD Translucent Matte Film

Characteristics	A translucent film for CAD designs (line drawings). Superior, stable dimensions, for master plans and other high-quality output.	
Print Application	CAD	
Display	Indoors	○
	Outdoors	×
Black Ink Suitability	Photo Black	○
	Matte Black	◎
Printer Driver Settings	Media Type	CAD Translucent Matte Film
	Roll Paper Width	A1
	Borderless Printing	×
	Auto Cut	○
Operation Panel Settings	Media Type	CAD Matte Film
Printhead Optimum Height	L	
Comments	After cutting trimming paper, pre-cut paper, or other such media, remove the sheet manually.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Media Size

The table below lists the media sizes and feeding methods that can be used with this printer.

■ Roll Media

This table lists roll media with maximum diameters of 150 mm (5.1 in.), media core inside diameter of 2 or 3 inches.

Width	Size Name in Printer Driver ^{*1}	BorderlessPrinting ^{*2}
Non-category 24" 609.6 mm (24 in.)	ARCH D, ARCH C, 20" x 24"	○
ISO A1 594.0 mm (24 in.)	ISO A1, ISO A2	○
JIS B2 515.0 mm (20.28 in.)	JIS B2, JIS B3	○
ISO A2 16.54-in. Roll (420.0 mm)	ISO A2, ISO A3	×
Non-category 16" 406.4 mm (16 in.)	US Photo	○
Non-category 14" 355.6 mm (14 in.)	ANSI Legal	○
ISO A3 297.0 mm (11.69 in.)	ISO A3, ISO A4	×
Non-category 10" 254.0 mm (10 in.)	10" x 15", 10" x 12", 8" x 10"	○

*1. Borderless printing is possible with Custom Settings using the widths of the media above.

*2. **Media Types** that can be used for borderless printing are: Heavy Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, SemiGlos Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Special 1 to 5. However, Premium Matte Paper, Flame-Resistant Cloth and Fine Art cannot be cut automatically. After printing, cut the media manually. (→ [P.2-34](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Cut Sheet

Cut sheets up to 606.9 mm wide (listed below) can be used.

Size (Width)	Dimensions
ISO A1	594.0 x 841.0 mm (23.39 x 33.11 in.)
ISO A2	420.0 x 594.0 mm (16.54 x 23.39 in.)
ISO A3+	329.0 x 483.0 mm (12.95 x 19.02 in.)
ISO A3	297.0 x 420.0 mm (11.69 x 16.54 in.)
ISO A4	210.0 x 297.0 mm (8.27 x 11.69 in.)
ISO B2	500.0 x 707.0 mm (19.69 x 27.83 in.)
ISO B3	353.0 x 500.0 mm (13.90 x 19.69 in.)
ISO B4	250.0 x 353.0 mm (9.84 x 13.90 in.)
JIS B2	515.0 x 728.0 mm (20.28 x 28.66 in.)
JIS B3	364.0 x 515.0 mm (14.33 x 20.28 in.)
JIS B4	257.0 x 364.0 mm (10.12 x 14.33 in.)
ANSI D	558.8 x 863.6 mm (22 x 34 in.)
ANSI C	431.8 x 558.8 mm (17 x 22 in.)
ANSI B	279.4 x 431.8 mm (11 x 17 in.)
ANSI B Super	330.2 x 482.6 mm (13 x 19 in.)
ANSI Letter	215.9 x 279.4 mm (8.5 x 11 in.)
ANSI Legal	215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 in.)
ARCH D	609.6 x 914.4 mm (24 x 36 in.)
ARCH C	457.2 x 609.6 mm (18 x 24 in.)

Size (Width)	Dimensions
ARCH B	304.8 x 457.2 mm (12 x 18 in.)
ARCH A	228.6 x 304.8 mm (9 x 12 in.)
DIN C2	458.0 x 648.0 mm (18.03 x 25.51 in.)
DIN C3	324.0 x 458.0 mm (12.76 x 18.03 in.)
DIN C4	229.0 x 324.0 mm (9.02 x 12.76 in.)
Poster 20" x 30"	508.0 x 762.0 mm (20 x 30 in.)
20" x 24"	508.0 x 609.6 mm (20 x 24 in.)
18" x 22"	457.2 x 558.8 mm (18 x 22 in.)
14" x 17"	355.6 x 431.8 mm (14 x 17 in.)
10" x 15"	254.0 x 381.0 mm (10 x 15 in.)
10" x 12"	254.0 x 304.8 mm (10 x 12 in.)
8" x 10"	203.2 x 254.0 mm (8 x 10 in.)
US Photo	406.4 x 508.0 mm (16 x 20 in.)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Original data the same as the media

In addition to the normal media sizes, there are borderless sizes and oversizes. The size of the printable areas, actual settings, and actual printing areas are different for these sizes. Select a size that matches your needs.

Note

- To display Oversize, click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** sheet, then under **Display Series** select **Oversize**.

■ Normal Size:

Achieves a printout that is the same size as the media. This can be used with all media sizes and media types. The printout has top, bottom, left, and right margins, and images with margins can be trimmed.

● Roll Media

Printable Paper Size	Standard sizes from 24", ISO A1, JIS B2, ISO A2, 16", 14", 10", and Custom Sizes of the above widths.
Printable Media Types	All media types

Printable Area	<p>Printing possible inside the area 5 mm in from the top, bottom, left and right margins.</p>
Media to Load	<p>Same size as the Media Size or wide roll paper.</p>
Print Data and Results	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

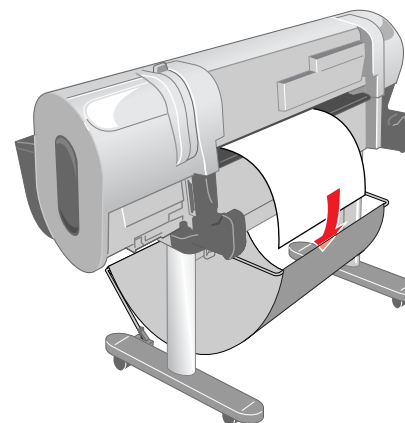
Index

● Cut Sheets

Printable Media Size	ARCH D to 8 x 10 Standard Sizes, and 203.2 x 203.2 mm to 609.6 x 1400 mm Custom Sizes
Printable Type	All media types
Printable Area	<p>Printing possible inside the area 5 mm in from the top, left and right area margins, and 23 mm in from the bottom margin.</p>
Media to Load	<p>Data created the same size as cut sheet.</p>
Print Data and Results	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size.</p>

Important

- The print quality or the precision of line feed may deteriorate at the top margin of the media, or the surface of the print may appear scratchy. Also, ink may stick to the top and bottom edges. If the printhead is scratching the surface of the media, raise the printhead to a higher position. (→ P.2-40)
- When loading cut sheets that are longer than 914 mm (36"), the trailing edge of the sheet will touch the floor and may become dirty. Before such a long cut sheet, before you start the print job remove the roll holder and spread a cloth or some paper on the floor, or when the cut sheet starts to feed tuck the trailing edge into the output stacker. (→ P.2-39)



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Borderless Printing

With borderless printing sizes, printing is done from edge to edge without leaving any margins. Borderless printing is limited to roll media, and there are limitations on the roll width and type of media that can be used. Also, the range of images that can be printed is different for some printing methods. For more details about borderless printing, please refer to [Chapter 3 “Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders \(Borderless Printing\)”](#) (→ [P.3-13](#)) (→ [P.3-77](#)).

● Roll Media

Printable Paper Size	24", ISO A1, JIS B2, 16", 14", 10" Standard Sizes and Custom Sizes of the same width.
Printable Type	Heavy Coated Paper, Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, SemiGlos Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Flame Resistant Cloth, Special 1 to 5
Printable Area	<p>Allowed Printing Area of Media Size</p>
Media to Load	<p>Data created the same width as roll paper.</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

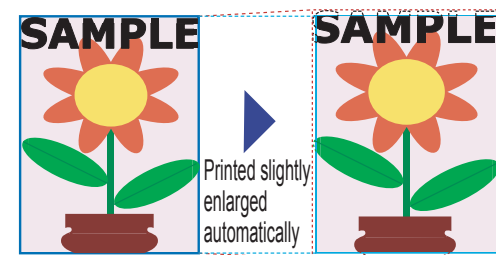
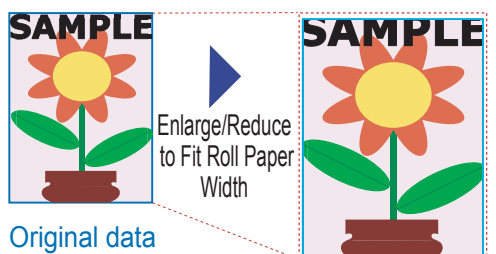
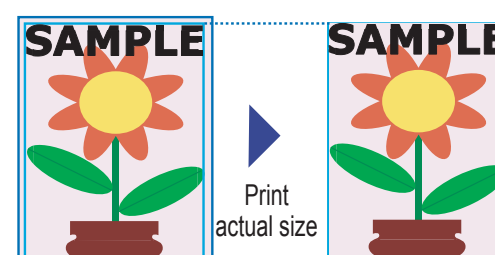
Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Print Data and Results	Scale to fit the Page Size (Example)	<p>Data created the same size as Media Size.</p>  <p>Original data the same as the media</p> <p>Print Results</p>
	Scale to fit Roll Paper Width (Example)	<p>Create data of any size.</p>  <p>Original data of desired size</p> <p>Print Results</p>
	Print Image with Actual Size (Example)	<p>Create data larger by 3 mm at the top, bottom, left, and right margins.</p>  <p>Original data 3 mm larger than the media size at the top, bottom, left, right margins.</p> <p>Print Results</p>

■ Oversize

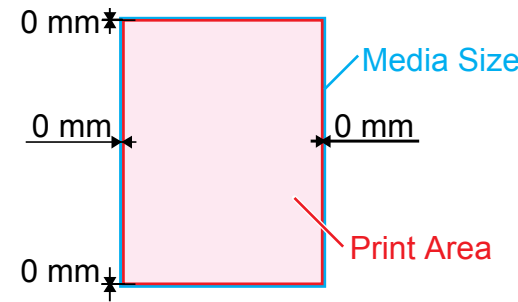
With Oversize you can print over the entire surface of the media. This is possible with all media types. When you use Oversize to print, you must load media that is larger than the Media Size. Also, the margins are attached beyond the media size.



Note

- To display Oversize click the **Size Options** button on the **Page Setup** sheet, then under **Display Series** select **Oversize**.

● Roll Media

Printable Paper Size	ISO A1 to Photo 8 x 10 Standard Sizes Width 100.0 to 599.6 mm Custom Size
Printable Type	All media types
Printable Area	<p>Allowed printing surface area of media size</p>  <p>Media Size</p> <p>Print Area</p>

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

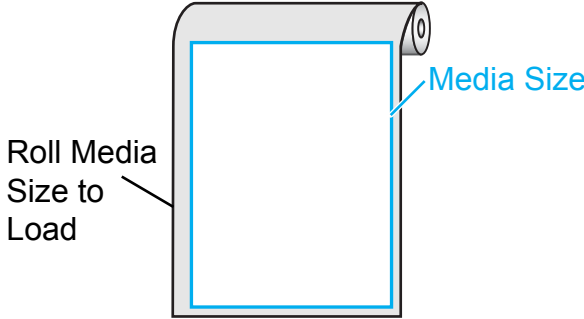
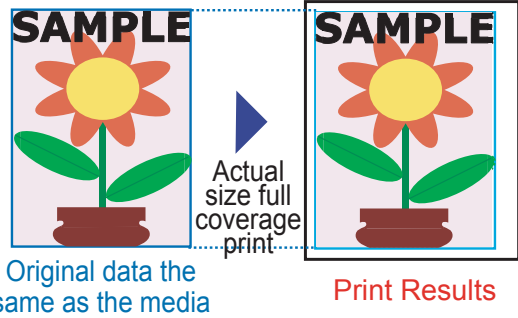
Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

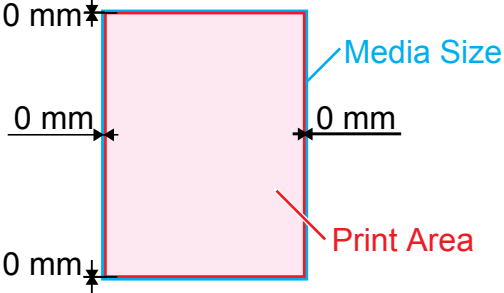
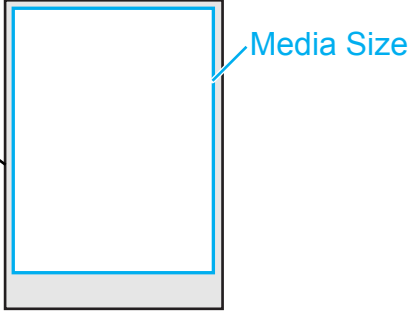
Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Media to Load	<p>Roll Media more than 10 mm wider than the media size.</p> 
Print Data and Results	<p>Data created the same size as media size.</p> 

● Cut Sheets

Printable Paper Size	Standard ISO A1 to Photo sizes, and 203.2 x 203.2 mm to 599.6 x 1400 mm Custom Sizes
Printable Media Types	All media types
Printable Area	<p>Allowed printing surface area of media size</p> 
Media to Load	<p>Cut sheets more than 10 mm wider and 29 mm more than longer than the media size.</p> 

 Important

- The end edge of the roll media can disrupt a print job as it comes off the roll. Try to avoid printing in the area near the end edge of a roll.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

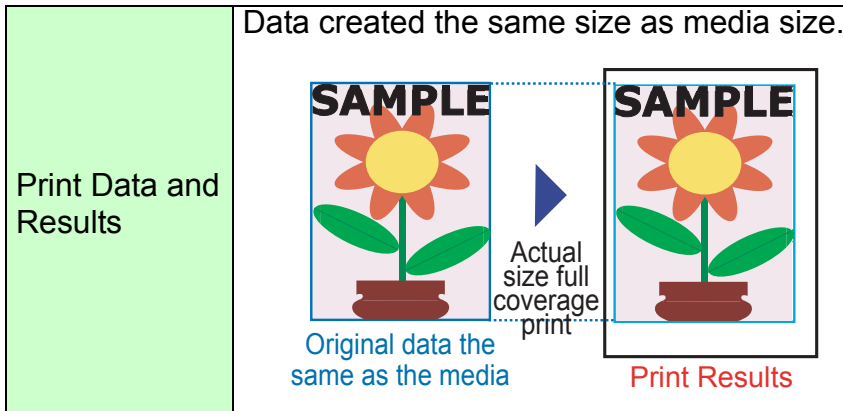
Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

**Important**

- You cannot use ARCH D and other sizes wider than 599.6 mm to print for Oversize.

Handling Paper and Other Print Media

For details about how to handle and store print media, please refer to the instructions provided with the media.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing with Rolls

Loading Roll Media

This is the general procedure for loading roll media.

- ▼ After printing, remove the completed printout and any media loaded on the platen. (→ [P.2-33](#), [P.2-39](#))
- ▼ On the operation panel, select the roll media source. (→ [P.2-26](#))
- ▼ Load the roll media in the roll holder slot. (→ [P.2-27](#))
- ▼ Load the roll media on the platen. (→ [P.2-30](#))
- ▼ On the printer operation panel, select the media type. (→ [P.2-30](#))
- ▼ Adjust the amount of media feed. (→ [P.4-42](#))
- ▼ Start the print job from the computer. (→ [P.1-40](#))

Important

- Make sure that the printer is switched on before you load roll media. If the loaded media does not match the media type, this can affect the quality of printing.

■ Selecting the Paper Source

When printing on roll media, select roll media as the paper source on the operation panel.

- 1** Press and hold the **Paper Source** button for 1 second or more to light the **Roll Media** lamp.

Pressing the **Paper Source** button alternates the selection between Roll Media and Cut Sheet.



When a cut sheet is loaded, the printer will display **Remove CutSheet?**.

When another roll media is loaded, hold down the **Stop** button for more than 1 sec., to display **Remove RollMedia?**.

- 2** If either a cut sheet or roll media is loaded in the printer, press the **OK** button.

Remove RollMedia?
 Press OK/Stop

Remove either the cut sheet or the roll media. (→ [P.2-33](#), [P.2-39](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

■ Loading the Roll Media

Follow this procedure to set a roll in the roll holder. First, if there is a cut sheet or an ejected printed sheet on the platen, remove it.

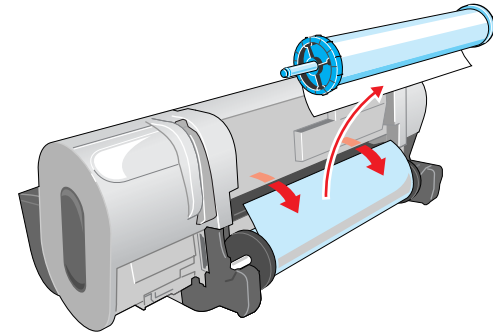
Important

- When you are printing a banner or other long printout, the printed media may touch the floor and become dirty. Before starting the print job, cover the floor with a clean cloth or some paper.

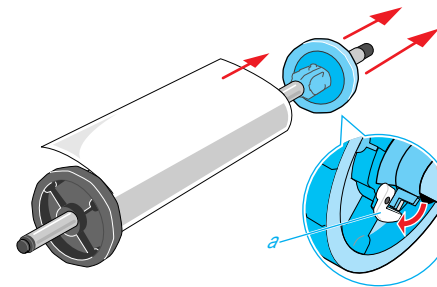
Note

- Since the platen may be fouled with ink, clean inside the upper cover before you switch to printing on a large size. (→ [P.4-11](#))
- For more details about media that can be set in the roll holder, please refer to “[Media You Can Use](#)” (→ [P.2-2](#)).

- 1 If there is roll media remaining in the printer, push the release lever to the rear to open, rotate the roll holder toward the rear to take up the remaining paper, then remove the roll.



- 2 Lower the holder stopper release lever (a) to release the lock, remove the holder stopper, then remove the roll from the holder.



Important

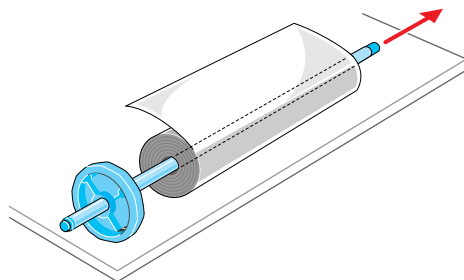
- Store unused roll media in its original package. Store the package in a cool, dry location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

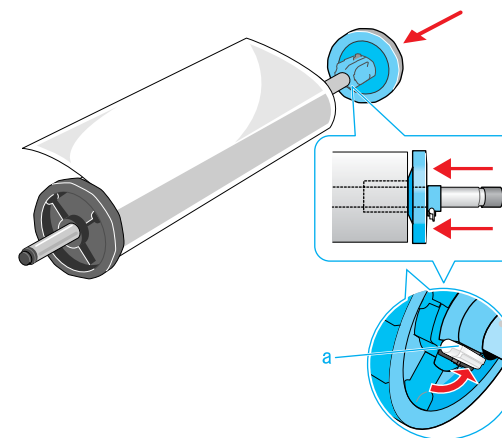
Contents

Index

- 3** With the edge of the roll media up and pointing in, insert the shaft of the roll holder into the roll from the left side until it is all the way in and stops.



- 4** Attach the holder stopper to the right side of the roll holder and insert it until it contacts the core of the roll, then push the holder stopper lever (a) over toward the shaft to lock it.



The roll media is locked in place by the roll holder.

Caution

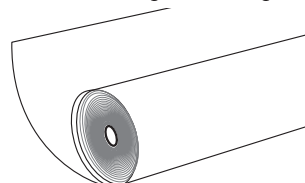
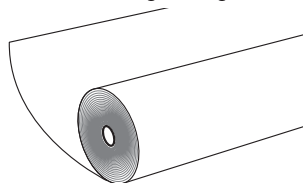
- Lay the roll holder horizontally onto a table or desk. Roll media are heavy and can cause personal injury if they drop.

Important

- If the edge of the roll paper is not straight, take up the roll paper until the edge is straight then set it. This could cause poor paper feed.

● Roll media edges aligned

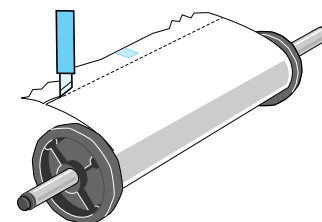
● Roll media edges not aligned



- Press the roll holder onto the end of the roll until it is completely inserted. Make sure there is no gap (a gap can cause poor feeding).

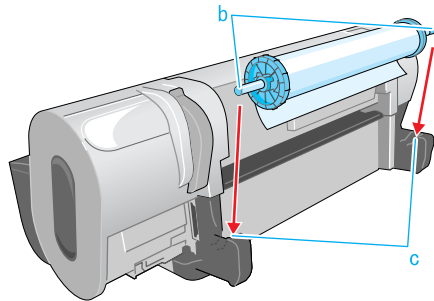
Important

- If the leading edge of the roll media is not straight, or if it is marked by dirt or tape, this could cause poor feeding and lead to poor print quality. In such a case, cut the leading edge of the roll media in a straight line before setting the roll holder in the printer.

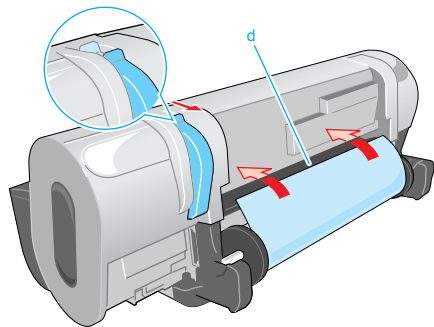


5 Hold the ends of the roll media with the roll facing the printer (as shown in the illustration), then align and set the ends of the roll holder (b) into the guide grooves (c) of the roll holder slots.

If the roll paper is slack and its edge is not straight, take up the roll slack until the edges are straight then set it.



6 Push the release lever toward the rear to open it, then pull out the roll media evenly and insert it into the feed slot (d) and feed it in until you hear the suction sound of the vacuum.



As soon as you insert the edge as far as the top of the platen, you will hear the printer start the vacuum automatically.

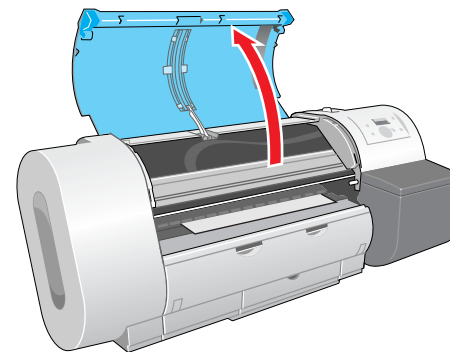
Important

- When you pull out the sheet, be careful to avoid touching the printing surface of the paper. Touching the print surface could cause poor print quality.
- If you see the media is wrinkled or curled, remove the wrinkles or curls before loading the media.
- If media does not feed easily through the feed slot (d) insert the edge skewed to the left or right corner, then and then feed it in until it is parallel.

Note

- The strength of the vacuum suction can be adjusted while the release lever is open. If the media is difficult to load, on the printer operation panel press [▲] (stronger) or [▼] (weaker) to adjust the strength of the suction.

7 Open the upper cover.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

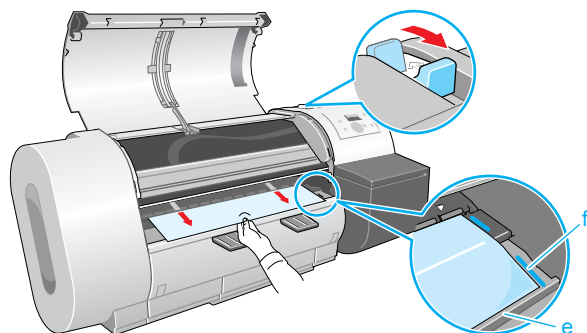
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

8 While gently pulling out the center of the leading edge (e) of the roll media, align the right edge of the media so it is parallel to guideline (f), then pull the release lever to the front to close it.



10 Press [◀] or [▶] to select the loaded media type, then press **OK**.



The (=) mark to the left of a setting indicates that roll media type is currently selected, then the preparation for the select media begins.

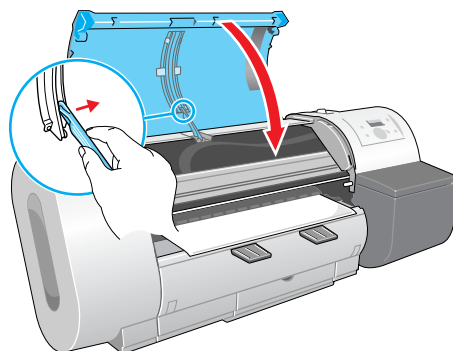
The table below lists the settings for the media types. Only the types of media that can be used with the black ink tank installed in the printer are displayed.

Media Name	Media Type Setting
Plain Paper	Plain Paper
CAD Plain Paper	CAD Plain Paper
Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
Coated Paper	Coated Paper
Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
Premium Matte Paper	Premium Matte
Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
Glossy Photo Paper	Glossy Photo
SemiGlos Photo Paper	Semi-GI Photo
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper	HW Glossy Photo
Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper	HW SemiGI Photo
Synthetic Paper	Syn. Paper
Adhesive Synthetic Paper	Adh. Syn. Paper
Backlit Film	Backlit Film
Flame-Resistant cloth	Flame-Res.Cloth

Important

- Do not pull strongly the roll media when you align it with the guideline. The roll media may not feed out straight in some cases.

9 Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



Media Type is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Media Name	Media Type Setting
Proofing Paper	Proofing Paper 2
Newsprint for Proofing	News Proof/1/2/3
Fine Art Photo	FineArt Photo
Fine Art Heavyweight Photo	FneArt HW Photo
Fine Art Textured	FineArt Txtr
Canvas SemiGlos	Canvas Semi-Gl
Japanese Paper Washi	JPN Paper Washi
Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
CAD Tracing Paper	CAD Trace Paper
CAD Translucent Matte Film	CAD Matte Film
Special 1~5	Special 1~5

Important

- Make sure that you have selected the correct setting for the media type. If you have selected an incorrect setting for the media type, do the procedure in [“Selecting the Media Type”](#) (→ P.2-32).
- As soon as each sheet is printed, remove it from the output stacker.

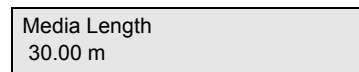
Note

- If a message appears in the display after loading roll paper, the operation panel lamp flashes.
- Before shipping a printer, the Media Type is set for **Plain Paper**. Or, when the release lever is opened and closed, the media type setting is reset automatically to **Plain Paper**.
- The media size is detected automatically, therefore no setting for the size is required.

- In order to align the leading edge correctly when the roll media is replaced with a new one, the media is fed and then cut the correct amount for the type of media. Also, if a barcode is printed on the media, the portion where the barcode is will be cut off after the barcode is read.

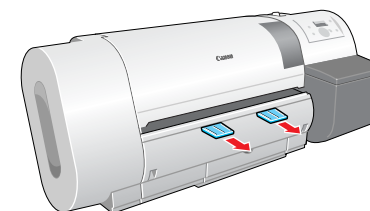
11 If a new roll without barcodes is loaded in the printer while the paper remains function is enabled, press [◀] or [▶] to select the length of roll then press the **OK** button.

If you have set a roll with media remaining barcodes printed, the amount of media remaining is detected automatically so you do not have to select it.



After a few seconds, **Online** appears on the display and the printer is ready to print.

12 If the output assist guides are not extended, pull it out.



Important

- The output assists guides should always be extended for printing. If they are not extended, this could lead to poor print quality.

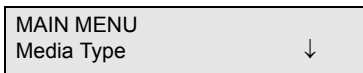
■ Selecting the Media Type

When you are using the printer with media loaded, you must use the printer operation panel to select the type of media loaded. If the type of print media is not suitable, you may not be able to achieve the desired results. Follow the procedure below if the media type selection does not match the type of media loaded in the printer.

1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Media Type**, then press [▼].



3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select the name of the media type then press **OK**.



An equals sign (=) displays on the left to indicate the media type is set.

Important

- In order to achieve the best printing results with this printer, the amount of feed is fine adjusted for each type of media. For this reason, the image size, margins, and other settings change for each media type.
- When you select another media type, you should also adjust the feed amount (→ [P.4-42](#)) and “[Adjusting the Height of the Printhead](#)” (→ [P.2-40](#)).

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Removing a Roll

Follow the procedure below to remove a loaded roll or when the media cannot be cut automatically. Or, if you are printing on a media with the **Eject Cut** item of Media Configuration Tool (→ [P.3-58](#)) (→ [P.3-127](#)) set to **Required**, perform the same procedure when you see **Cut by Stop Key** after printing finishes.

Important

- When the roll media remaining detection function is on, you must follow a strict procedure to remove a roll. If you open the release lever and remove the roll before the media remaining bar code prints, the printer will lose its ability to monitor the amount of media remaining on the roll.
- After removing a roll from the printer, store it in its original vinyl bag. When you print on roll media that has not been properly stored, the surface of the media may chafe or the print quality may be poor.

- 1 Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second.

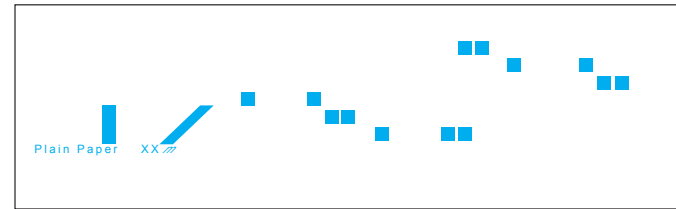


- 2 Press the **OK** button.

Remove Roll Media?
 Press OK/Stop

- For the media when the **Standard Cutter** operation is set to **Enable**:

1. If the paper remains function is switched on for the roll media, a barcode is printed on the leading edge of the roll.



2. The roll is ejected at the back of the printer.

Important

- Even if the roll paper remains function is on, if you open the release lever without pressing the **Stop/Eject** button the barcode does not print. In such a case, the roll remains function cannot be done with that roll.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- If the printer cannot perform automatic cutting with the media:
 1. Press the **Online** button to set the printer offline.
 2. Press the [▼] button (not longer than 0.8 sec) to feed the media 330 mm.
 3. Cut along the cutting-line with a pair of scissors.
 4. Hold down the [▲] button on the printer operation panel for more than 1 sec. until you see **Feed Limit..** on the display. The roll media reverse feeds 300 mm and stops automatically.
 5. Press the **Online** button to set the printer offline.

Important

- If the printer receives new print data before this operation is performed, printing will continue.
- Cut exactly along the cut-line. The printer may not be able to perform continuous printing if you cut at a position more than 30 mm away from the cut-line.

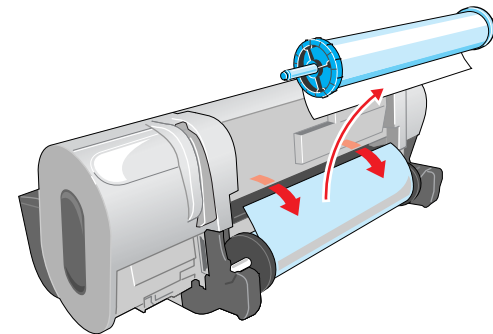
- For Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlossy Photo Paper, Backlit Film, CAD Translucent Matte Film:

The printer stops after printing to protect the printing surface. To prevent the printouts from falling into the output stacker, support the printout with your hand and press the **Stop/Eject** button to perform the cut.

Important

- If the ink drying time has been set, you will not be able to perform cutting with the **Stop/Eject** button until the prescribed drying time has elapsed.

- 3** Rotate the roll holder backward to take up excess media and remove it.



Printing with Cut Sheets

Loading Cut Sheets

To print on the cut sheet, follow the procedure below.

- ▼ If there is a cut sheet in the printer, remove it. (→ [P.2-33](#), [P.2-39](#))
- ▼ On the printer operation panel, select cut sheet as the paper feed source. (→ [P.2-35](#))
- ▼ Place the cut sheet on the platen. (→ [P.2-36](#))
- ▼ On the printer operation panel, select the media type. (→ [P.2-38](#))
- ▼ Adjust the amount of media feed. (→ [P.4-42](#))
- ▼ Start the print job from the computer. (→ [P.1-40](#))

Important

- You must make sure that the printer is switched on before loading a cut sheet. Also, if the loaded sheet does not match the media type selected on the operation panel, this could cause a media loading error or lead to poor print quality.

Note

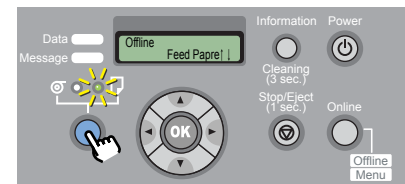
- Store unused cut sheets in the original package. Store the package in a cool, dry location that is not exposed to direct sunlight.

■ Selecting the Paper Source

When printing on the cut sheet, with the operation panel select cut sheet as the media source.

- 1** Press and hold the **Paper Source** button for 1 second or more to light the **Cut Sheet** lamp.

Pressing **Paper Source** alternates the selection between **Roll Media** and **Cut Sheet**.



When a roll is loaded, the printer will display **Remove RollMedia?**

When another cut sheet is loaded, hold down the **Stop** button for more than 1 sec., to display **Remove CutSheet?**

- 2** If either a cut sheet or roll media is loaded in the printer, press the **OK** button.

Remove RollMedia?
Press OK/Stop

Remove either the cut sheet or the roll media. (→ [P.2-33](#), [P.2-39](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menu

Contents

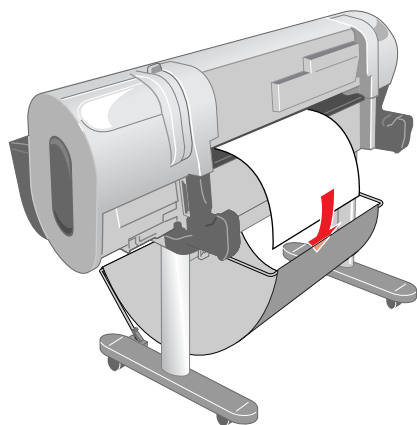
Index

■ Loading Cut Sheets

Follow this procedure to set a cut sheet on the platen. First, if there is a cut sheet on the platen, remove it.

Important

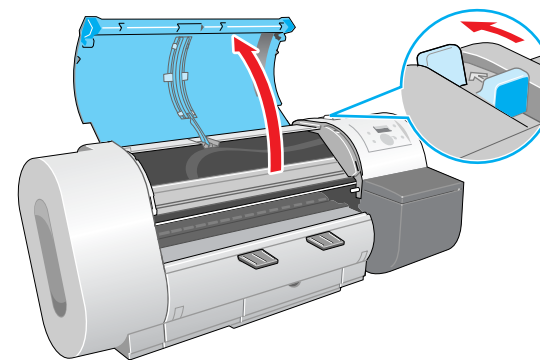
- When loading cut sheets that are longer than 914 mm (36"), the trailing edge of the sheet will touch the floor and may become dirty. When you set such a long cut sheet, before you start the print job remove the roll holder and spread a cloth or some paper on the floor, or when the cut sheet starts to feed, tuck the trailing edge into the output stacker.



Note

- The platen may be fouled with ink so clean inside the upper cover before you switch to printing on a large size. (→ [P.4-11](#))
- For more details about cut sheets that can be set on the platen, please refer to "[Media You Can Use](#)" (→ [P.2-2](#)).
- The printhead may rub the surface of the curled media, so try to correct the curl.

- 1 Open the upper cover and push the release lever toward the rear.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

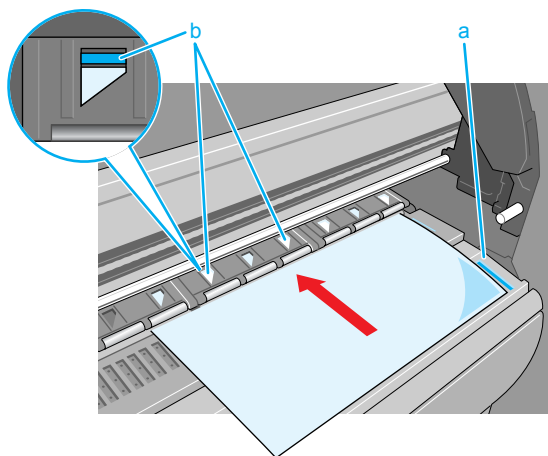
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 2** With the print side of the cut sheet facing up, insert and press down parallel on the sheet holder, making sure it is aligned with the line (a) on the right and the orange line (b) at the back.



When the cut sheet is inserted, the printer grabs it and holds it on the platen.

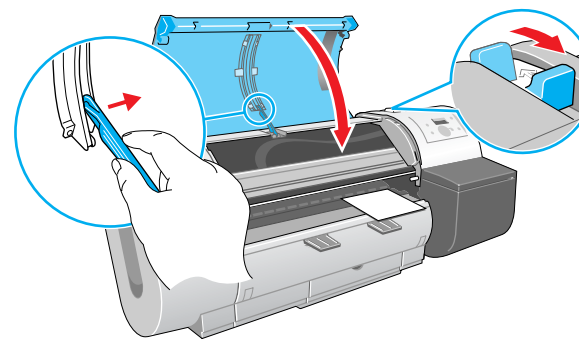
Important

- Set a cut sheet parallel with the guideline on the right side of the platen. If the cut sheet is skewed, this will cause a skew error. If the error occurs, set the cut sheet once again so it is aligned correctly.

Note

- The strength of the vacuum suction can be adjusted while the release lever is open. If the media is difficult to load, on the printer operation panel press [▲] (stronger) or [▼] (weaker) to adjust the strength of the suction.

- The platen of this printer is provided with holes through which air is sucked to create the vacuum that holds the paper on the platen. You may hear a sound from the location where the paper is set; this is normal and does not mean any problem.
 - If you are concerned about the noise, shift the position of the paper about 1mm to the left or right (but not more than 1 mm).
- 3** Pull the release lever forward to close, raise the upper cover stopper and release the lock, then close the upper cover.



Media Type is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select the name of the media type then press **OK**.



The (=) mark to the left of a setting indicates that cut sheet type is currently selected, then the preparation for the select media begins.

The printer detects no skew and if there is no problem, then the printer enters the print standby mode.

The table below lists the possible settings for the cut sheet type. Only the settings of the type of media that can be used with the type of black ink tank mounted in the printer are displayed.

Media Name	Media Type Setting
Plain Paper	Plain Paper
CAD Plain Paper	CAD Plain Paper
Plain Paper (High Quality)	Plain Paper HQ
Recycled Coated Paper	Recycled Coated
Coated Paper	Coated Paper
Heavyweight Coated Paper	HW Coated
Premium Matte Paper	Premium Matte
Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	Ex HW Coated
Glossy Photo Paper	Glossy Photo
SemiGlos Photo Paper	Semi-GI Photo
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper	HW Glossy Photo
Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper	HW SemiGI Photo
Synthetic Paper	Syn. Paper

Adhesive Synthetic Paper	Adh. Syn. Paper
Backlit Film	Backlit Film
Flame-Resistant cloth	Flame-Res.Cloth
Proofing Paper	Proofing Paper 2
Newsprint for Proofing	News Proof 1/2/3
Fine Art Photo	FineArt Photo
Fine Art Heavyweight Photo	FneArt HW Photo,
Fine Art Textured	FineArt Txtr
Canvas SemiGlos	Canvas Semi-GI
Japanese Paper Washi	JPN Paper Washi
Colored Coated Paper	Colored Coated
CAD Tracing Paper	CAD Trace Paper
CAD Translucent Matte Film	CAD Matte Film
Special 1~5	Special 1~5

Important

- If the cut sheet is skewed, this will cause a skew error. If a skew error occurs, start at Step 1 and set the cut sheet again.
- Make sure that you have selected the correct setting for the media type. If you have selected an incorrect setting for the media type, perform the procedure in “[Selecting the Media Type](#)” (→ P.2-32)
- As soon as each sheet prints, remove it from the output stacker.

Note

- Before shipping a printer, the Media Type is set for **Plain Paper**. Also, when the release lever is opened and closed, the media type setting is reset automatically to **Plain Paper**.
- The media size is detected automatically, therefore no setting for the size is required.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

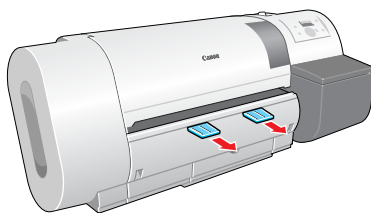
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

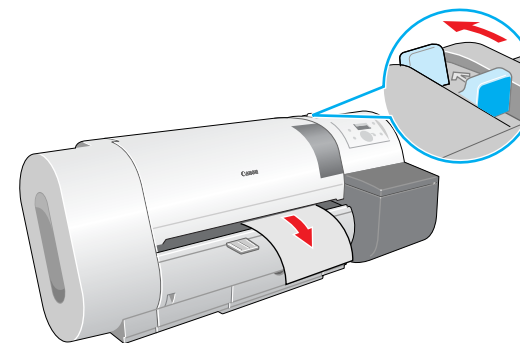
Contents

Index

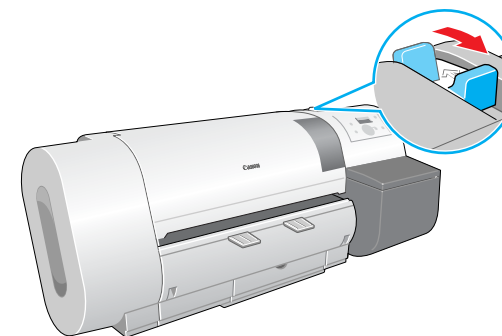
5 If the output assist guides are not extended, pull it out.



3 While holding the media, push the release lever back to open then remove the media.



4 Pull the release lever forward to close it.



Important

- The output assist guides should always be extended for printing. If they are not extended, this could lead to poor print quality.

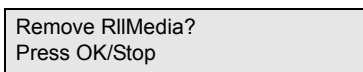
Removing a Cut Sheet

Follow the procedure below to remove a cut sheet from the printer.

1 Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second.



2 Press the **OK** button.



The loaded cut sheet is ejected at the front and then rests on the platen.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Adjusting the Height of the Printhead

It is possible to achieve the higher print quality by adjusting the height of the printhead. Follow the procedure below to operate.

- ▼ Adjust the height of the printhead. (→ P.2-40)
- ▼ Set a cut sheet of the type you intend to use. (→ P.2-26, P.2-35)
- ▼ Adjust the position of the printhead. (→ P.4-40)
- ▼ Start the print job from the computer. (→ P.1-40)
- ▼ After completing the special print job, return the printhead height to its original setting and re-align the printhead. (→ P.2-42)

Important

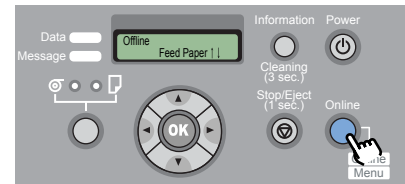
- After changing the height of the printhead, always adjust the print mode. If you do not perform the adjustments, you cannot achieve the best print results.
- When printing on paper-base media (ex: Coated Paper, Plain Paper) or any type of media that wrinkles easily, never print with the printhead lower than the best height for each media. This could also damage the printer.

Note

- Press the **Information** button to display **Head Height** and the current printhead height to confirm that the setting correct for the media in use.

Adjusting Printhead Height

- 1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 2 Press [◀] (or [▶]) to select **Chng Head Hght** then press [▼].

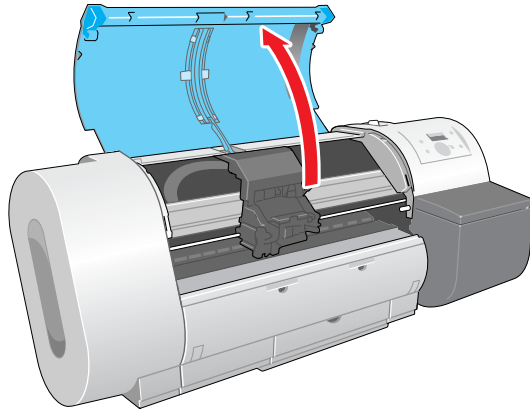


- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

Chng Head Hght
= Yes

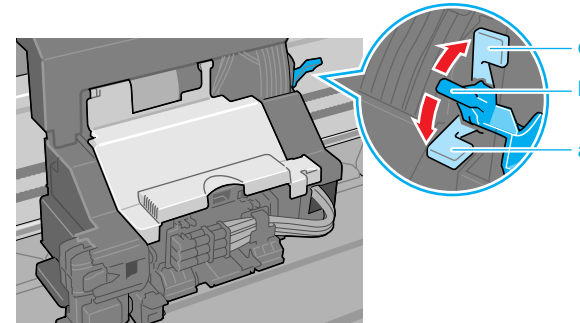
The carriage moves to the center when you see **Carriage Moving**.

- 4** Open the upper cover when you see **Open UpperCover**, then **Chng Head Hght** is displayed.

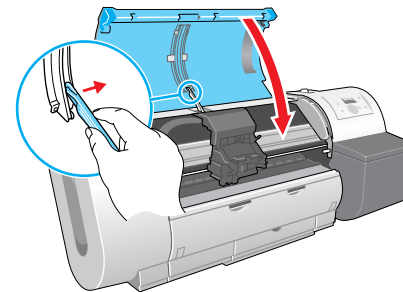


- 5** Adjust the height of the printhead with the printhead height adjustment lever.

When printing on CAD Plain Paper, CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film, set the lever to the low position (a), when printing on Canvas SemiGlos set the lever to the high position (c), and for all other media set the lever to the middle (b) (standard). If the printhead is scratching the surface of media that ripples or wrinkles easily, rather than use the recommended printhead height for that media, set the lever one step higher.



- 6** Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



The carriage returns to the home when you see **Carriage Moving**. The printer returns to the print ready status.

Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.
- If the printhead height adjustment lever is dirty, before continuing with this procedure, wring out a damp cloth and use it to clean the printhead height adjustment lever. (→ P.4-11)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Aligning the Printhead

After the printhead height has been adjusted, on the printer operation panel adjust select **Auto Head Adj. > Standard Adj.** to adjust the printhead. [“Aligning the Printhead”](#) (→ [P.4-40](#))

Re-adjusting Printhead Height

After the print job is finished, especially before starting the next print with another type of media, you must do the procedure to reset the printhead height adjustment lever to the optimum position for the next media.

[“Adjusting Printhead Height”](#) (→ [P.2-40](#))

After re-adjusting the printhead height position, you should once again use the operation panel to align the printhead.

[“Aligning the Printhead”](#) (→ [P.4-40](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 3 Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Printing from Windows	3-2
Before You Begin	3-2
Enlarging and Reducing the Original	3-6
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-13
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-22
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-24
Printing Posters (Page Layout)	3-26
Using Watermarks	3-28
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-30
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-38
Custom Print Quality	3-39
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing	3-42
About Media Size Options	3-51
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean	3-56
Software Provided for Windows	3-56
Printing from Macintosh	3-59
Before You Begin	3-59
Enlarging and Reducing the Original	3-65
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-77
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-86
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-89
Printing Posters (Page Layout)	3-92
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-94
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-100
Custom Print Quality	3-103
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing	3-107
Custom Sizes (User Print Settings)	3-121
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean	3-125
Software Provided for Macintosh	3-126

→ Before clicking the **Start Print** button

- Chapter 1
Basic Procedures
- Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media
- Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives
- Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer
- Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment
- Chapter 6
Troubleshooting
- Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing from Windows






This printer driver provides a variety of printer functions to meet your printing needs. In this chapter we will introduce these functions.

Before You Begin

There are some functions you should remember and use when you use this printer. Before you use the printer for different printing tasks, please read this section.

■ Basic Settings to Meet Your Needs (Type of Printing)

To achieve the best printing, you must adjust the color and other settings for the objective of the document. This printer driver provides superior settings frequently used to produce posters, POP ads, digital camera prints, CAD designs, and other prints. Just select from the list the type of document you need and perform the basic procedure for the print job. The following applications are provided for the types of prints shown below.

Type of Printing		Content	Setting Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Default Settings	Best for printing normal documents, with text, images, graphics, etc. mixed together.	Plain Paper	Standard	Auto	Default
	POP Ad	Best for printing mixed text and illustrations with bright and forceful eyecatching such as store posters.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +5
	Poster	Best for printing posters with centered photographs.	Proofing Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Auto	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	Photo (from digital camera)	Best for printing photos captured with a digital camera.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Perceptual (Photo graphic)	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	Photo (from scanner)	Best for reproduction of scanned photographs with color faithful to the quality of the original.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Colorimetric	Default

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer



Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

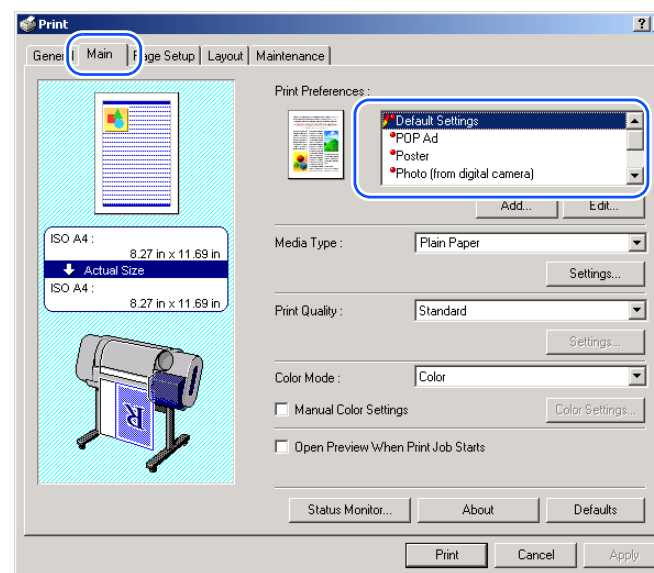
Type of Printing		Content	Setting Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Long Formats (Banner)	Best for long banner formats (vertical and horizontal) with mixed illustrations and text.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	CAD	Best for plans and design drawings with fine lines.	CAD Plain Paper	Standard	Saturation	Default

- *1. Photo Black Ink (BK) is the black ink tank type mounted in the printer.
- *2. Matte Black Ink (MBK) is the black ink tank type mounted in the printer.

Note

- For more details about print quality, please refer to “Custom Print Quality” in “Customizing Print Quality”. (→ P.3-39)
- For more details about color mode matching and color adjustments, please refer to “Fine Adjusting Color for Printing” in “Adjusting Color” (→ P.3-42) see “Color Matching” (→ P.3-46).

To perform the settings for a print, first open the **Main** sheet of the printer driver and then from **Print Preferences** select the type of printing that you want to perform.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

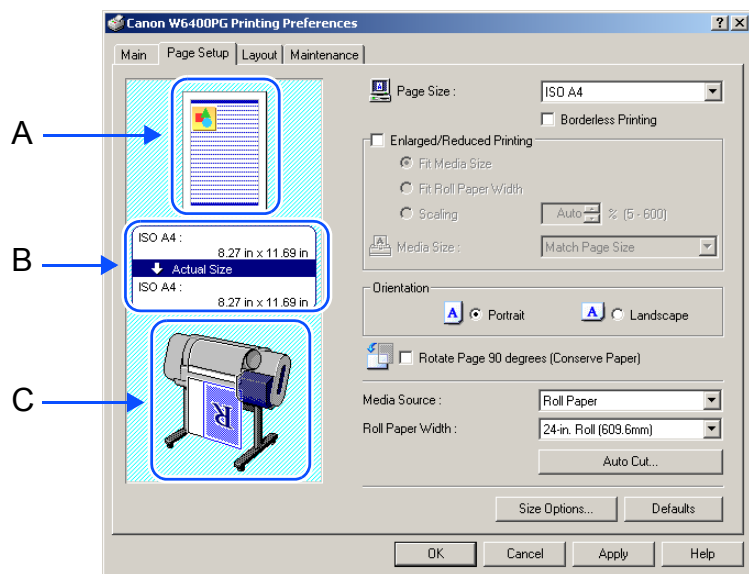
Index

Note

- The item in the list marked by the red ball contains the settings that the printer is already set up to execute.
- You can use the **Add** and **Edit** buttons to add and edit the printing types. For more details, refer to **Using a Print Preference > Adding a Print Preference**, or **Editing a Print Preference** in the online Help.

■ Printer Driver Settings at a Glance (Settings Preview)

The Preview illustrates the content of the current printer driver settings. If you change the page size and orientation, feed method, etc., you can confirm their immediate effect easily by viewing the effect of the new settings in the Preview image.



The Preview reflects changes in the settings described below.

	Setting Preview Description
A	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. : Borderless Printing, Color Mode, Orientation, Layout, Watermark
B	This displays the sizes of the Page Size and Media Size settings. Also, when the Enlarged/Reduced Printing and Borderless Printing items are selected, the mode and magnification are also displayed.
C	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. : Media Source, Borderless Printing, Enlarged/Reduced Printing, Automatic Cutting Settings, Print Centered, No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper), Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper), Orientation, Rotate 180 degrees, Mirror

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

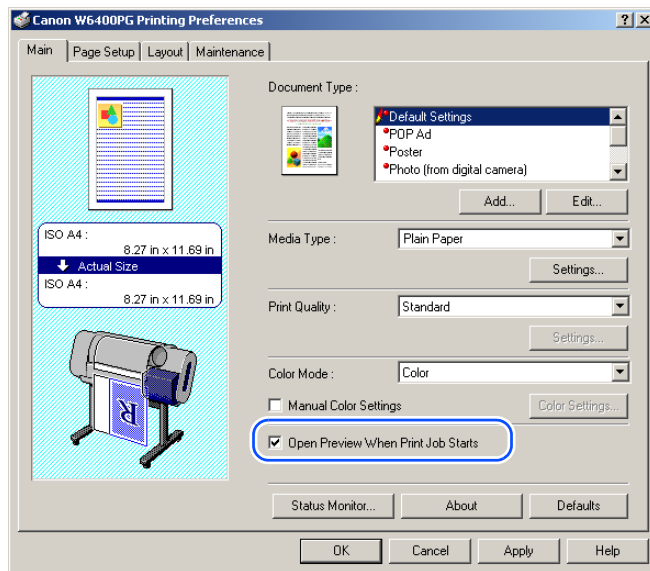
Contents

Index

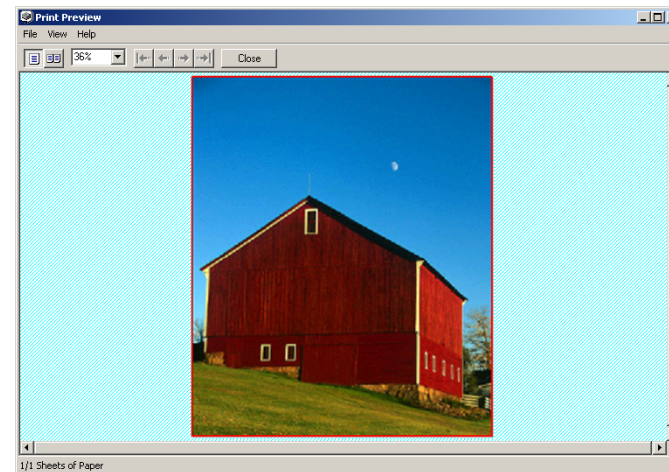
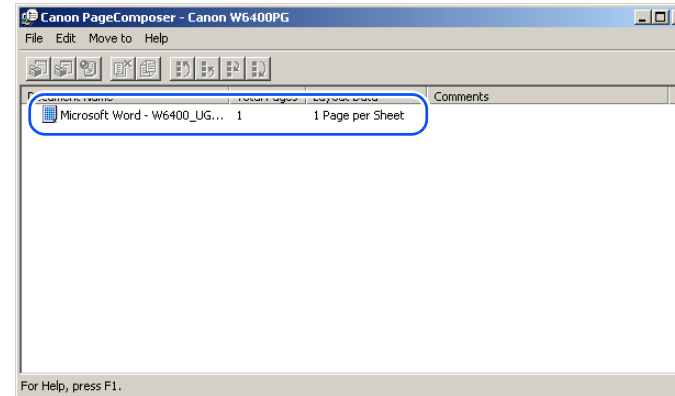
■ Confirming the Print Image (Print Preview)

There is one more function that displays the print image of the document in the Preview. This other image is called the **Print Preview**. If you set the Print Preview to display in the printer driver before the print job, the Preview will display at the start of every print job for you to check and prevent failed print jobs.

To have the **Print Preview** display, open the **Main** tab of the printer driver and select **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**.



When you execute a print job an edit screen (Page Composer) opens. Double-click the name of the document that is ready to print and display its Preview for confirmation.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

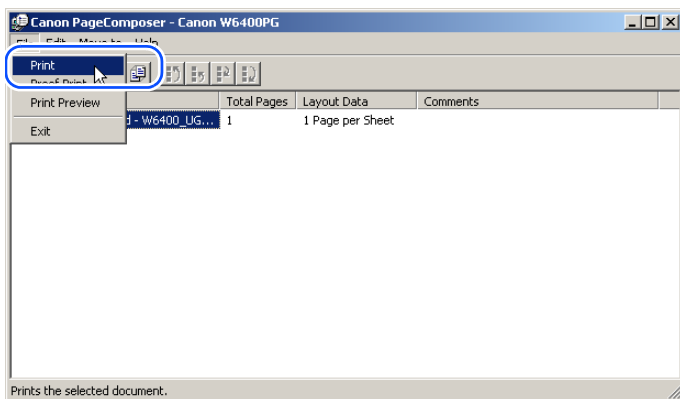
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Once you have confirmed that the image layout on the media is correct, you can close the Preview. After selecting the document name with PageComposer and confirming its appearance, start the print job from the **File** menu.



Enlarging and Reducing the Original

The original can be printed at a larger or smaller size. There are three methods for enlargement and reduction.

- Enlarging or reducing printing to fit the size of the media (→ [P.3-7](#))
- Enlarging or reducing fit the roll paper width (→ [P.3-9](#))
- Setting the desired scaling rate and printing. (→ [P.3-11](#))

Note

- When you need to enlarge TIFF image data or JPEG images captured with a digital camera, in Adobe Photoshop or a similar software application set the resolution setting above 150 dpi to achieve better printing results.

Note

- One the document name (print data) is selected in the PageComposer, you can edit the document as needed with the items in the **Edit** menu. For more details about these editing features, please refer to the PageComposer online Help.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

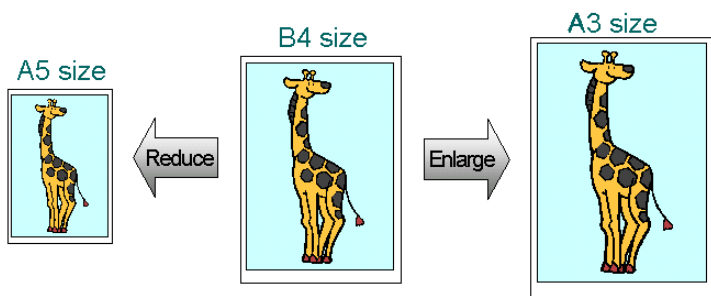
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media

By setting the size of the media actually loaded for printing, you can automatically enlarge or reduce the print automatically to match the size of the loaded media.



1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

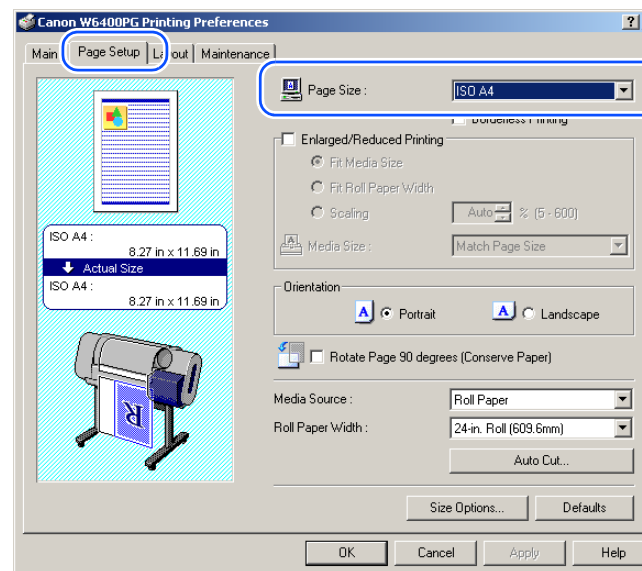


Note

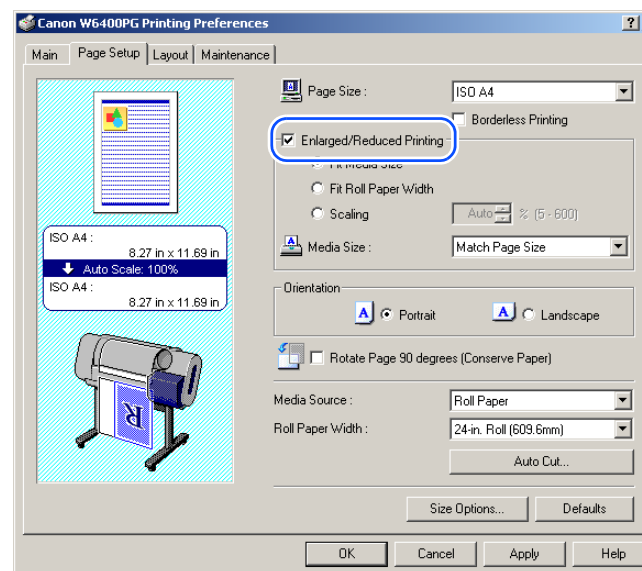
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ P.1-40)

2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

3 For **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.



4 Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

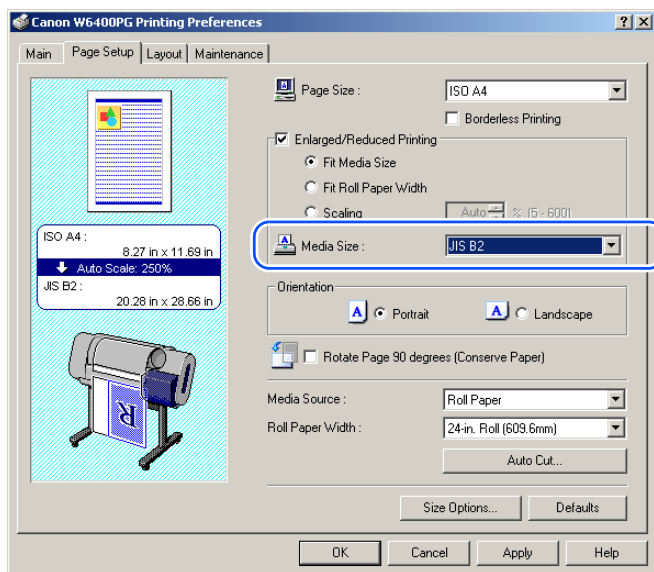


Note

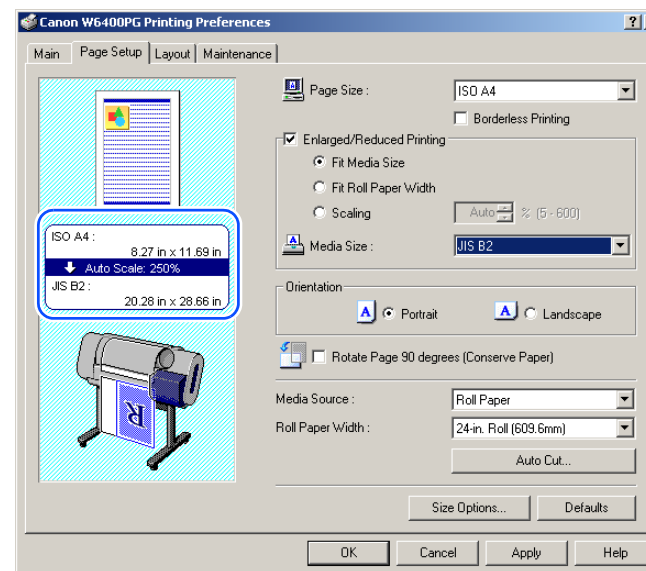
- If you do not see the checkbox for **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then cancel the **Borderless Printing** selection. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will appear.

5 Confirm that **Fit Media Size** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

6 From **Media Size** select the size of the media that will be used for printing.



7 Check the Preview and confirm that the media size selection has changed, then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-5)

8 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

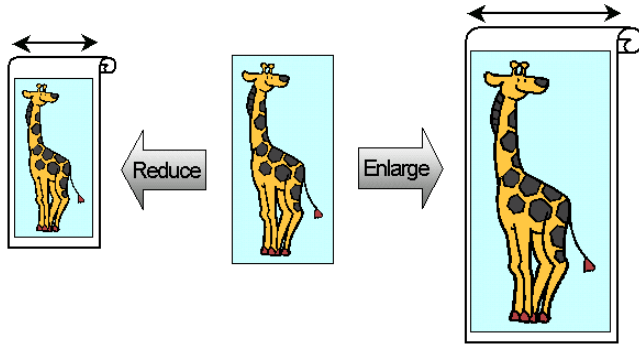
Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

You can enlarge or reduce the entire size of the original so it fits the width of the roll.



- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Printer** dialog box of the application.

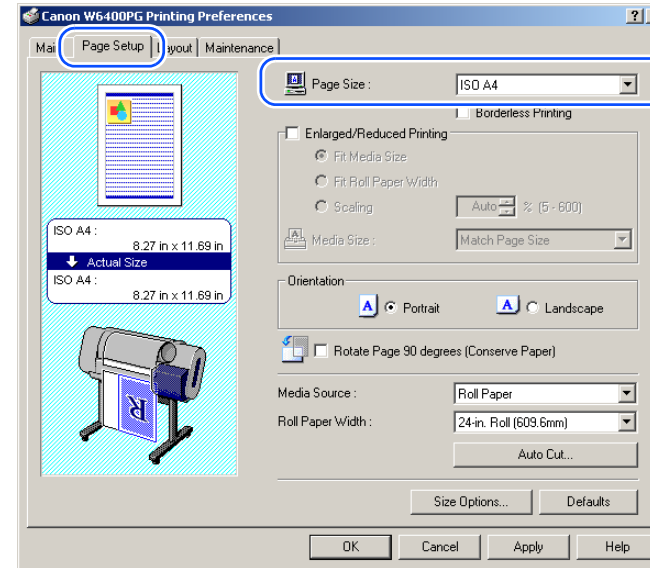


Note

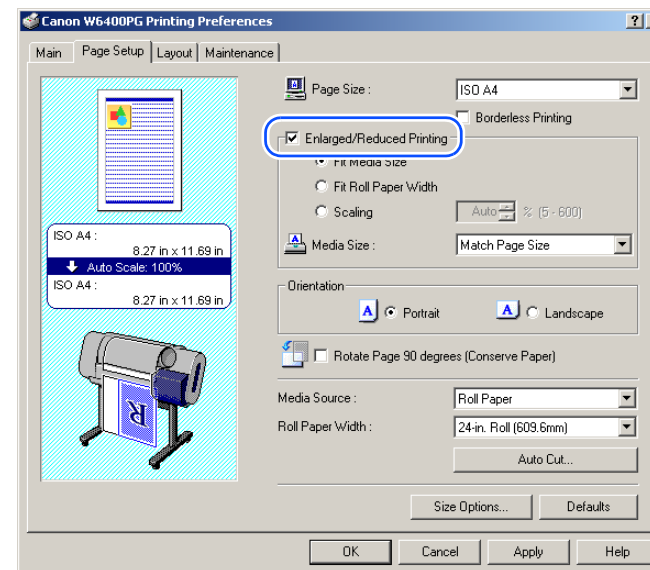
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to "Printing" in [Chapter 1 "Basic Procedures"](#). (→ P.1-40)

- 2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

- 3 For **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.



- 4 Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

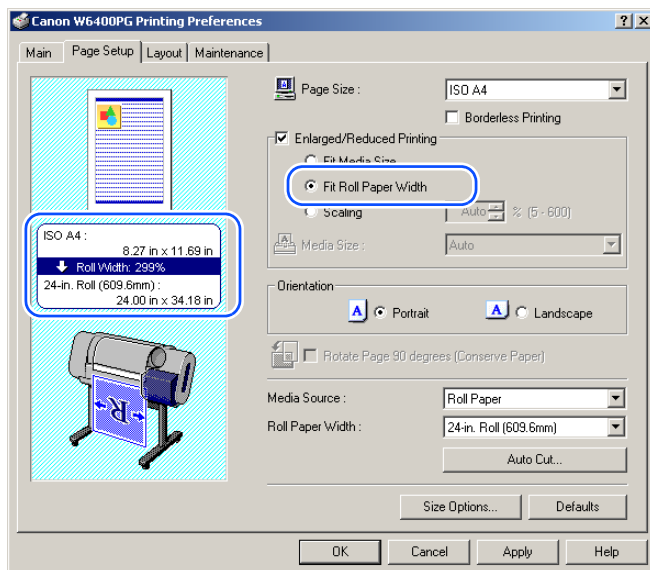
Contents

Index

Note

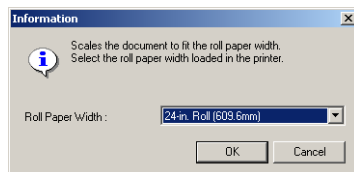
- If you do not see the checkbox for **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then cancel the **Borderless Printing** selection. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will appear.

5 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.



Note

- Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width** to open the dialog box below. From the **Roll Paper Width** list select the width of the roll loaded in the printer, then click the **OK** button.



6 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-5)

7 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Note

- Before you start the print job, confirm that the width of the roll selected in the printer driver is the same as the width of the roll loaded in the printer. If the printer driver setting does not match the width of the loaded roll, the print job will halt temporarily.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

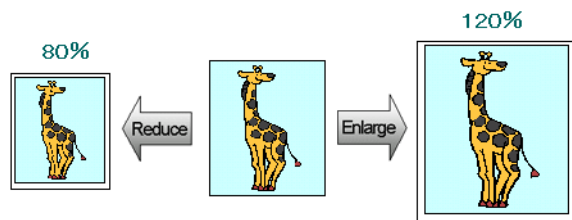
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Selecting the Magnification Rate for Printing

You can enter the rate of magnification directly if you need to scale the enlargement or reduction for a desired effect.



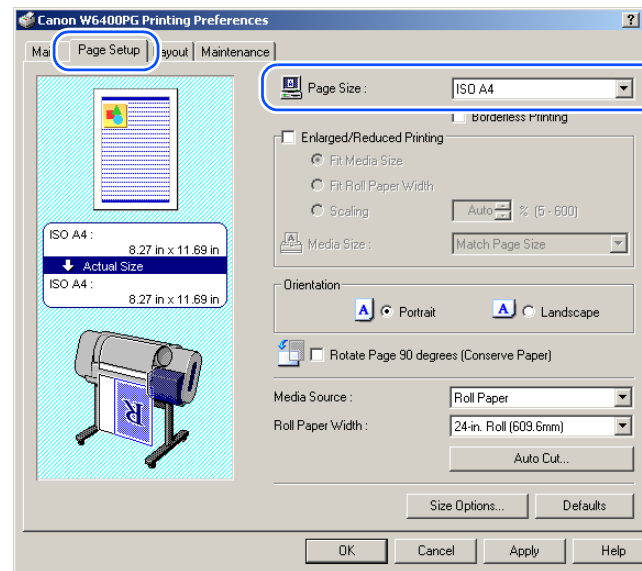
1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Printer** dialog box of the application.

Note

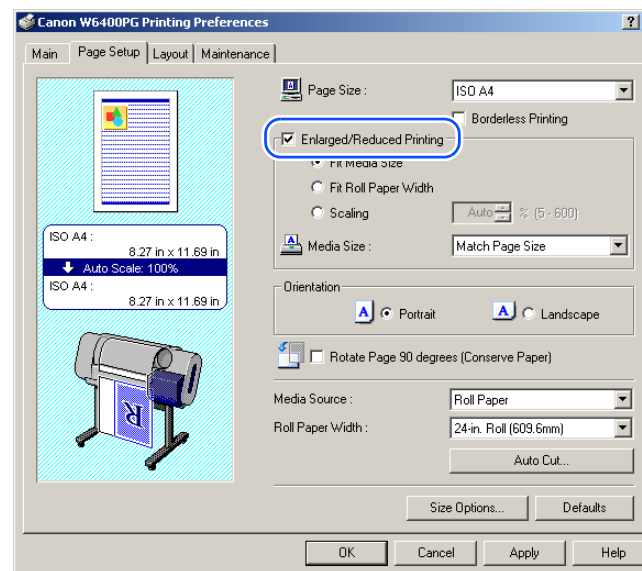
● For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to "Printing" in [Chapter 1 "Basic Procedures"](#). (→ P.1-40)

2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

3 For **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.



4 Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

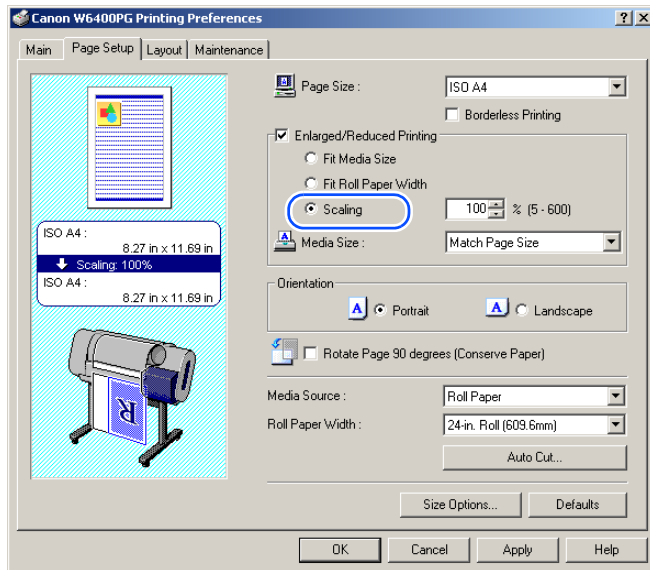
Index



Note

- If you do not see the checkbox for **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then cancel the **Borderless Printing** selection. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will appear.

5 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Scaling** then specify the desired setting.


Important

- You can enter a setting for the rate of magnification manually from the keyboard or use the arrow button on the right to scroll the number settings up or down. The rate can be changed in increments of 1%. The size can be scaled in the range limited by the size of the Scaling entry column displayed on the right.
- You can perform a setting that is larger than the size of the media loaded in the printer, but some portions of the will be cut off and not printed.

- Reduction is performed starting from the upper left corner of the image, but if you select **Print Centered** on the **Layout** sheet, the image will print in the center of the media.
- When **Scaling** is selected, the maximum possible rate of magnification is displayed to the right of the magnification entry box.

6 Select the **Media Size** setting that you want.

7 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-5)

8 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)

Normally a printed document has white space around its edges (margins), but a borderless print for a photograph or created image has no white space at its borders; its entire surface is covered by printing.

■ Settings Required for Borderless Printing

Before performing the print job, make sure that a media that can be used for borderless printing is loaded. Only media fed from the roll can be used for borderless printing on this printer.

Here is a list of the types of roll media and their widths that can be used for borderless printing.

Paper Type	Corresponding Roll Width
Glossy Photo Paper, SemiGlos	10-in. Roll (254.0mm)
Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy	14-in. Roll (355.6mm)
Photo Paper, Heavyweight	16-in. Roll (355.6 mm)
SemiGlos Photo Paper, Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra	JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0 mm)
Heavyweight Coated Paper, Matte Film, Flame Resistant-Cloth, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight	ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0 mm)
Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas SemiGlos, Special 1-5	24-in. Roll (609.6mm)

Important

- Paper of types and roll widths other than those listed above cannot be used for borderless printing.
- The following types of media cannot be Auto cut, so borderless printing can only be performed on the left and right edges.
Premium Matte Paper, Flame Resistant Cloth, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas SemiGlos

■ Basic Procedure for Borderless Printing

This section introduces the basic procedure for borderless printing by using media of the same size as the original.

- 1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.

Important

- The following page size settings can be used for borderless printing. Refer to the table below when you create the original image and set the page for a size that can be used for borderless printing.
- If the media size was pre-selected in the software application, the selected size must support **Borderless Printing**.

■ Borderless printing on media the same size as the original document	ISO A1, ISO A2, JIS B2, JIS B3, ARCH D (24"), ARCH C, 20"x24", 14"x17", 10"x12", 10"x15", 8"x10", US Photo (16"x20")
■ Borderless printing with enlargement and reduction	All page sizes

- There are limitations on the selection of page sizes that can be used with the **Borderless Printing Method**. If any page size other than those listed above is selected, the **Borderless Printing Method** feature is automatically set for **Scale to fit Roll Width**.
- For more details about **Scale to fit Roll Width** and **Print Image with Actual Size**, please refer to "[More About Borderless Printing Methods](#)" (→ P.3-17)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Note

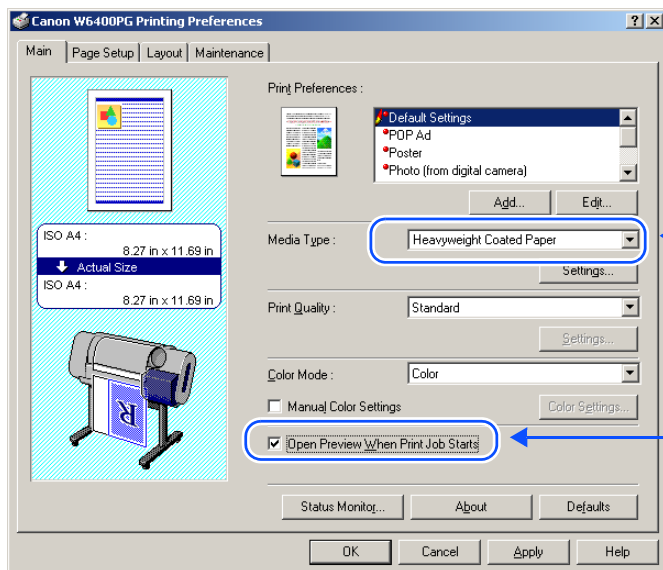
- Make sure the image created for borderless printing covers the entire original page.
- If you are using Microsoft Word or any other software application that allows margin settings, set all the margins to “0”. For more details about how to perform these settings, please refer to the software application instructions.

2 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Printer** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ [P.1-40](#))

3 Display the **Main** sheet and perform the settings for borderless printing.



1. Select the media compatible with borderless printing.

2. If you check the checkbox for **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**, you can confirm the appearance of the print image in the Print Preview before printing.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

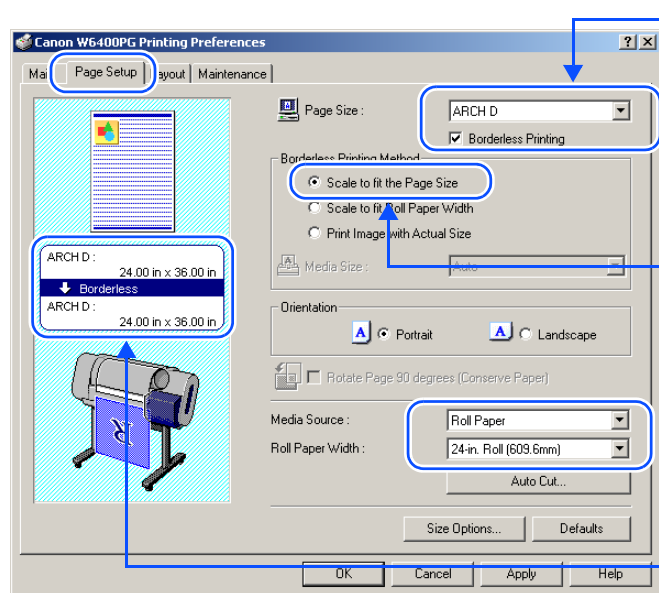
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

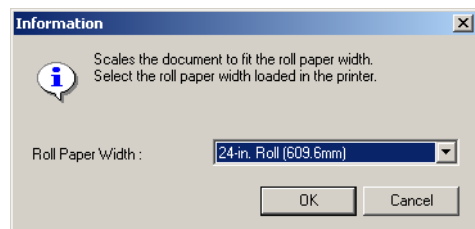
4 Display the **Page Setup** sheet and perform the settings for borderless printing.



1. For **Page Size** select the size of the original created in the software application.
2. Select **Borderless Printing**.
- * If you select the paper for a size that can be used for borderless printing, **Scale to fit the Page Size** is set for **Borderless Printing Method**.
3. Confirm that the width of the roll paper matches the roll paper or the page size for **Media Source**.
- * The Preview reflects changes in the contents of the settings.

Note

- If you change the page size to any other size that allows borderless printing, the setting for the width of the roll changes automatically to a roll width that matches the original width.
- If you change the page width setting to a size that does not allow borderless printing, the dialog box below opens. Specify a setting in the **Roll Paper Width** list, then click the **OK** button so you can continue with the borderless print (in this case the width of the original will be enlarged or reduced to fit the width of the roll media). The print cannot be performed with the same width as the original.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.

Note

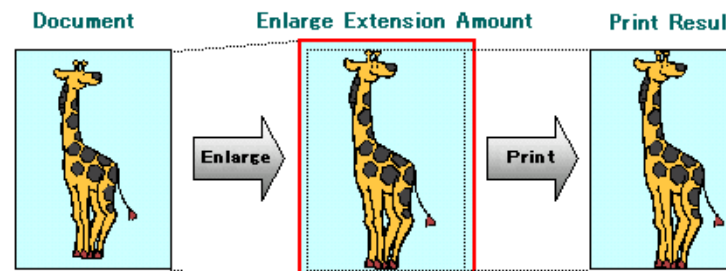
- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-5)

6 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

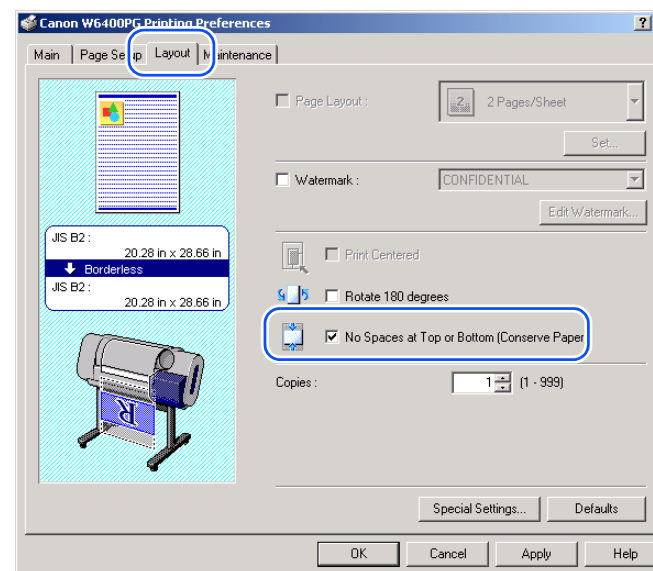
Note

- If **Scale to fit the Page Size** is selected for **Borderless Printing Method**, the printer driver automatically enlarges the original up to every edge of the page to a margin of 3 mm. The result is the printer fills the entire page up to the edges with borderless printing. The top, bottom, left and right margins of the original are set to 3 mm so no part of the image will extend beyond a margin.

- To enlarge or reduce while performing borderless printing, under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width**.



- To do a borderless print of an image with a top and bottom margin, on the **Layout** sheet you can select **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**. This an easy way to do a borderless print by setting these margins to zero. For more details, please refer to “[Printing without Top and Bottom Margins \(Conserve Paper\)](#)”. (→ P.3-38)



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

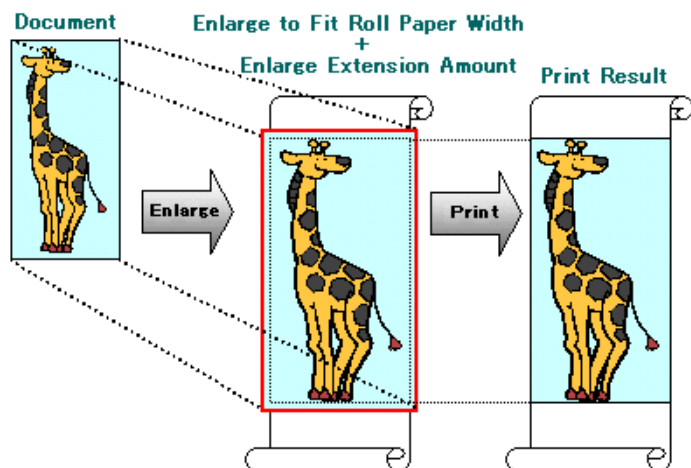
■ More About Borderless Printing Methods

There are two ways to create a document for borderless printing in addition to the methods described above (**Scale to fit the Page Size**).

<To perform borderless document printing with a size not allowed for borderless printing>

● Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

This feature enlarges or reduces the size of the original so it fits the width of the roll. You can print a page size not compatible with borderless printing (A4, A3, Custom Size, etc.) on roll media of a width that is compatible with enlargement/reduction printing.



- 1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.
- 2 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to [“Printing”](#) in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ P.1-40)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

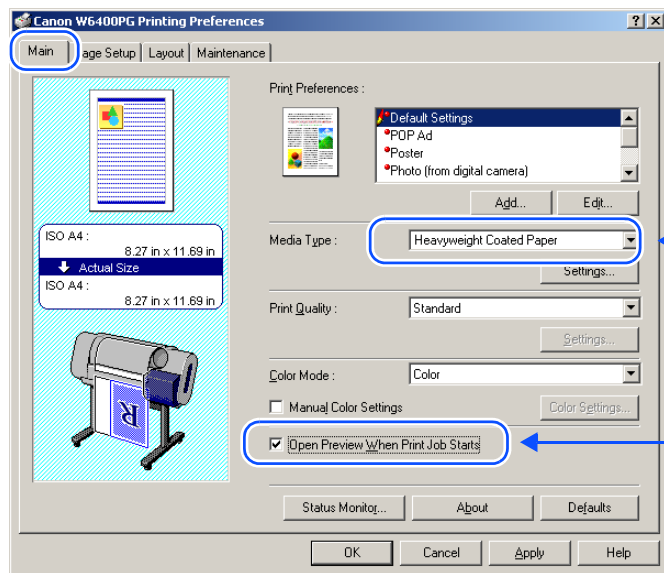
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

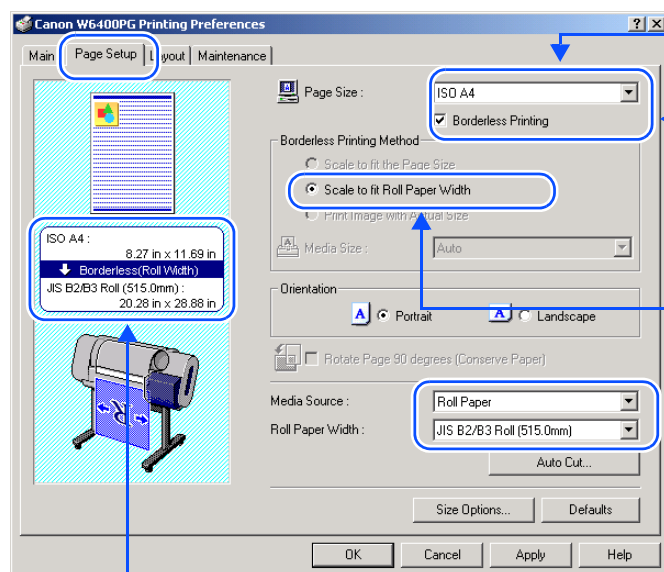
Index

3 Display the **Main** sheet and perform the settings for borderless printing.



1. Select the media compatible with borderless printing.
2. If you check the checkbox for **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**, you can confirm the appearance of the print image in the Print Preview before printing.

4 Display the **Page Setup** sheet and perform the settings for borderless printing.



1. For **Page Size** select the size of the original created in the software application.
2. Select **Borderless Printing**.
- * The example shows A4 size that cannot be used for borderless printing is selected.
- * For **Borderless Printing Method**, **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** will be selected.
3. To change the setting of the roll paper width, select the width for the **Roll Paper Width** list.
- * The Preview reflects changes in the contents of the settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

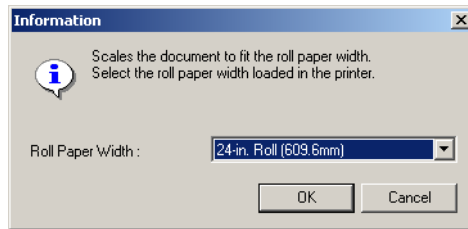
Contents

Index



Note

- If the size of the selected original cannot be used with borderless printing, select **Borderless Printing** to open the dialog box below. Select the width of the roll loaded in the printer, and then click **OK**. **Borderless Printing Method** will be set to **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**.



- To do a borderless print of an image with a top and bottom margin, on the **Layout** sheet you can select **No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)**. This an easy way to do a borderless print by setting these margins to zero. For more details, please refer to [“Printing without Top and Bottom Margins \(Conserve Paper\)”](#). (→ P.3-38)

- 5 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-5)

- 6 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.

The print job starts.



Note

- After the **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width** feature automatically sizes to original to fit the width of the roll, the printer driver automatically enlarges the image so that each margin, that is, the top, bottom, left, and right margin, is 3 mm each. The result is the printer fills the entire page up to the edges with borderless printing. Portions of the image that protrude over the 3 mm top, bottom, right, and left margins of the original document cannot be printed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

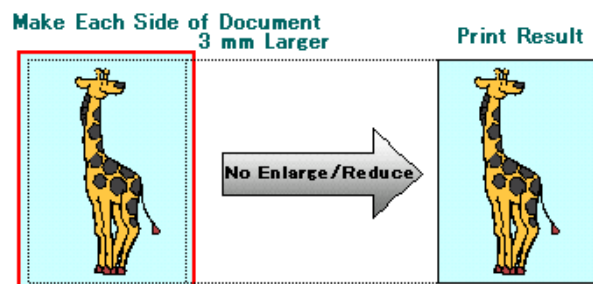
Contents

Index

<To print a high-precision image with borderless printing>

- Print Image with Actual Size

This takes an image that would otherwise overlap the margins and sizes it to 3 mm margins and then prints it with borderless printing on a media size that is the same as the sized original. Use this method when you want to avoid a deterioration in the quality of the image caused by enlargement or reduction.



Note

- If you perform the print job with **Borderless Printing Method** set for either **Scale to fit the Page Size** or **Scale to fit Roll Paper Width**, some slight deterioration in the quality of the image may occur because the printer driver automatically sizes the portions of the image that would otherwise overlap the margins. If you select **Print Image with Actual Size** for the **Borderless Printing Method**, however, you can perform print high-precision images with borderless printing just as they are. Select this setting when you need to print fine lines, photographs, or with any image where the priority is on accuracy and quality.

- 1 In the software application create an image with borders (top, bottom, right, left) 3 mm larger than the original document.

Note

- Example: If the media size is JIS B2 (515 x 728 mm), set the dimensions for the original as 521 x 734 mm.
- If you are using MS-Word or another application, before you create the original select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu and select the page size and orientation.

- 2 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to "Printing" in [Chapter 1 "Basic Procedures"](#). (→ P.1-40)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

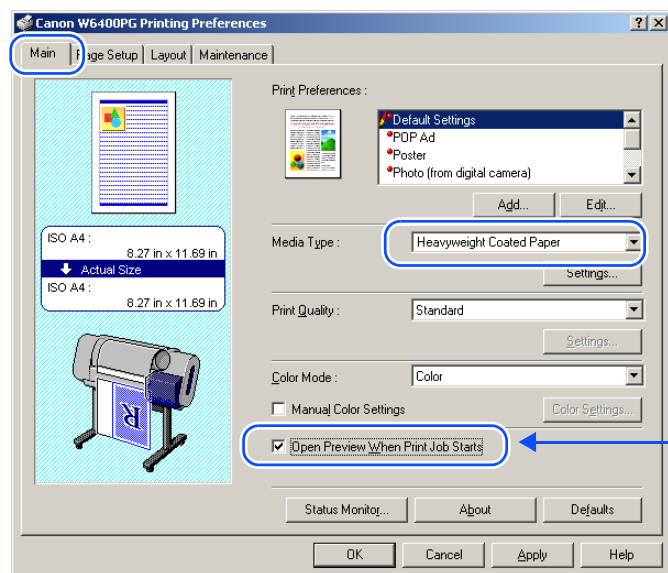
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

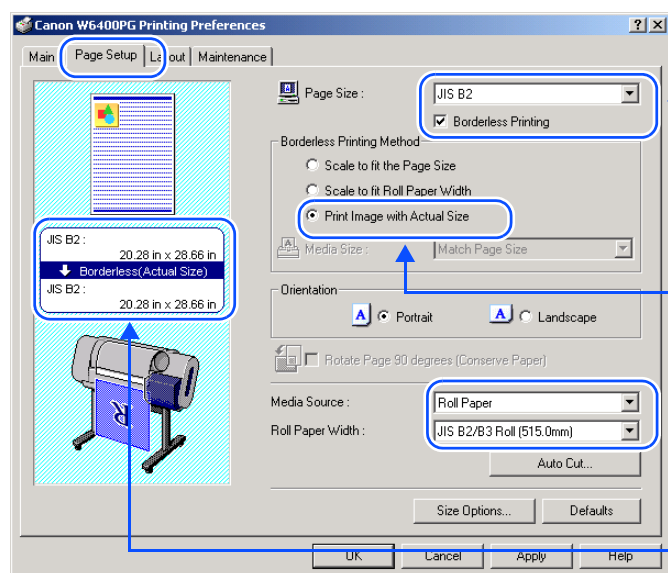
3 Display the **Main** sheet and perform the settings for borderless printing.



1. Select the media compatible with borderless printing.

2. If you check the checkbox for **Open Preview When Print Job Starts**, you can confirm the appearance of the print image in the Print Preview before printing.

4 Display the **Page Setup** sheet and perform the settings for borderless printing.



1. For **Page Size** select the size of the original created in the software application.

2. Select **Boderless Printing**.

3. For **Borderless Printing Method** select **Print Image with Actual Size**.

4. Confirm that the width of the roll paper matches the roll paper or the page size for **Media Source**.

* The Preview reflects changes in the contents of the settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 5 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”.

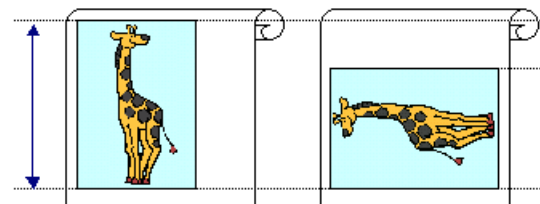
(→ P.3-5)

- 6 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
The print job starts.

Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)

In order to maximize the use of the paper width a vertical-tall image can be rotated 90 degrees horizontally across the width of the media. By rotating the image you can maximize the use of the media and reduce waste.

If you perform this setting in the printer to rotate the page image, then the page is rotated automatically for the print job. The image will not be rotated if it would not fit after rotation.



Important

- Confirm that the **Roll Paper Width** setting is correct for the media loaded in the printer.
- If the selection for the Media Source is not **Roll Paper**, or if Borderless Printing is selected, this function cannot be used.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

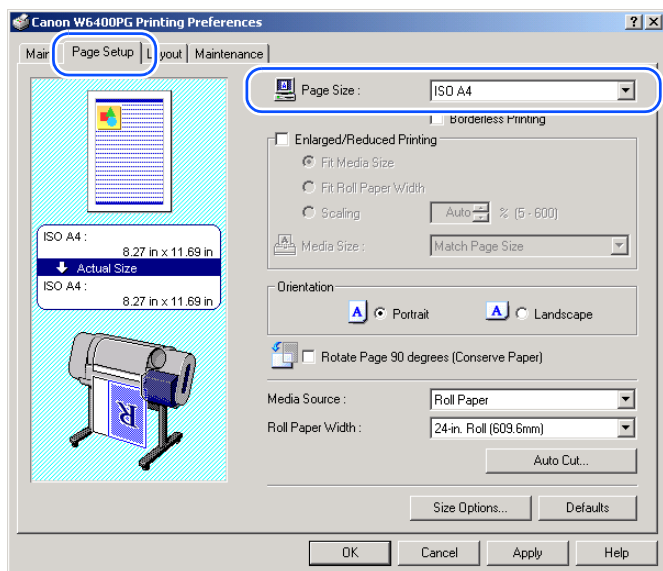
1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

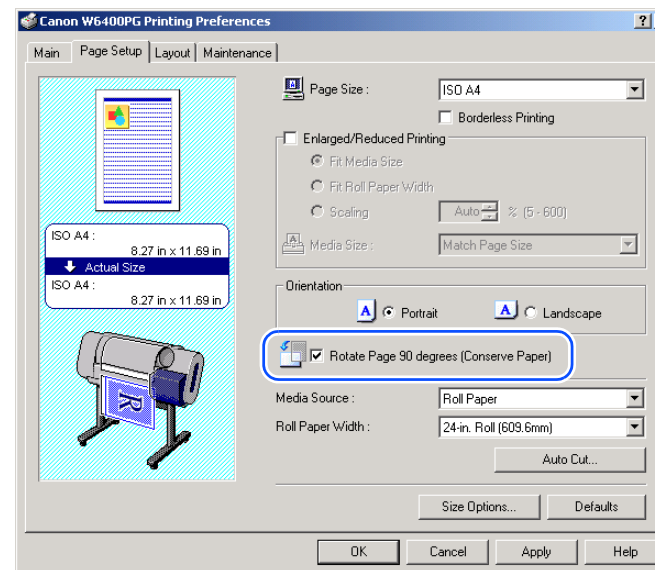
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ [P.1-40](#))

2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.

3 For **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet select the size of the original created in the software application.



4 Select **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)**.



5 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

6 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

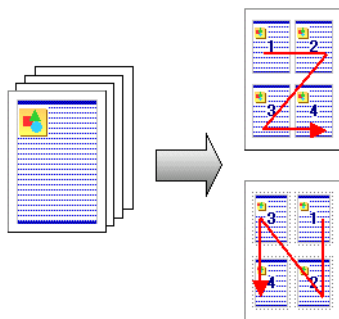
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)

You can print from 2 to 16 pages with reduced sizes on one sheet. For example, if you have a document with a large number of pages you can print two pages per sheet and the number of pages will be one-half. Also, in the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box you can perform more detailed settings, such as selecting the arrangement of the pages on the sheet and specifying whether to print each page with a border line.



Important

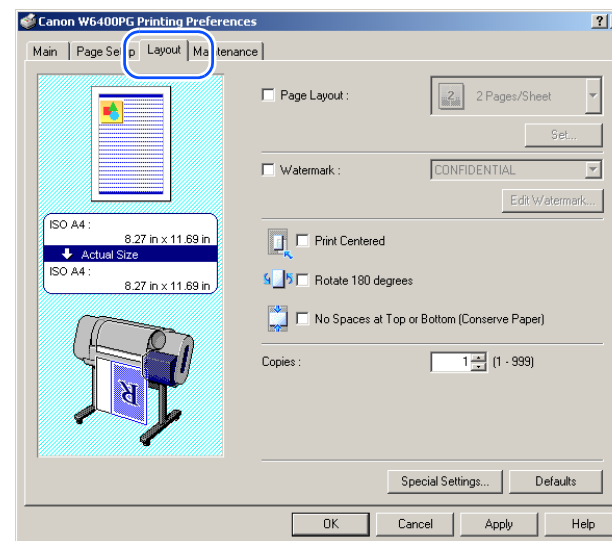
- This function is not supported with Windows NT 4.0.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

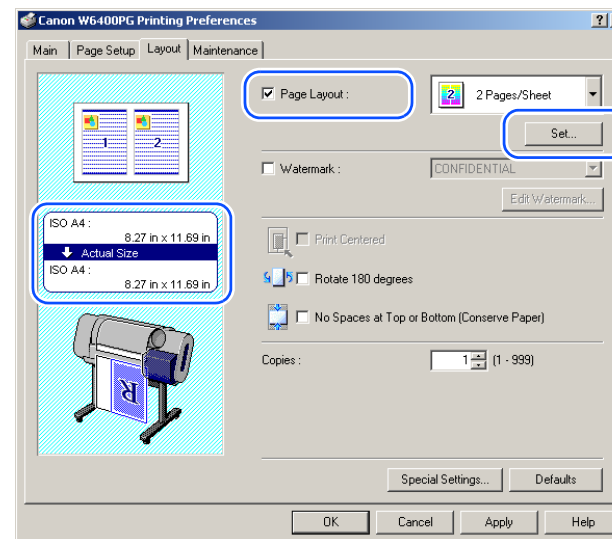
Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “Printing” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ P.1-40)

2 Select the **Layout** sheet.



3 Select **Page Layout**.



The Preview shows you what the printed page will look like with the number of pages selected for one sheet, then click the **Set** button in the lower right corner of the **Page Layout** group.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

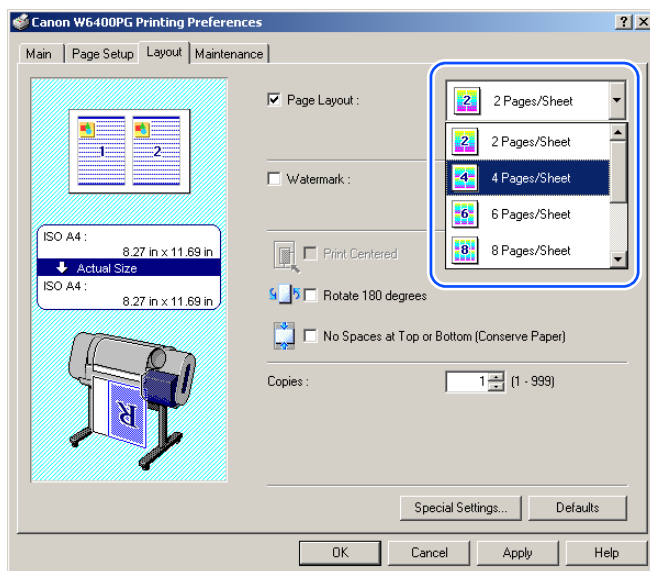
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

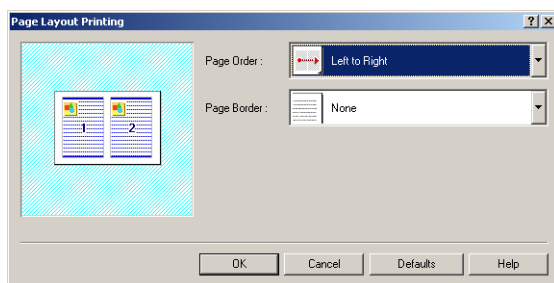
Contents

Index

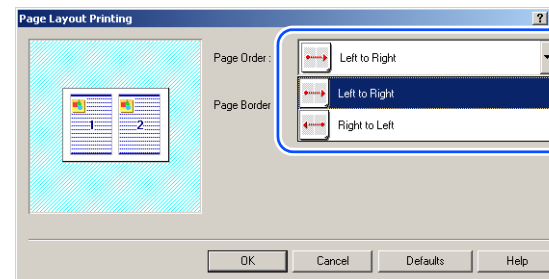
4 From the **Page Layout** list, select the page layout that you want to print.



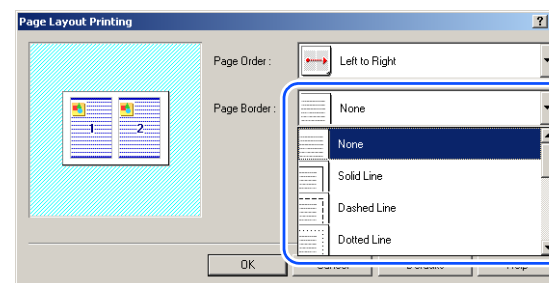
5 If you want to change the arrangement of the pages on the sheet or specify each page to print with a border line, click the **Set** button to open the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.



6 To change the arrangement of the pages on the sheet, select the page order from the **Page Order** list.



7 If you want each page on the sheet to print with a border line, from the **Page Border** list click the type of border.



 **Note**

- If you select a border line to print, the image is sized down by 5% to allow for the border line.
- As soon as you select a border line, you will see this reflected in the Preview.
- If you select **None** then the size of the page is not reduced.

8 Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.

- 9** Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.



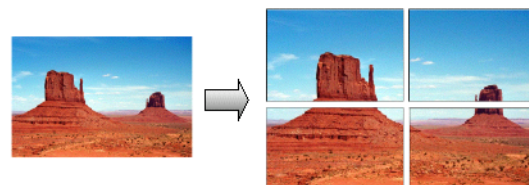
Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-5)

- 10** Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
The print job starts.

Printing Posters (Page Layout)

After the image is enlarged and divided into several sections, you can print the sections and paste them together to assemble one large poster.



Important

- This function is not supported with Windows NT 4.0.

- 1** Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

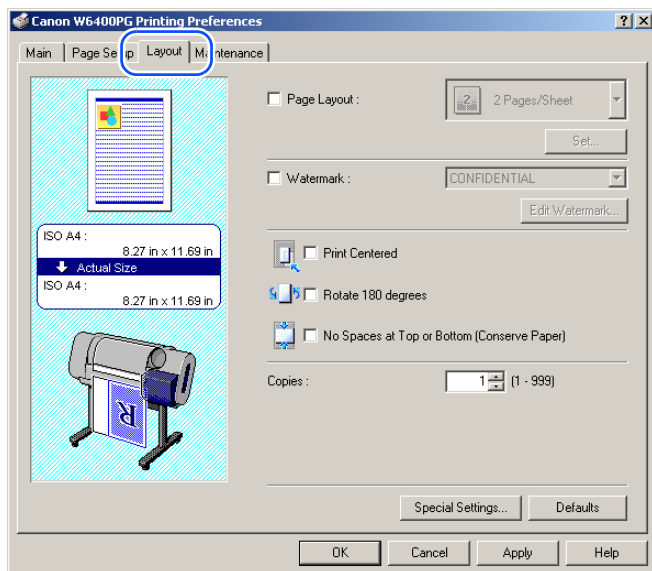
- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ P.1-40)

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

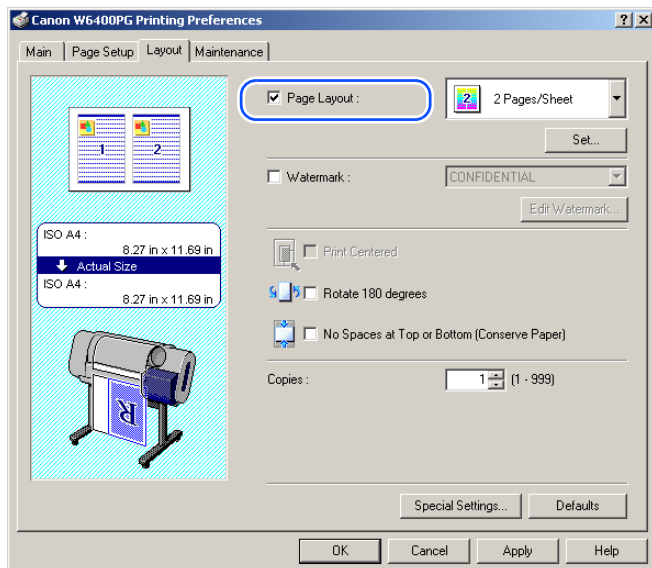
Contents

Index

2 Select the **Layout** sheet.

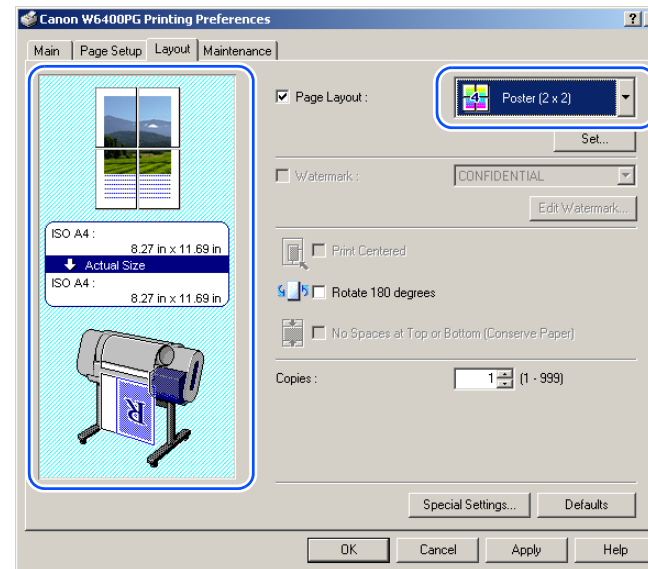


3 Select **Page Layout**.

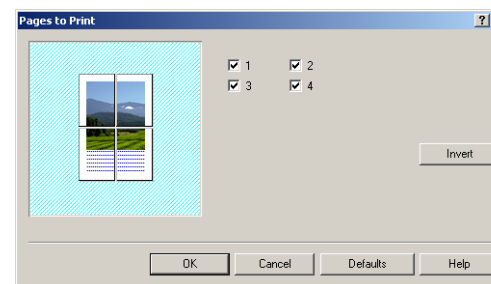


4 Select **Poster 2x2** from the **Layout** list.

Confirm the appearance of the selected layout in the Preview.



5 If you do not want to print any panel (a section of the divided image), click the **Set** button in the lower right corner of the **Page Layout** section to open the **Pages to Print** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

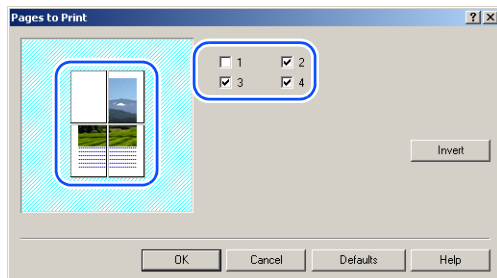
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

6 Click and select either the panel or the appropriate checkbox to deselect the panel for printing.



Note

- If you click the **Invert** button, the current selections of the checkmarks are reversed. In the Preview area you will see graphic images displayed for the sections to be printed and white blanks for the sections that will not be printed.

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Pages to Print** dialog box.

8 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-5)

9 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
The print job starts.

Using Watermarks

You can print watermarks on printouts to mark them for special handling. Several standard watermarks (CONFIDENTIAL, DO NOT COPY, etc.) have been prepared.



Important

- This function is not supported with Windows NT 4.0.
- The **Watermark** function cannot be used if the print job is set up with a poster page layout.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to [“Printing”](#) in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ P.1-40)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

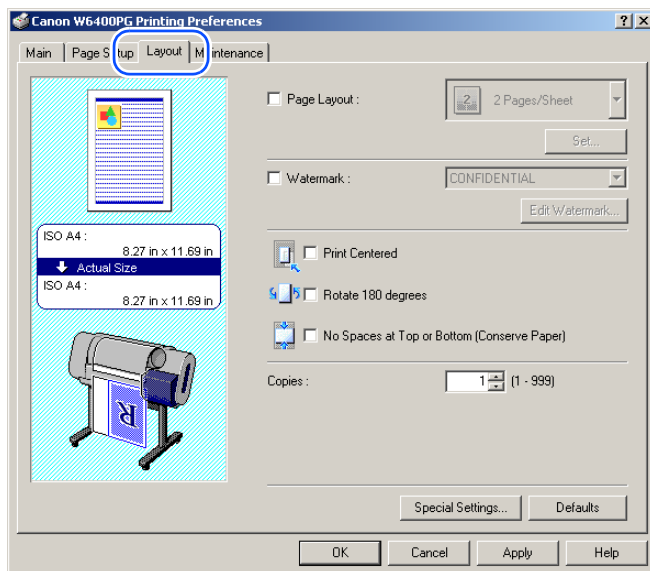
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

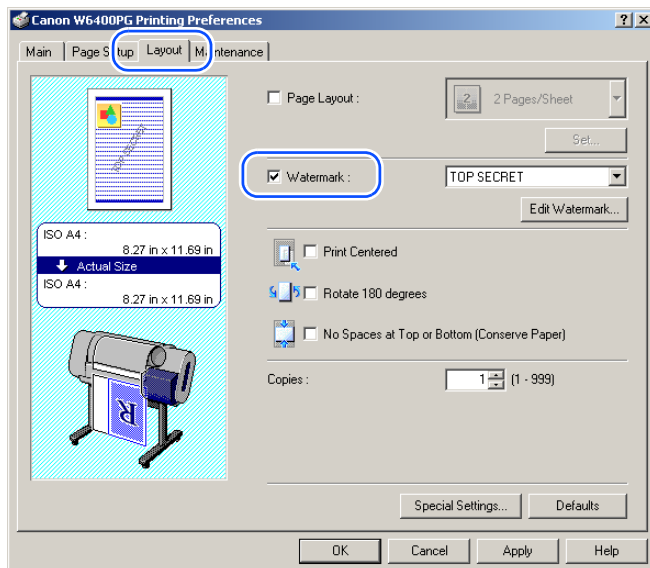
Contents

Index

2 Select the **Layout** sheet.

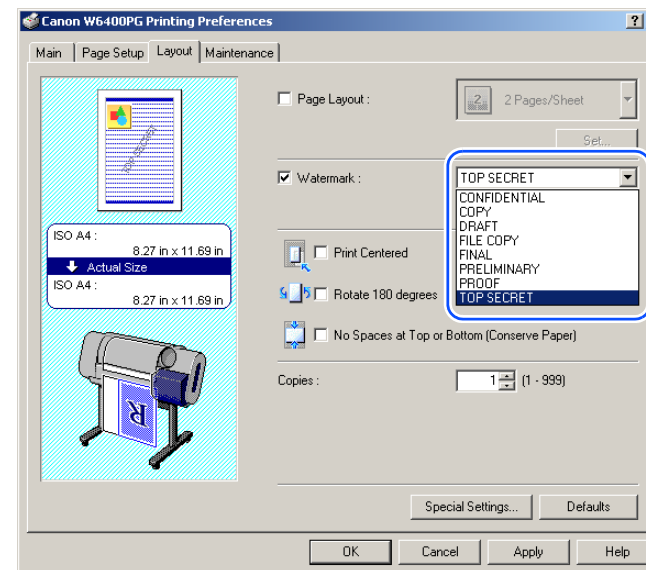


3 Select **Watermark**.



4 From the **Watermark** list, select the watermark that you want to print.

The watermark that you selected will appear in the Preview on the left.



Note

- The following watermarks can be selected from the list. CONFIDENTIAL, COPY, DRAFT, FILE COPY, FINAL, PRELIMINARY, PROOF, TOP SECRET.
- Click the **Edit Watermark** button to open the **Edit Watermark** dialog box. In this dialog box you can create, edit, and register your own watermarks, in addition to the pre-made watermarks provided with the printer driver. For more details, please refer to **Printing Watermarks > Creating an Original Watermark, or Editing and Deleting an Original Watermark**.

5 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ [P.3-5](#))

- 6 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.
The print job starts.

Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)

■ Matching the Width of the Roll

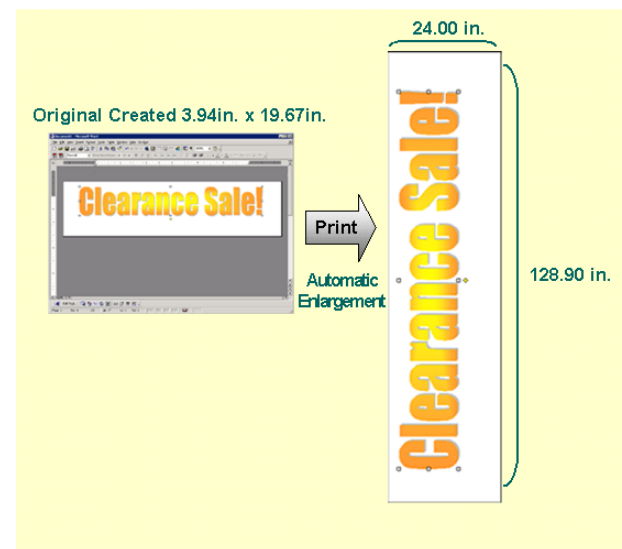
Once you become familiar with fitting images to the full width of the roll with your software application, it is very easy to print vertical and horizontal banners.

Here we will describe as an example how to take a 3.94 in. x 19.67 in. original and enlarge to fit a 24” roll (approximately 610 mm wide), and then print it as a banner (24.00 in. x 128.90 in.).



Note

- This printer can print a sheet up to 15, 250 mm (600in.) long.

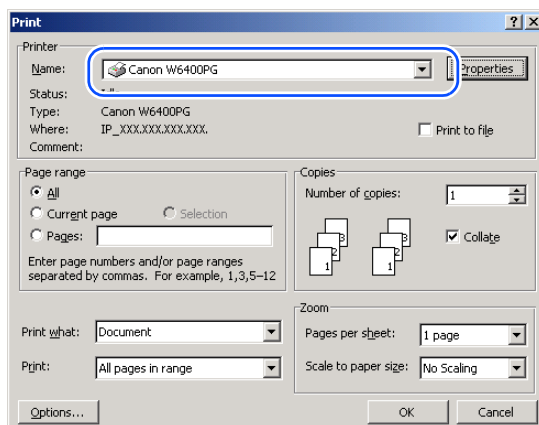
Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 1 Start the software application.
- 2 From the **File** menu select **Print** to open the **Print** dialog box.
- 3 Confirm that the printer name **Canon W6400PG** is displayed.

The sample of the Print dialog box below is from Microsoft Word.

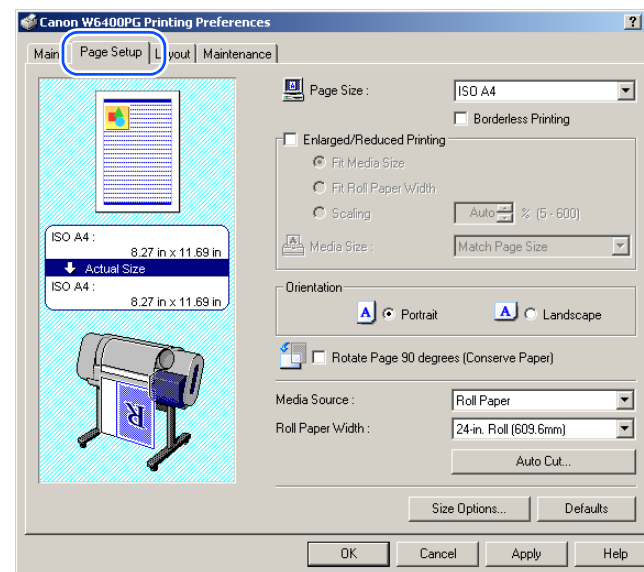


Note

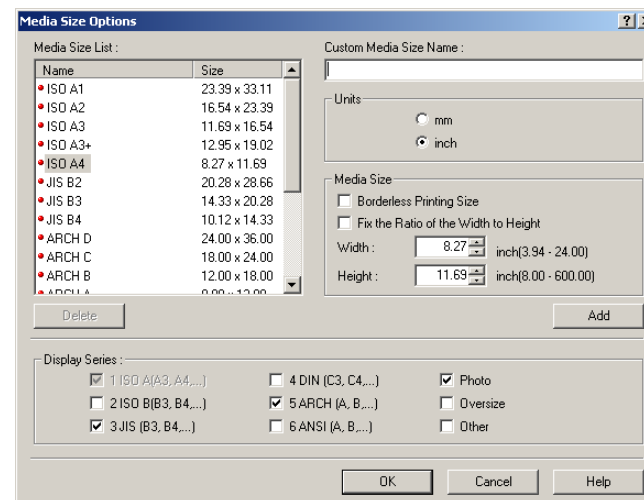
- If the above printer name is not displayed, then select **Canon W6400PG** from the **Name** list.

- 4 Click the **Properties** button to open the printer driver dialog box.

- 5 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.



- 6 Click the **Size Options** button to open the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

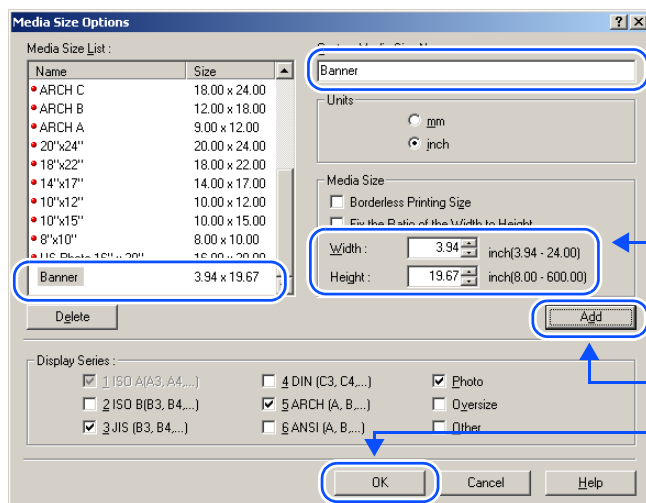
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 Define the size in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



1. Input the desired **Custom Media Size Name**.

2. For **Media Size** set the **Width** and the **Height**.

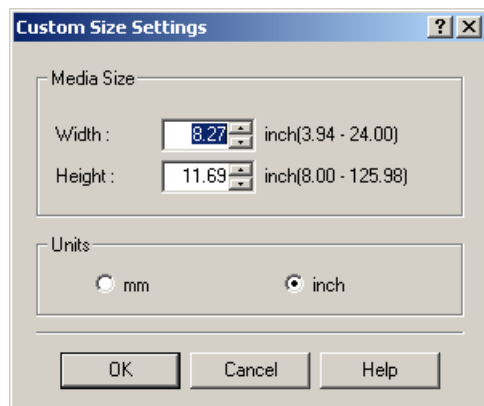
* This example shows 3.94 in for the **Width** and 19.67 in for the **Height**.

3. Click the **Add** button.

4. Click the **OK** button to close the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

Note

- After you register a size in the **Media Size Options** dialog box, then the name and dimensions that you set for new size will appear in the **Media Size List**. For more details about the **Media Size Options** dialog box, please refer to "[About Media Size Options](#)". (→ P.3-51)
- In addition to the method above for setting the media size, you can also use the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box. To open the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box, click **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- A custom size sets a temporary user-defined page size between the software application and the printer driver. For this reason, when the software application is closed the size defined in the **Custom Size Settings** dialog box is disabled. If you want the custom size setting to remain in effect, then you should register the custom size in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.
- Some software applications may not display a custom size item. In such a case, please register the custom size in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

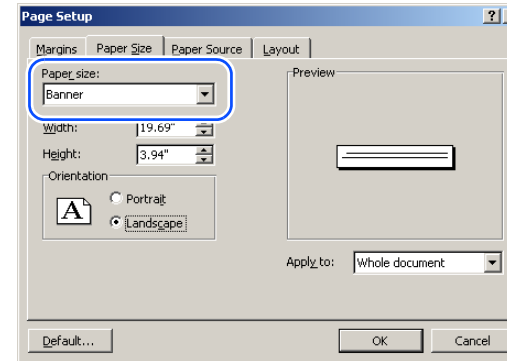
8 Click the **OK** button to close the printer driver dialog box.

9 Click the **Close** button to close the **Page Layout Printing** dialog box.

10 In the software application select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.

<If you are using Microsoft Word...>

- Select the **Paper Size** sheet, then for the size select the size you defined and registered in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

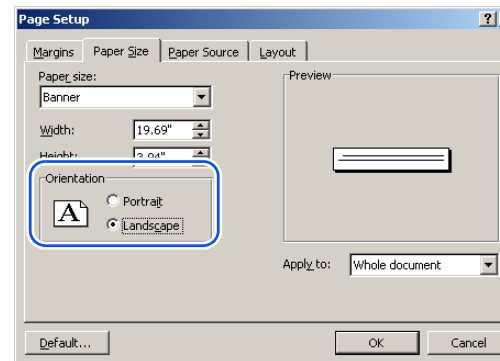


- Select **Landscape** for the **Orientation**, then click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



Note

- This sets the **Orientation** to **Landscape** for the banner.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

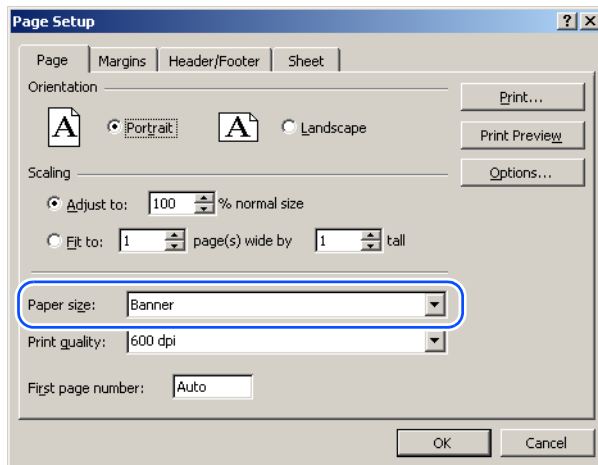
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

<If you are using Microsoft Excel...>

- a Select the **Page** sheet, then for the **Paper Size** select the size you defined and registered in the **Medial Size Options** dialog box.

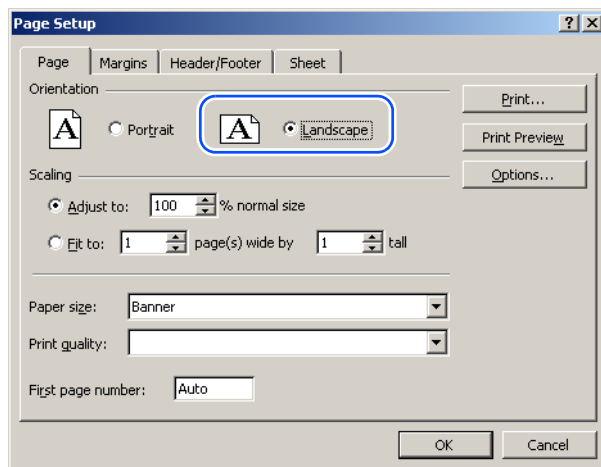


- b Select **Landscape** for the **Orientation**, then click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



Note

- This sets the **Orientation** to **Landscape** for the banner.

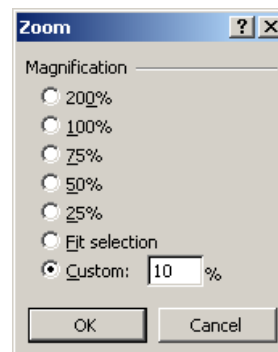


- c Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



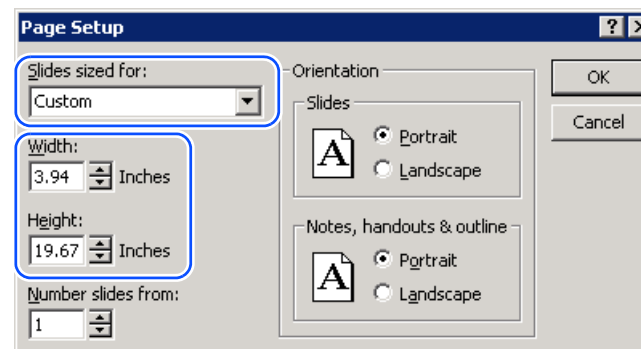
Note

- For **Display** click **Zoom** to adjust the size of the display.



<If you are using Microsoft PowerPoint...>

- a In the **Page Setup** dialog enter the dimensions for the custom size settings in the **Width** and **Height** boxes. This example shows **3.94 inches** for the **Width** and **19.67 inches** for the **Height**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

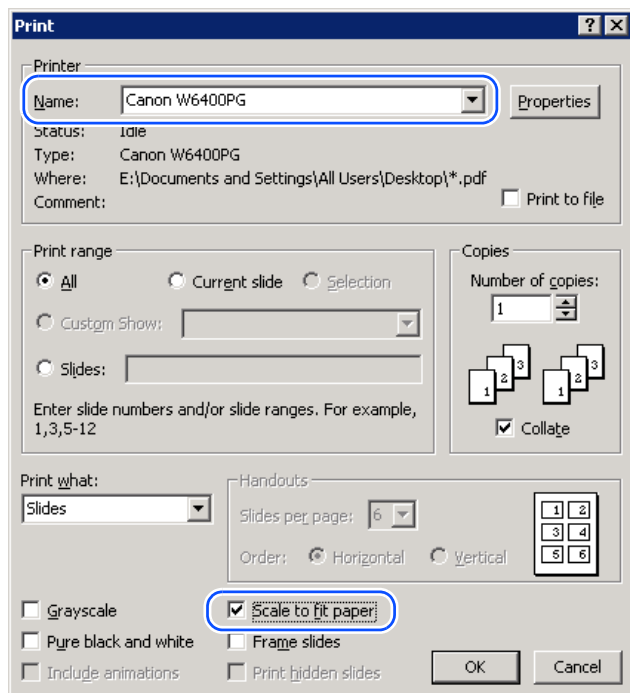
Contents

Index

- b Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.

Note

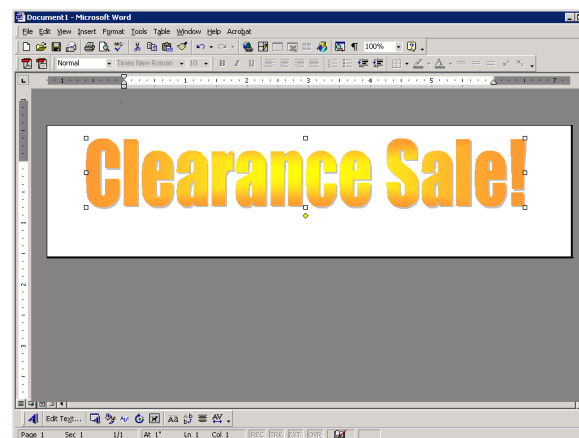
- Also when printing the original from PowerPoint if you select **Scale to fit Paper** in the **Print** dialog box the driver will size the page to fit the media loaded in the printer.



11 Create the original in the software application.

Note

- The example below shows the original created in Microsoft Word. Select **Insert > Picture > WordArt**, select the appropriate style, then enter the text.
- For more details about how to create the original, please refer to the operating instructions for each software application.



12 After the original is created, from the **File** menu select **Print** to open the **Print** dialog box.

13 Click the **Properties** button to open the printer driver dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

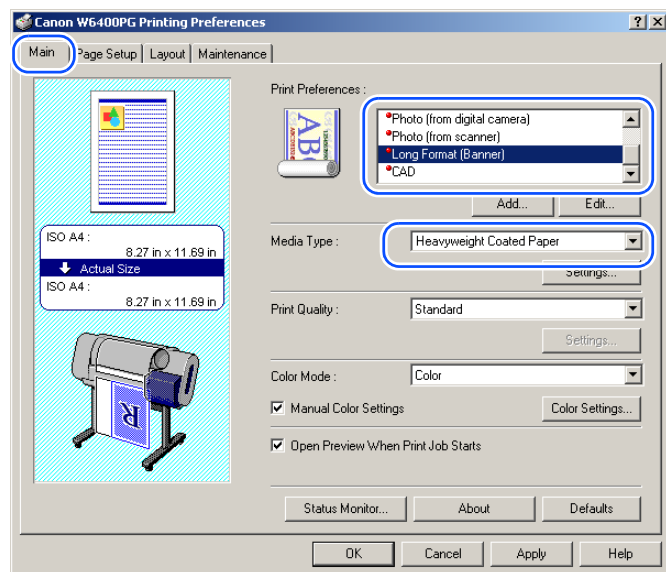
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

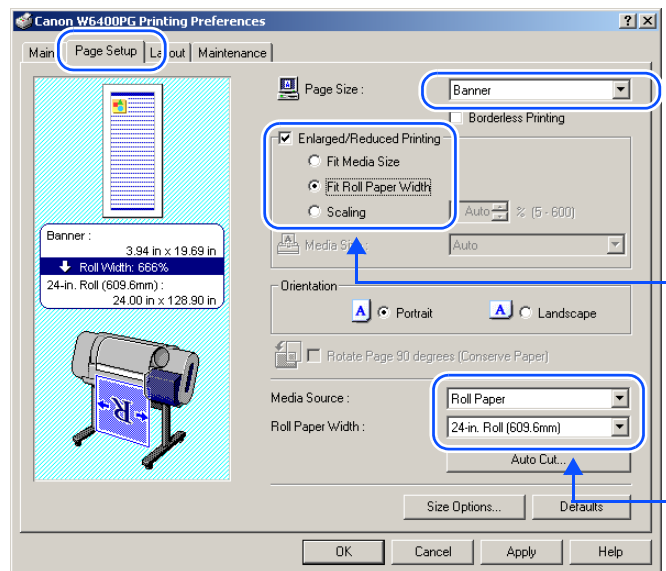
14 Select the **Main** sheet and perform the settings for a long print.



1. For **Print Preferences** select **Long Format (Banner)**.

2. For **Media Type** select the type of media.

15 Select the **Page Setup** sheet and perform the settings for a long print.



1. For **Page Size** select the media name registered in **Media Size Options**.

2. Select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and click **Fit Roll Paper Width**.

3. For **Media Source** select the **Roll Paper** and for **Paper Roll Width** select **24-in. Roll (609.6 mm)**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

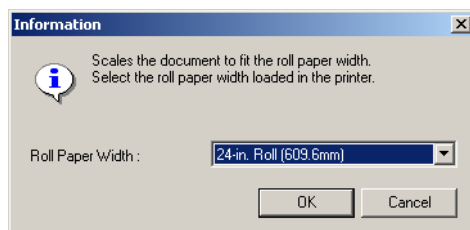
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- If you do not see the checkbox for **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**, then cancel the **Borderless Printing** selection. The **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** checkbox will appear.
- Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width** to open the dialog box below. Select the width of the roll loaded in the printer, and then click **OK**.



- 16** Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.

Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#).
(→ P.3-5)

- 17** Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box.

The print job starts.

Note

- If the print job does not execute properly on your operating system (Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows Me, Windows 98), click **Special Settings** on the **Layout** sheet to open the **Special Settings** dialog box. You may be able to enable printing by clicking the **Fine Zoom** list and then selecting **On**.
- If you cannot perform the print job with Windows NT 4.0, you may be able to enable printing by selecting **Standard** or **Draft** under **Print Quality** on the **Main** sheet.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

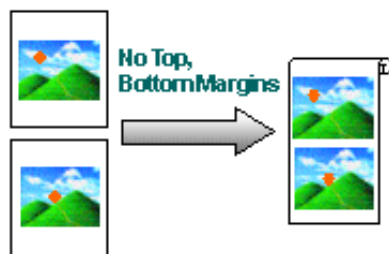
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

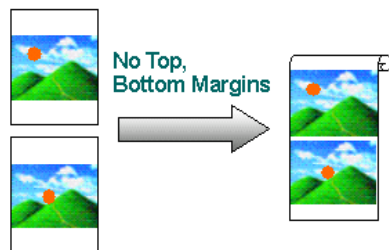
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)

The white space in the top and bottom margins can be eliminated for printing to save paper. The printer does not feed the white space in the margins to save paper. This function can be used only when **Roll Paper** is selected as the **Media Source**.



Note

- You use this method during borderless printing as shown in the illustration below.



Important

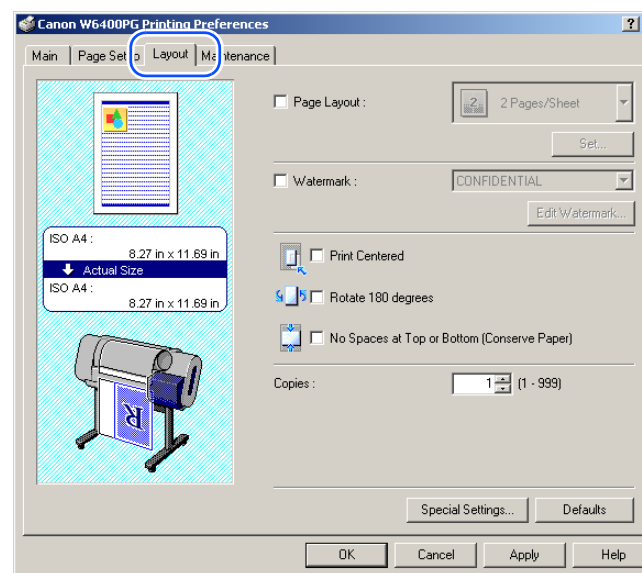
- This function cannot be used when **Cut Sheet** is selected as the **Media Source**.
- With this feature cannot be selected with **Poster (2 x 2)** set for the page layout.

- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “**Printing**” in **Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”**. (→ P.1-40)

- 2 Select the **Layout** sheet.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

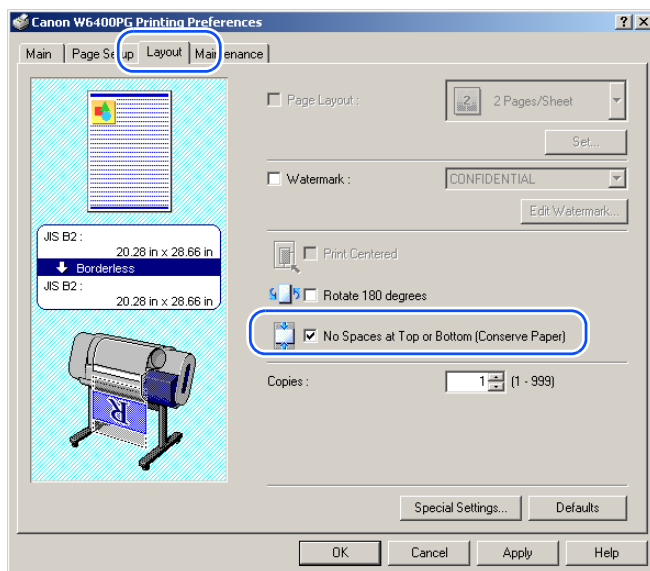
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

3 Select No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper).



4 Confirm the content of the settings Preview, then click the **OK** button.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the print preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-5)

5 Click the **Print** button in the **Print** dialog box. The print job starts.

Custom Print Quality

■ Customizing Print Quality

When you need to frequently perform combined settings for print quality and print speed, you can select **Custom Settings** under **Print Quality** and then do the print quality and resolution settings in the **Custom Settings** dialog box according to the requirements of your requirements. For example, if you need to set up printing text mixed with photos or graphics, or some other such job, you can raise the text resolution and lower the photo or graphic resolution.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to [“Printing”](#) in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ P.1-40)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

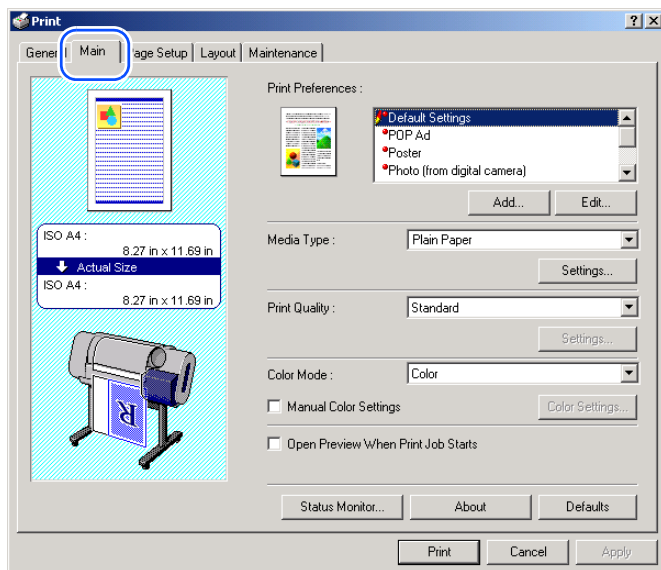
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

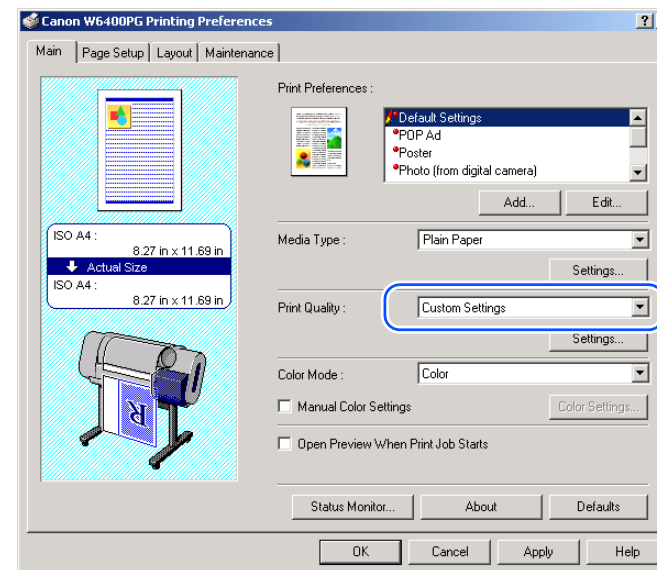
Contents

Index

2 Confirm that the **Main** sheet is displayed.

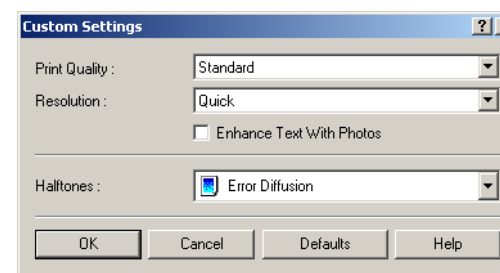


3 From the **Print Quality** list, select **Custom Settings**.



A **Settings** button appears in the lower right corner of the **Print Quality** group.

4 Click the **Settings** button in the **Print Quality** group to open the **Custom Settings** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

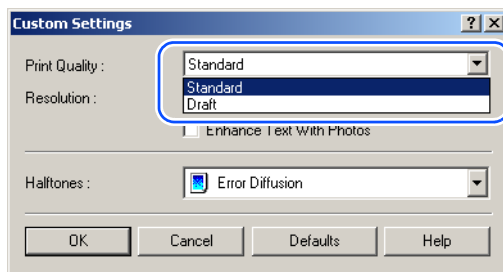
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

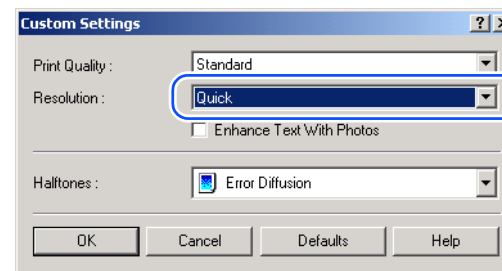
Index

5 From the **Print Quality** list, select the quality settings.



- If one of the types of media below is selected, **Draft** cannot be selected under **Print Quality**.
Premium Matte Paper, Glossy Photo, SemiGlos Photo Paper, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Backlit Film, Flame Resistant Cloth, Japanese Paper Washi, CAD Translucent Matte Film

6 Confirm the resolution.



Note

- The print quality settings that you can select for the custom settings are described below.

Print Quality	Content
Highest	Prioritizes attaining the highest image quality for printing.
High	Prioritizes attaining high image quality for printing.
Standard	Attains a stable image at an average printing speed.
Draft	Prioritizes high printing speed but you should check layout and other aspects of the image after printing.

- The items that are available for selection under **Print Quality** may differ depending on which print media are used. Here is a list of the media where **Highest** under **Print Quality** is available.
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, Japanese Paper Washi, CAD Translucent Matte Film

Important

- The resolution is set automatically depending on which print quality item is selected as shown below. If you need to change the resolution you can perform so with the setting under Print Quality.

Print Quality	Resolution	Content
Highest, High, Standard	Fine (600 dpi)	Print speed is slower due to the higher resolution setting. Achieves the best printing results, but printing time is longer and a large amount of computer memory is required.
Standard, Draft	Quick (300 dpi)	Print speed is faster due to the lower resolution setting. Printing time is shorter and not as much computer memory is required.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

- Even with **Print Quality** set to **Standard**, the **Resolution** is fixed at **Fine (600 dpi)** if one of the settings below is selected for **Media Type**. If any other media is selected, the **Resolution** is fixed at **Quick (300 dpi)**.

Premium Matte Paper, Backlit Film, Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas SemiGlos, CAD Plain Paper, CAD Tracing Paper, CAD Translucent Matte Film

- 7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Custom Settings** dialog box.



Note

- If you select **Enhance Text with Photos** in the **Custom Settings** dialog box then when you have text mixed with photos or graphic data, the resolution of the text will be raised and the resolution of the photos or graphics will be lowered.
- Only the **Halftone** and **Error Diffusion** custom settings can be set. Error diffusion arranges non-standard pixels and displays them as gradations (halftones). This setting is ideal for photographs or graphic images that require printing with fine gradations.

Fine Adjusting Color for Printing

■ Adjusting Color

Basically the color settings of the software application have priority, but if the results of a print job are not what you want you can also adjust color in the printer driver. You can also take color photos captured with a scanner or a digital camera, or any other color image, and print them in monochrome.

We will introduce color adjustment.

- 1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.



Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “[Printing](#)” in [Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”](#). (→ [P.1-40](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

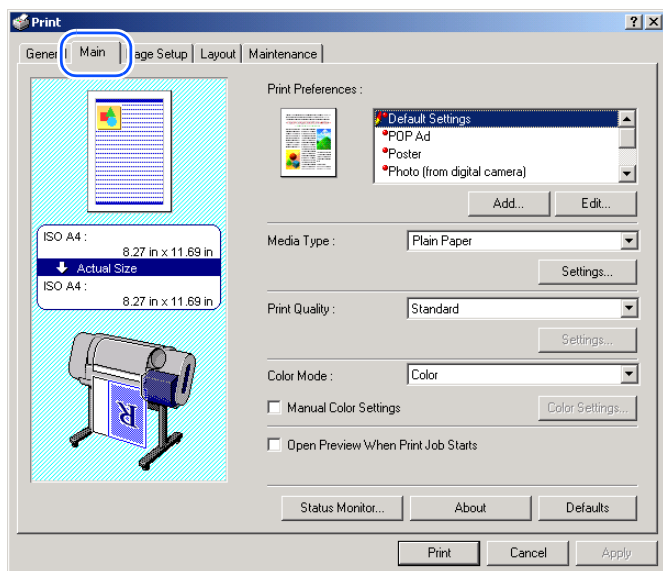
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

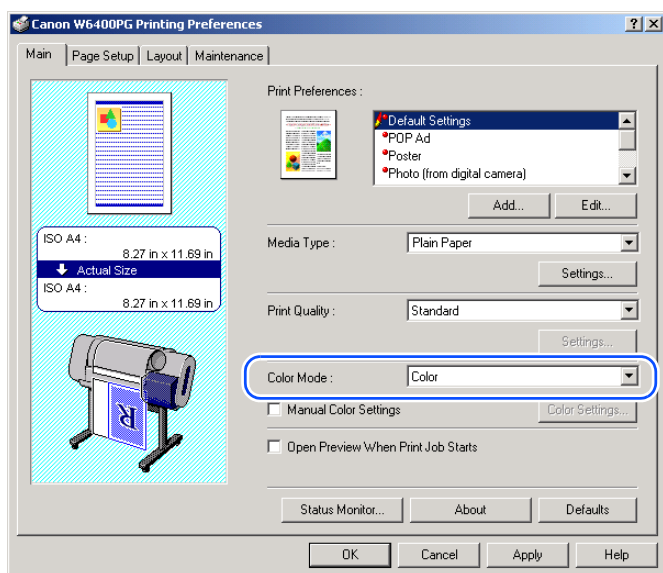
Contents

Index

2 Confirm that the **Main** sheet is displayed.



3 On the **Main** sheet select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

- **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Prints with only a limited number of colors. Use this setting when you need fine lines with light colors in a sharp image.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected: Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/ Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

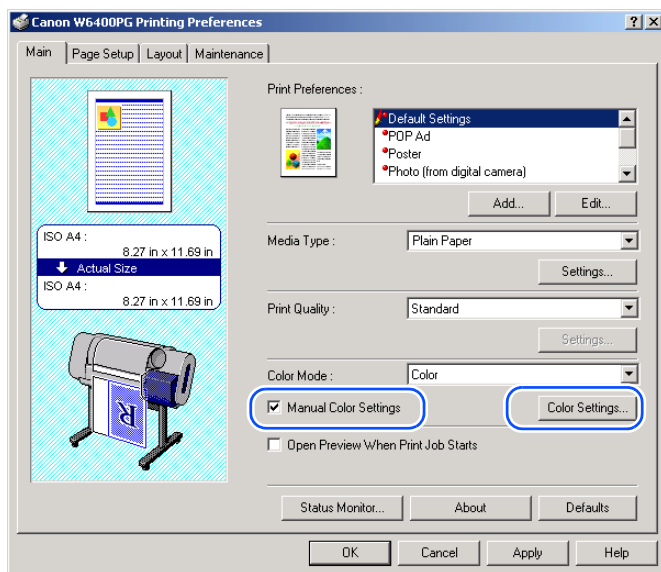
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

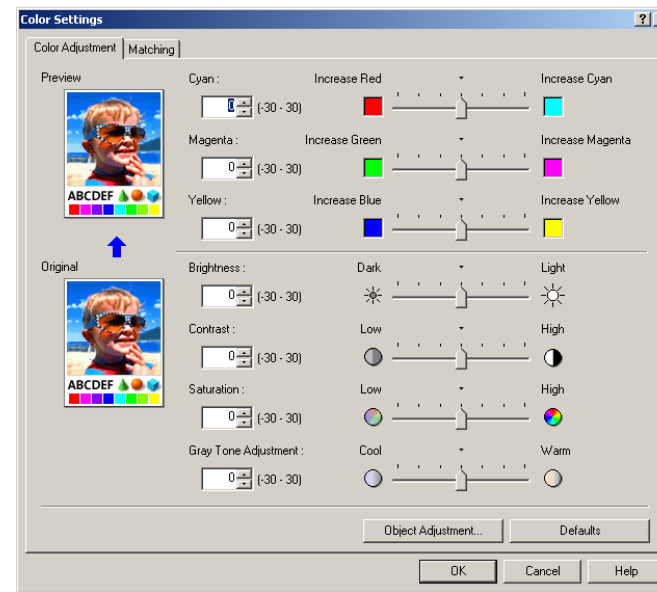
Contents

Index

4 Select **Manual Color Settings** then click the **Color Settings** button.



The **Color Settings** dialog box opens.



Note

- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

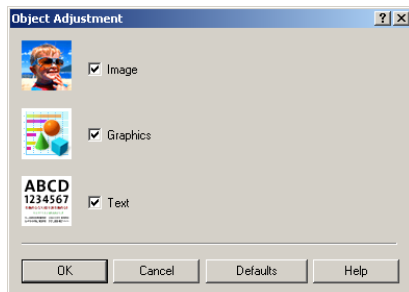
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

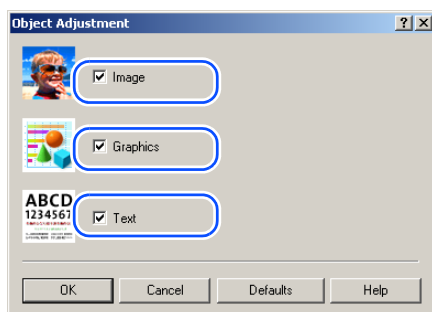
Index

5 Confirm that the **Color Adjustment** sheet is displayed, then click the **Object Adjustment** button.

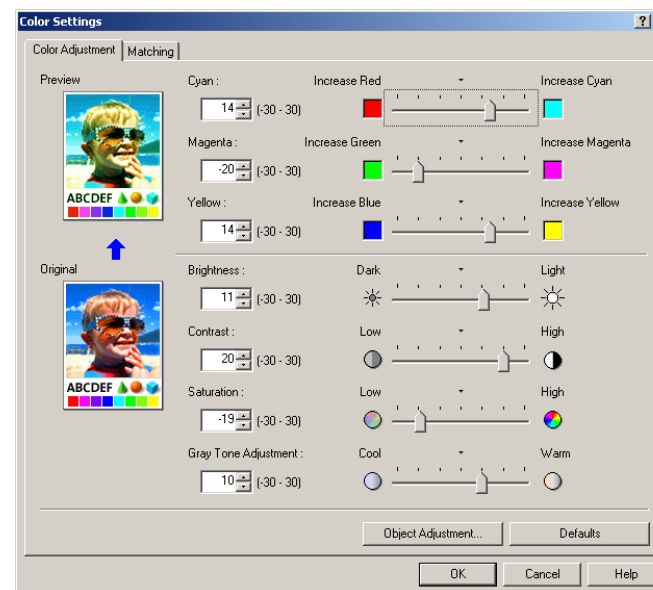
The **Object Adjustment** dialog box opens.



6 Select the item that you want to adjust: **Image**, **Graphics**, or **Text**.



8 Drag the slide bar to the left or right for the item that you want to adjust. You can also enter the value direction or use the arrows of the spinbox to rapidly raise or lower the value.



Note

- Note that for this printer driver all the items (**Image**, **Graphics**, **Text**) are selected as the default settings.

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Object Adjustment** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

 Note

- Color Adjustment presents the following items for selection.

Color Adjustment	Content
Cyan	You can calibrate the hues for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Contrast	Adjusts the relative contrast from brightest to darkest colors.
Vivid	Adjusts the relative contrast from brightest to darkest colors.
Brightness	Adjusts brightness from the darkest to brightest colors so none are lost in the brightness of the printed image.
Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjusts grayscale from cool colors (blue tones) to warm colors (red tones).

 Important

- As you change each item, the image of the **Preview** on the left changes to reflect the adjustment. The **Original** shows the appearance of the initial settings, and the **Preview** reflects the current settings.
- Even after performing the settings on the **Color Adjustment** sheet if you remove the selections of the **Manual Color Settings** the **Color Adjustment** settings are disabled. Remove the **Color Adjustment** selection if you do not want to perform color adjustments.

9 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

■ Color Matching

When you print an image captured with a scanner or a digital camera, sometimes the appearance of the printout does not match what you see on the screen.

This is caused by differences between the display color and the printed color. In the **Color Settings** dialog box you can use the items on the **Matching** sheet, that is, select a color profile **ICC (International Color Consortium)**, or **ICM (Image Color Management)**, or select a matching mode, input profile, or printer profile, to have the hues of the colors on the screen more closely resemble the colors in the printout.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

 Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to “**Printing**” in **Chapter 1 “Basic Procedures”**. (→ P.1-40)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

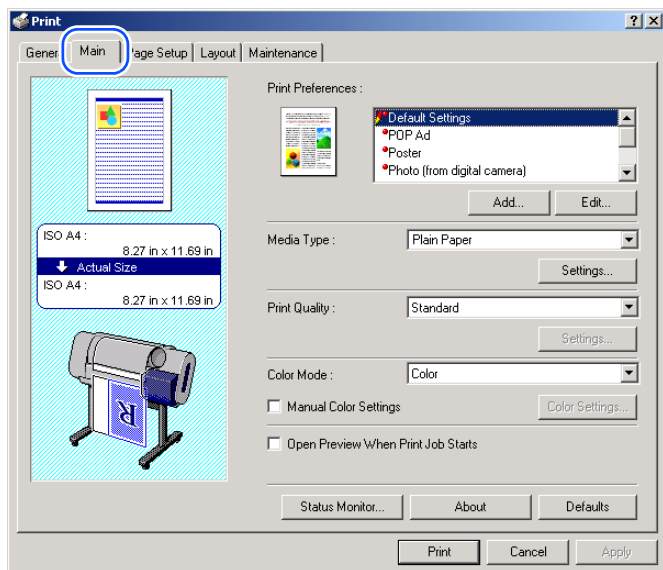
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

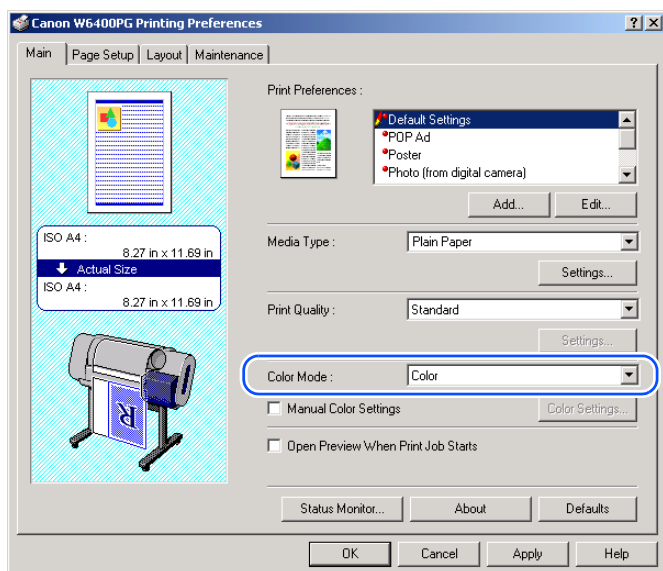
Contents

Index

2 Confirm that the **Main** sheet is displayed.



3 On the **Main** sheet select **Color** for **Color Mode**.



Note

- **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Prints with only a limited number of colors. Use this setting when you need fine lines with light colors in a sharp image.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected: Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/ Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

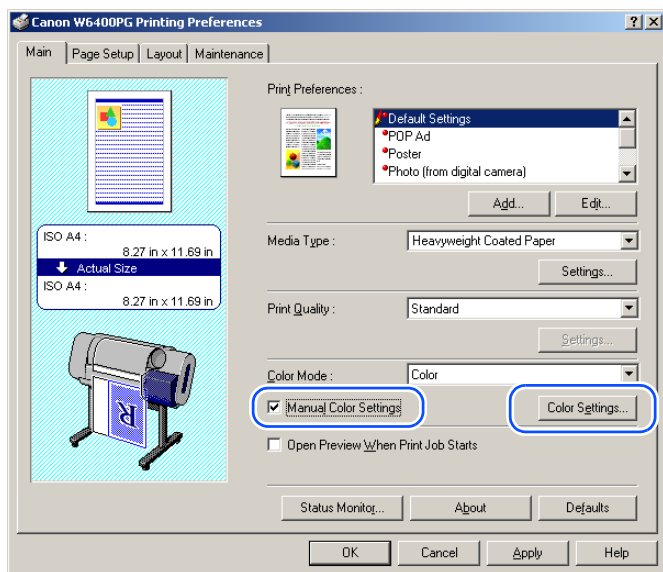
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

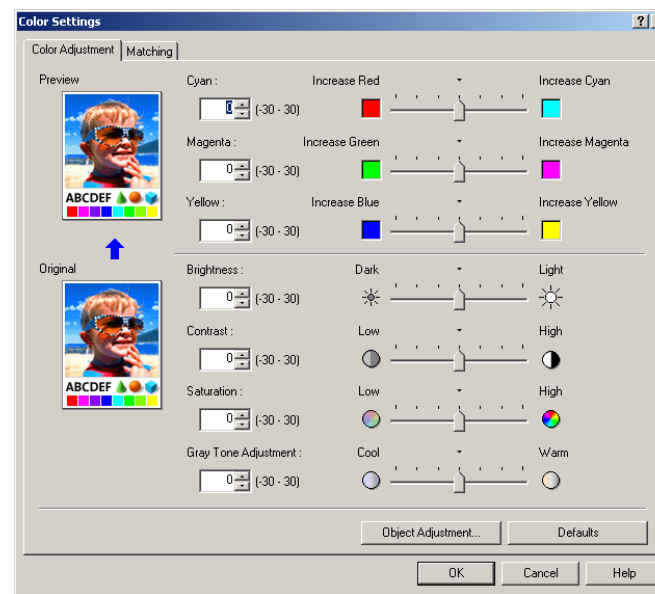
Contents

Index

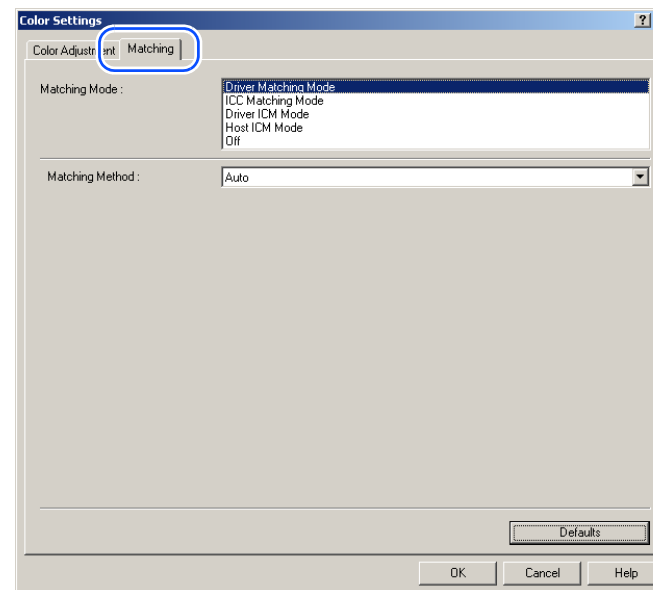
4 Select **Manual Color Settings** then click the **Color Settings** button.



The **Color Settings** dialog box opens.



5 In the **Color Settings** dialog box, select the **Matching** sheet.



Note

- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

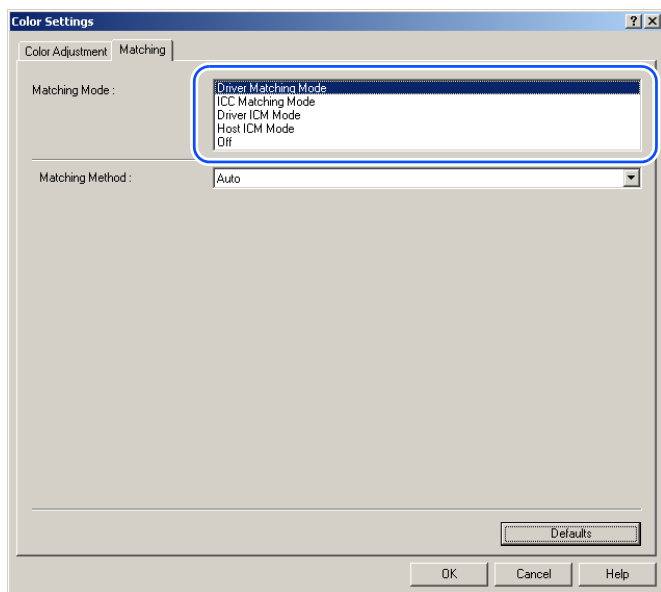
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

6 From the **Matching Mode** list, select the matching mode.



Note

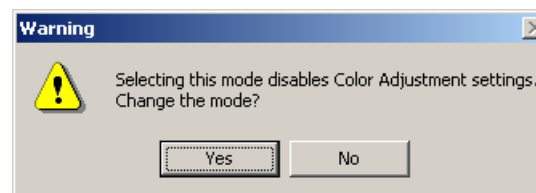
- Here is a list of the available **Matching Modes**.

Matching Mode	Content
Driver Matching Mode	Calibrates color using the original color profile of the printer driver.
ICC Matching Mode	Calibrates the color in the printer driver using the standards of ICC color profiles.
Driver ICM Mode	Calibrates color in the printer driver using the Windows ICM function for color calibration. *This mode is displayed only for Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Windows 2000.

Matching Mode	Content
Host ICM Mode	Calibrates color in the printer driver using the Windows ICM function for color calibration at the host computer. * This mode is displayed only for Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Windows 2000.
Off	Does not execute color matching. The color matching is performed in the software application or performed by an independent color profile; select when you want the color matching of the printer driver is ignored.

Important

- The mode you select for the **Matching Mode** affects what items are available for selection.
- The warning message below is displayed for **Driver ICM Mode**, and **Host ICM Mode**. If you do not want to disable the color adjustments, click the **No** button. After you click **No**, the **Driver ICM Mode** and **Host ICM Mode** cannot be selected.

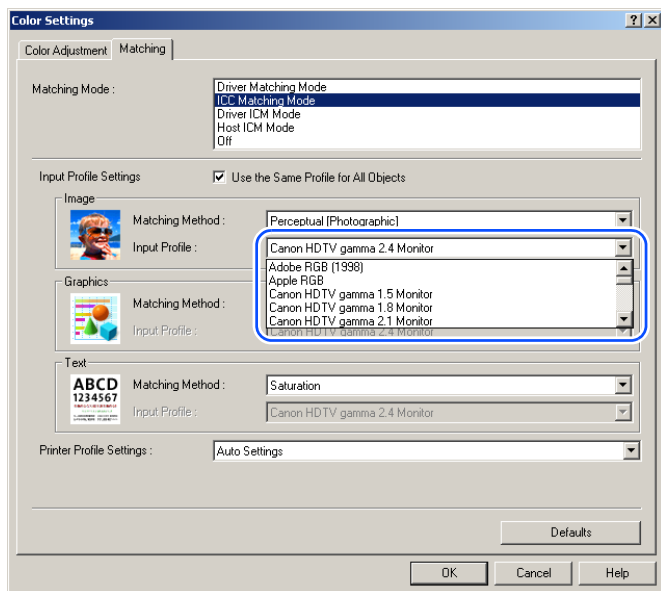


- Chapter 1 Basic Procedures
- Chapter 2 Using a Variety of Media
- Chapter 3 Printing Methods for Different Objectives
- Chapter 4 Maintaining the Printer
- Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment
- Chapter 6 Troubleshooting
- Chapter 7 Operation of the Function Menus

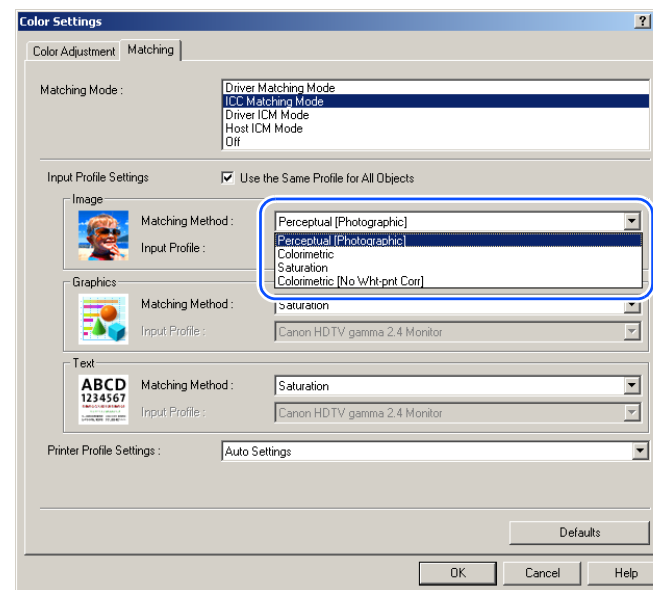
Contents

Index

7 When **ICC Matching Mode** is selected for the **Matching Mode**, at Image under **Input Profile Settings** select a profile from the **Input Profile** list.



8 Select a matching method from the input profile **Matching Method** list.



Note

● **Matching Method** presents the following items for selection.

Matching Method	Content
Automatic	Makes the best selections for the Image , Graphics , and Text items. *This item is available only when Driver Matching Mode is selected.
Perceptual (Photographic)	This is the best mode for photographs. Achieves the best color results matching the hues of the colors on the screen with those in the printout, also provides smooth gradation.
Colorimetric	Faithfully reproduces the input data. Performs white color calibration, so there is no color when white data is output.



Note

● If you want to perform different settings for **Graphics** and **Text**, then you must cancel the selection of **Use the Same Profile for All Objects**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

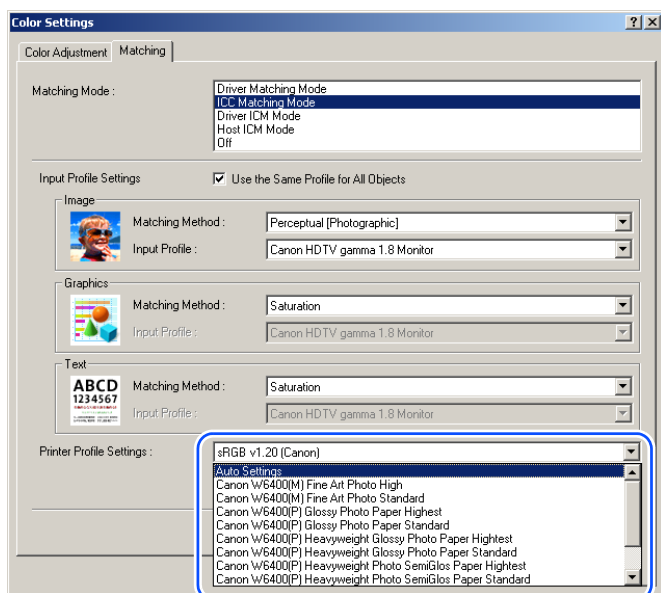
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Matching Method	Content
Colorimetric (No White Point Correction)	Faithfully reproduces the input data. No white point correction is performed.
Saturation	This is the best mode for graphics. Achieves the best results with priority on color saturation.

9 From the **Printer Profile Settings** list, select a printer profile.



About Media Size Options

■ Creating Custom Sizes

On the **Page Setup** sheet of the printer driver click the **Size Options...** button to open the **Media Size Options** dialog box. In this dialog box you can create definitions of original media sizes and register them. Once a custom size has been defined, it will be listed along with the standard sizes and be available for selection.

1 Open the printer driver dialog box from the **Print** dialog box of the application.

Note

- For more details about how to open the printer driver dialog box, please refer to "Printing" in [Chapter 1 "Basic Procedures"](#). (→ P.1-40)

Note

- A print profile can be selected only when **ICC Matching Mode** is selected under the **Matching Mode**.

10 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

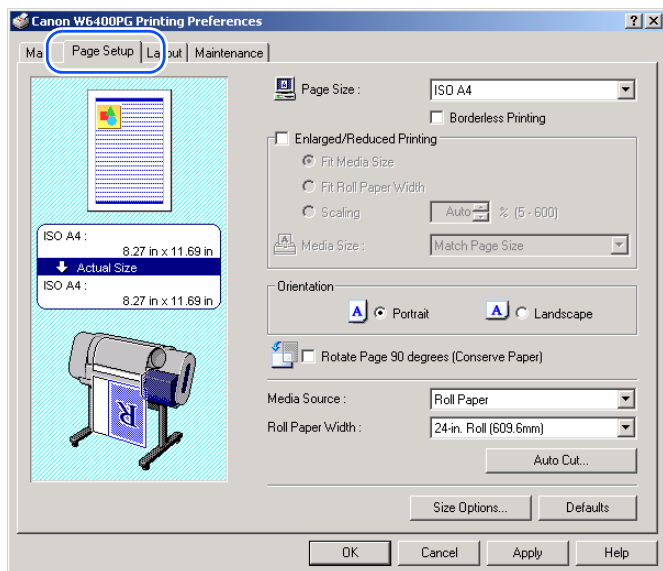
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

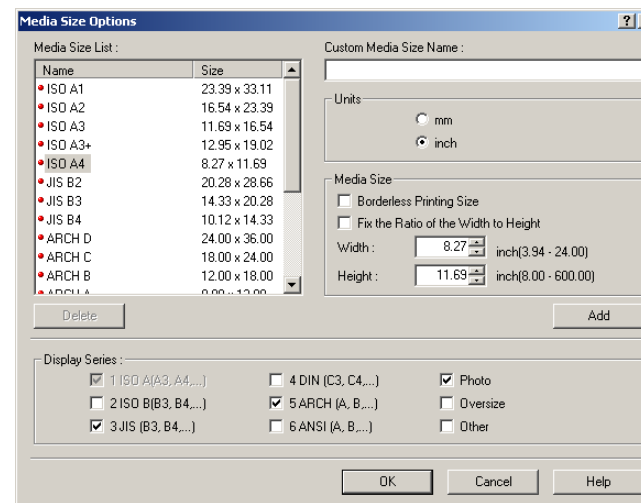
Contents

Index

2 Select the **Page Setup** sheet.



3 Click the **Size Options...** button to open the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

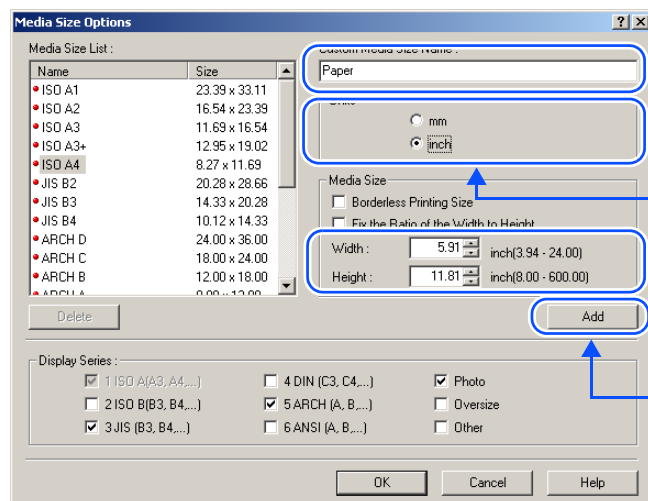
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

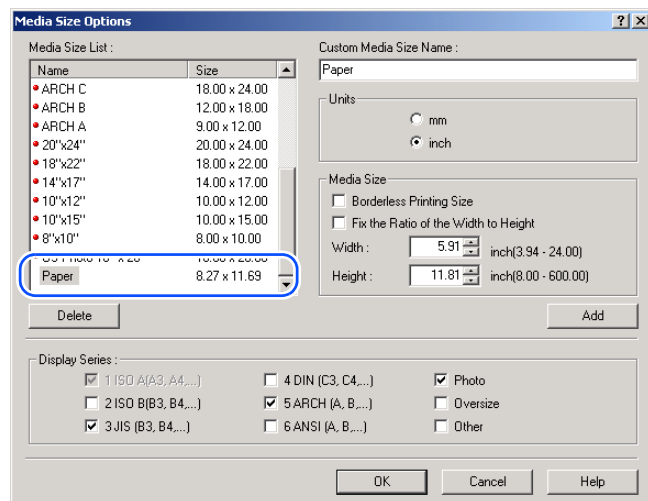
Index

4 Define the size in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.



1. Input the media size you create for **Custom Media Size Name**.
2. Select the unit for the size and click.
3. Enter **Width** and **Height** you want in **Media Size**.
4. Click the **Add** button.

After you click the **Add** button, the user-defined media name registered in the **Media Size List** of the **Media Size Options** dialog box and the media size are displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index



Note

- As soon as you select the name of a media size from the **Media Size List**, the **Width** and **Height** settings of the selected size are automatically entered.
- If **Borderless Printing Size** is selected, the selection for **Width** changes automatically to a roll width that supports borderless printing. Select a **Width** setting for the width of the desired roller, then enter the **Height** that you want.
- If you want to fix the ratio between the width and height, select **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height**. If you change the **Height** then the **Width** will adjust automatically so the ratio of the width to height remains the same as the original ration; similarly, if you change the **Width** the **Height** setting will also adjust automatically at the same ratio.



Important

- The **Fix the Ratio of the Width to Height** is not available when **Borderless Printing Size** is selected.

5

 Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Note

- You can define up to 50 custom sizes for media.
- The settings in the **Media Size Options** dialog box remain in effect even after the software application is closed.
- To delete a registered custom size, from the **Media Size List** select the name of the custom size to delete, then click the **Delete** button.
- To edit a registered custom size, from the **Media Size List**, select the name of the custom size, then change the **Width** and **Height** settings, then click the **Register** button.
- The standard sizes (marked with a red dot on the left), or sizes that you defined with another printer driver (marked with a white dot on the left), can be neither edited nor deleted.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

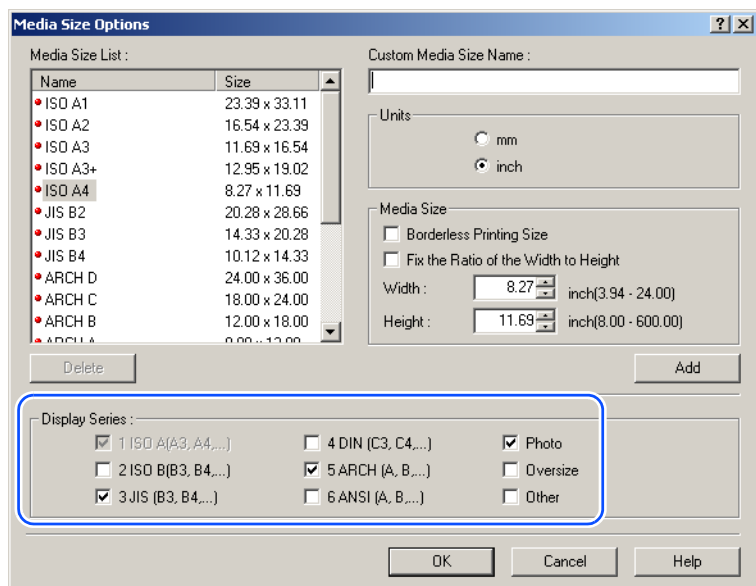
Contents

Index

■ Selecting a Media Display Series

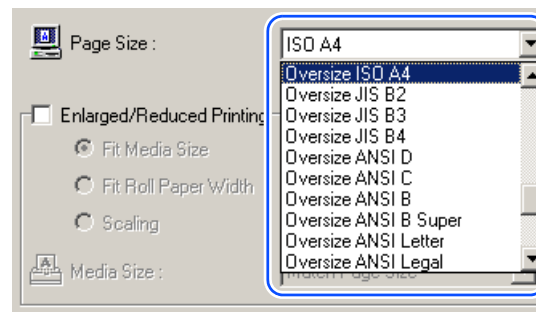
You can select a size series for **Display Series** that will display for the **Media Size** and **Page Size** on the **Page Setup** sheet in the **Media Size Options** dialog box.

To select a display series to display for the **Page Size** and **Media Size** in the **Page Setup** sheet, in the **Media Size Options** dialog box select the **Display Series** that you want to use. Also, if you want to cancel a size series selected for display, just click and cancel the **Display Series** selection.

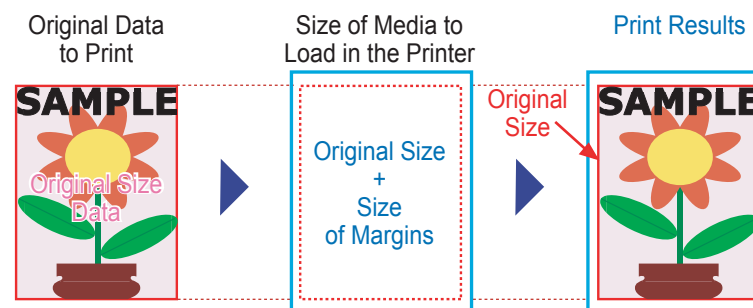


Note

- If you select an oversize for the **Display Series** then **Oversize** will display in front of the media name as shown below. For example, if the page size selection is **ISO A4** then **Oversize - ISO A4** is displayed.



- When you see **Oversize** - prefixed to a page size, you can print documents and images with the specified sizes as shown below. However, when you apply this function to print you must set a media size large enough to accommodate the page size plus the extra white space. You cannot perform oversize printing using a custom size document, an media size selected for borderless printing, or media size that is too large to feed with this printer.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

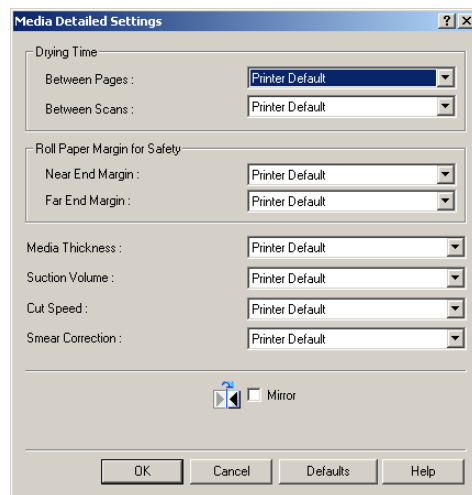
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean

■ How to Set the Media Type

You can use the printer operation panel to perform suitable settings for ink drying time of each media and other features. These settings can also adjusted with the items in the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box in the printer driver. If the printouts are not clear, you may be able to correct the problem by adjusting the settings in this dialog box.

To open the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, in the printer driver open the **Main** sheet and then in the lower right corner of the **Media Type** group box click the **Settings...** button.

For more details about the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, please refer to the online Help.



Software Provided for Windows

The following software applications are provided for use with Windows.

The function of each software application is described below.

■ Basic Software for Printing

imagePROGRAF Printer Driver 2005

This is a software application that required for the printer to print. This must be installed on every computer that will use the printer. The printer driver not only allows the printer to print, the driver also provides many other important functions such as enlargement/reduction, borderless printing, color adjustment, multiple copy printing, and others. This can be used with Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0, Windows Me, and Windows 98.

The printer driver is on the provided User W6400 Software CD-ROM. (→ Quick Start Guide)

■ Displaying the Printer Status

GARO Status Monitor

This utility software is used with Windows to display the details about printer errors on the computer screen. This can be used with Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0, Windows Me, and Windows 98.

This is provided on the W6400 User Software CD-ROM and it is installed automatically with the printer driver.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Using the Printer on a Network

LPR Port

This software must be installed on Windows Me or Windows 98 so the computer can use the printer on a network with TCP/IP.

To install this software, use the Setup Menu of the W6400 User Software CD-ROM to start the dynamic installation for both the printer and this software.

GARO Device Setup Utility

The software application for Windows that allows you to use the computer to set up the network information for the printer.

(→ [Chapter 5 “Using the Printer in a Network Environment”](#))

Remote UI

The function that allows you to use a Web browser on a networked computer to display the status of the printer and to set up and delete print jobs. This utility is built into the network interface of this printer.

(→ [Chapter 5 “Using the Printer in a Network Environment”](#))

NetSpot Console

This software allows you to use a Web browser on a computer connected to a network to display the status of the printer and perform printer and network settings for a server running with Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows NT 4.0, Windows Me, and Windows 98. You can download NetSpot Console free of charge from the Canon home page (<http://canon.jp/>). Install as required on the server computer.

Device Status Extension

If printer sharing is performed where IIS is installed on Windows XP or Windows 2000 you can use your Web Browser to display information about shared printers and manage print jobs. By installing Device Status Extension on Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, or Windows 2000, the screens that display printer information for printers that support Device Status Extension can be replaced with the screens provided by Canon. Further, if you use NetSpot Console, you can start NetSpot Console from the Device Status Extension screen to perform printer and other settings. Device Status Extension is stored on the provided W6400 User Software CD-ROM. For more details about how to install and use this software, please refer to the Readme.txt file in the **DSE** folder.

■ Creating Posters Easily

PosterArtist

The software provides a wizard that helps you create posters simply, and guides you from creation through printing. Original image for a poster can be created freely in a software application regardless of the print settings performed in the printer driver. Also, borderless printing and banner size posters can be created easily. Posters created with PosterArtist can be printed only on this printer.

It can be used with Japanese Windows XP, Windows 2000, Windows Me, and Windows 98 SE.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Printing Beautiful Photographs

Digital Photo Print Pro

This software allows you to easily take a photo image captured with a digital camera, enlarge it, and then print it without borders. You can also easily adjust color brightness and contrast, eliminate the effects of red-eye and moiré in photo images, and correct subject back light. Also, you can use one of the templates provided to easily print and original calendar or create a list of images with text entered. This software application requires Windows XP or Windows 2000.

■ Printing Beautiful Digital Camera Images (for the Professional)

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop (hereafter "Print Plug-In") makes it possible to reproduce and print the vivid RGB color of Adobe created in PhotoShop. This software is intended for professionals and high-end users who want to obtain the best finished color hues.

After installation of Print Plug-In, you can view a Preview within PhotoShop that allows you to confirm how faithful the colors are reproduced and then adjust them. Because you can process RGB 16-bit data just as it is with PhotoShop, you can print without losing the high color gradations of the originals. Also, you can save the used settings so when you want to print with the same settings you only have to open and read that information to print again.

(→ [Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide](#))

■ Printing Images Created with CAD Systems

Canon imagePROGRAF HDI Printer Driver

The Canon imagePROGRAF HDI printer driver is dedicated to printing accurate, clean images created with AutoCAD CAD software. Normal print jobs sent through the Windows printer driver may show some loss of precision in printing fine lines, but the Canon imagePROFGRF HDI driver communicates with the printer directly from the computer, processes data with its own internal commands and delivers superior reproduction of lines in printing that preserves the accuracy of the originals.

(→ [HDI Driver Guide](#))

■ Select the Media Type

Media Configuration Tool

Media Configuration Tool is the software used to register information about print media (paper, film, etc.) that can be used with the printer as it becomes available. The functions of this software are provided for users who have an in-depth knowledge of printers and print media.

You can use this software to upload and download media information to and from the printer about media names, thickness, printhead height, suction fan strength, default margins, and other information. A function is also provided that allows the user to acquire the most recent information about media for printing when using the printer connected to a network.

(→ [Media Configuration Tool Guide](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing from Macintosh





This printer driver provides a variety of printer functions to meet your printing needs. In this chapter we will introduce these functions.

Before You Begin

There are some functions you should remember and use when you use this printer. Before you use the printer for different printing tasks, please read this section.

■ Basic Settings to Meet Your Needs (Original Type)

To achieve the best printing, you must adjust the color and other settings for the objective of the document. This printer driver provides superior settings frequently used to produce posters, POP ads, digital camera prints, CAD designs, and other prints. Just select from the list the type of document you need and perform the basic procedure for the print job. The following applications are provided for the types of prints shown below.

Types of Documents		Content	Setting Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Standard	Best for printing normal documents, with text, images, graphics, etc. mixed together.	Plain Paper	Standard	Perceptual (OS X) Auto (OS 8/9)	Default
	POP	Best for printing mixed text and illustrations with bright and forceful eyecatching such as store posters.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +5
	Poster	Best for printing posters with centered photographs.	Proofing Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Automatic	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5
	Photo (from digital camera)	Best for printing photos captured with a digital camera.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Perceptual	Contrast: +10 Brightness: +5

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer





Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Types of Documents		Content	Setting Values			
			Paper Type	Print Quality	Matching Method	Color Adjustment
	Photo (from scanner)	Best for reproduction of scanned photographs with color faithful to the quality of the original.	Glossy Photo Paper ^{*1} Heavyweight Coated Paper ^{*2}	Standard	Colorimetric	Default
	Long Format (Banner)	Best for long banner formats (vertical and horizontal) with mixed illustrations and text.	Heavyweight Coated Paper	Standard	Saturation	Contrast: +10 Saturation: +5
	CAD	Best for plans and design drawings with fine lines.	CAD Plain Paper	Standard	Saturation	Default
	No color correction	Prints giving priority to and using the software application setting for color matching	Plain Paper	Standard	Matching Mode No Correction	Default

*1. Photo Black Ink (BK) is the black ink tank type mounted in the printer.

*2. Matte Black Ink (MBK) is the black ink tank type mounted in the printer.

 Note

- For more details about print quality, please refer to “Custom Print Quality” in “Customizing Print Quality”. (→ P.3-103)
- For more details about color mode matching and color adjustments, please refer to “Fine Adjusting Color for Printing” in “Adjusting Color” (→ P.3-107) see “Color Matching”. (→ P.3-113)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

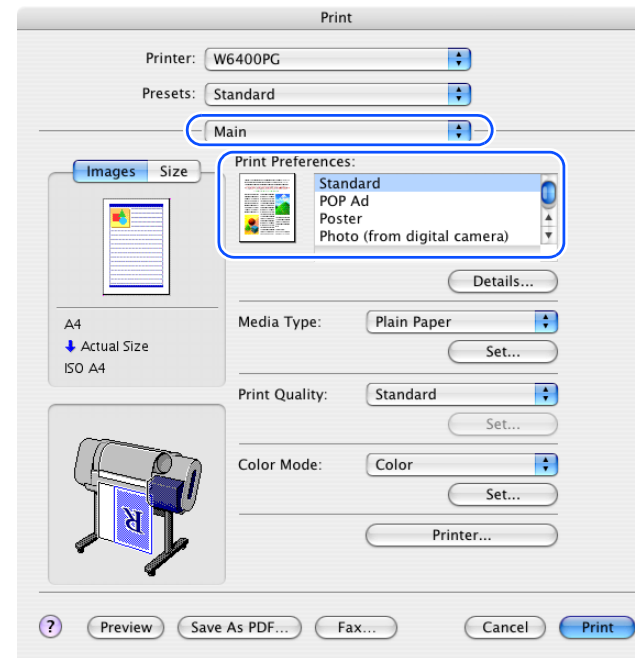
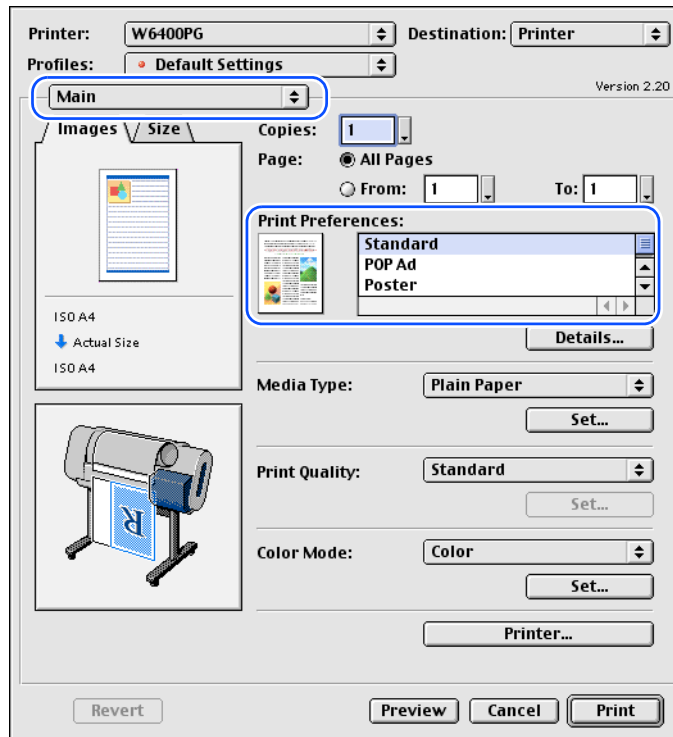
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

To perform the settings for a print, first open the **Main** panel of the printer driver and then from **Print Preferences** select the type of printing that you want to perform.



Note

- The **Profiles** function is also provided with OS 8/9 so you can register your own frequently used print settings. You can use **Add Profile** and **Edit Profile** to further simply printer settings.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

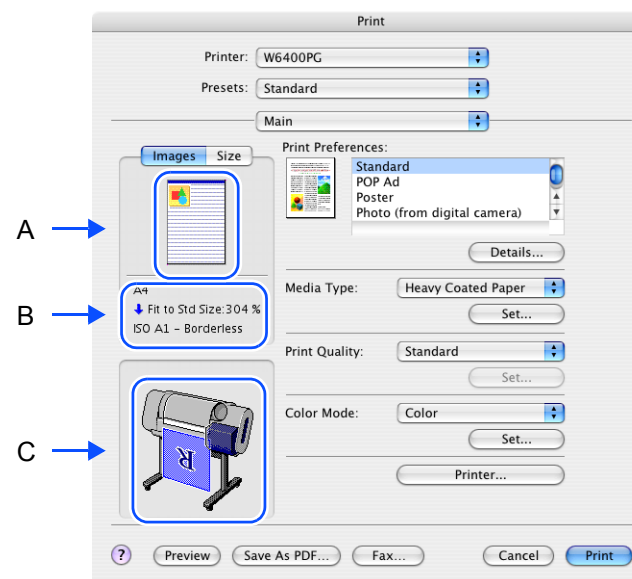
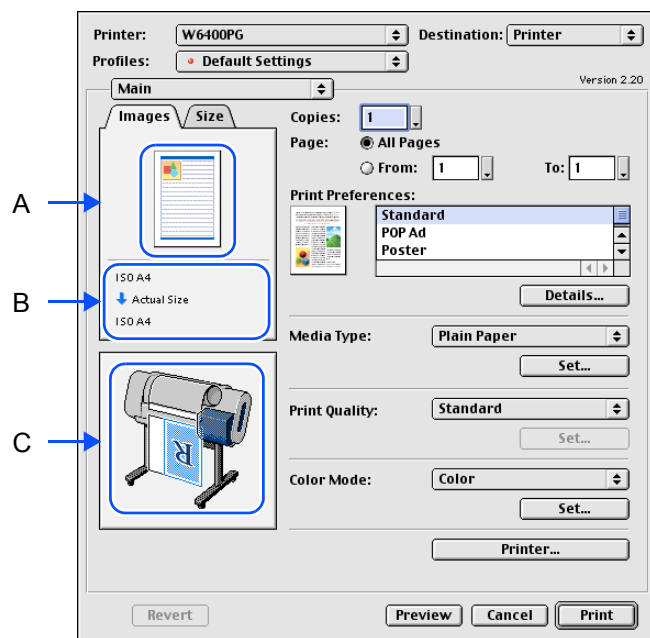
Contents

Index

■ Printer Driver Settings at a Glance (Media Preview)

The preview illustrates the content of the current printer driver settings. If you change the page size and orientation, feed method, etc., you can confirm their immediate effect easily by viewing the effect of the new settings in the Preview image. You can confirm the following items in the Preview.

When you select the **Images** tab, the contents of the media size and layout are displayed.



Setting Preview Description

Setting Preview Description	
A	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. (OS X) : Page Size, Orientation, Scaling, Page Layout, Color Mode, Borderless Printing (OS 8/9) : Page Size, Media Size, Orientation, Scaling, Page Layout, Poster Printing, Color Mode, Mirror, Rotate 180 degrees, Borderless Printing
B	This displays the sizes of the Page Size and Media Size settings. Also, when the Enlarged/Reduced Printing and Borderless Printing items are selected, the mode and magnification are also displayed.
C	The following settings are shown in the Preview image. : Media Source, Automatic Cutting, Print Centered, Banner Printing, Media Source, Fit Roll Paper Width, No Spaces at Top or Bottom, Rotate Paper 90 degrees, Orientation, Borderless Printing, Rotate 180 degrees, Mirror.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

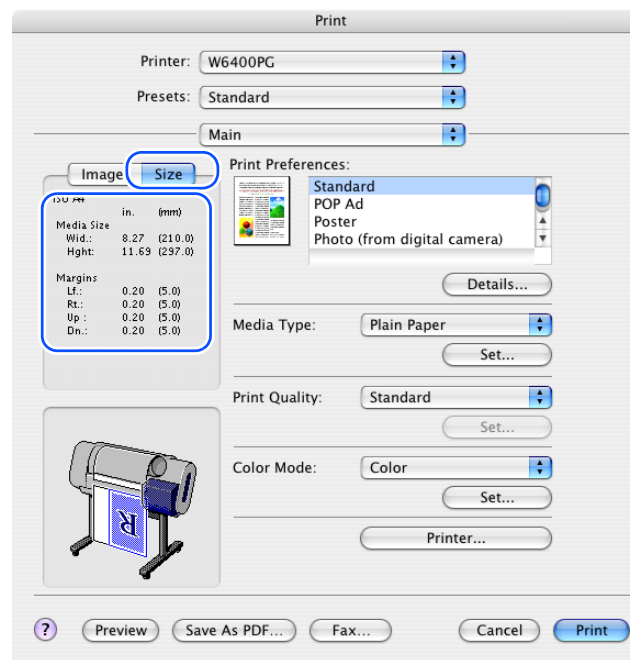
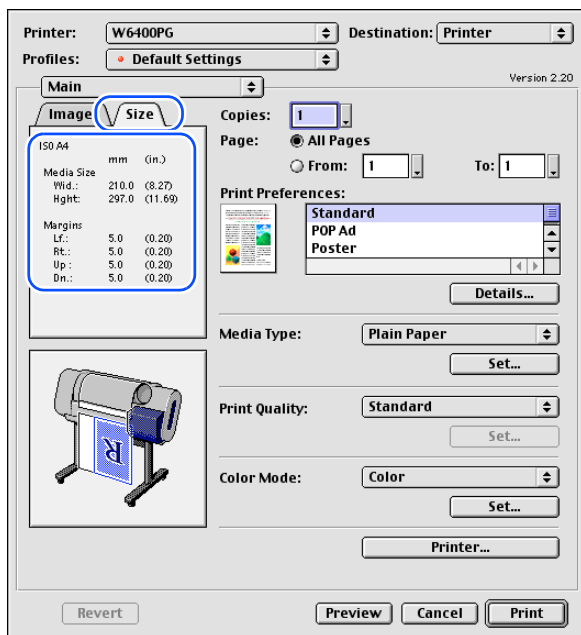
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

When you select the **Size** tab, the details about the media size are displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

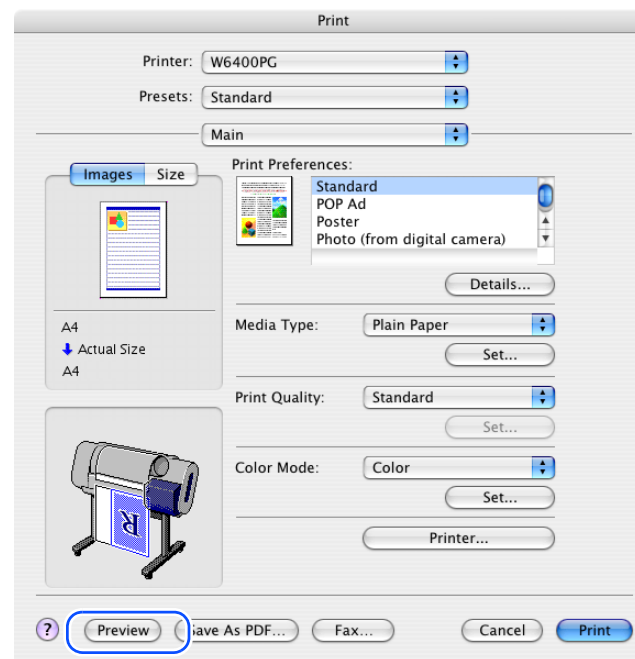
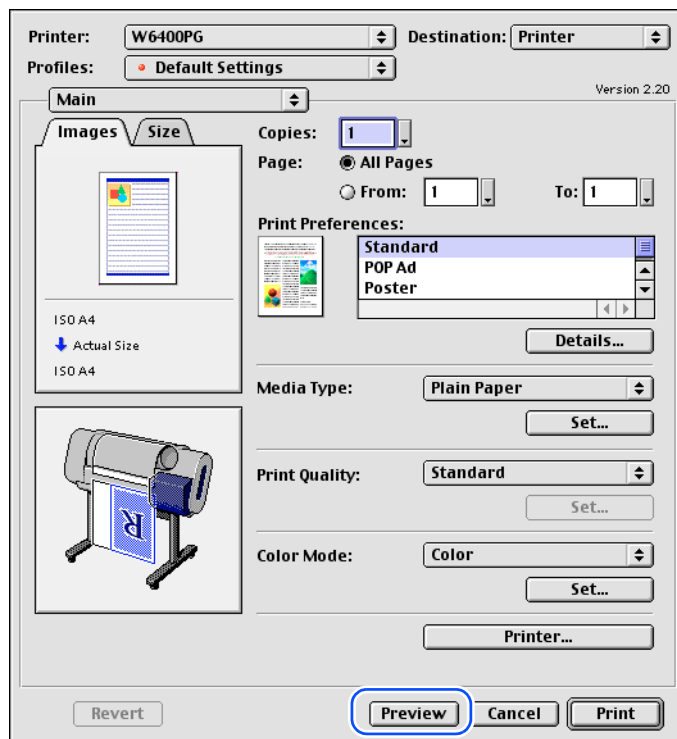
Contents

Index

■ Confirming the Print Image (Print Preview)

There is one more function that can be displayed for the print image of the document in the Preview. This other image is called the **Print Preview**. Open the Preview before you print, so you can avoid failed print jobs beforehand.

To display the **Print Preview**, click the **Preview** button in the printer driver.



When the Viewer starts you can visually check the Preview display.

Once you have confirmed that the image layout on the media is correct, you can print from the Preview screen.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Enlarging and Reducing the Original

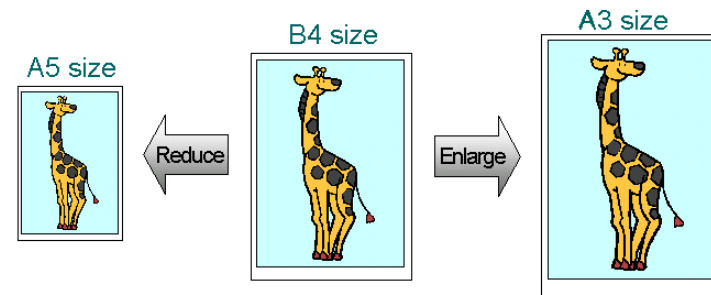
The original can be printed at a larger or smaller size.

There are three methods for enlargement and reduction.

- Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media. (→ [P.3-65](#))
- Enlarging or reducing fit the roll paper width. (→ [P.3-69](#))
- Setting the desired Scaling rate and printing. (→ [P.3-73](#))

■ Enlarging or Reducing Printing to Fit the Size of the Media

By setting the size of the media actually loaded for printing, you can automatically enlarge or reduce the print automatically to match the size of the loaded media.



- 1** In the software application select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 2** For **Media Size (Page Size for OS 8/9)**, select the size of the media.
- 3** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 4** From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

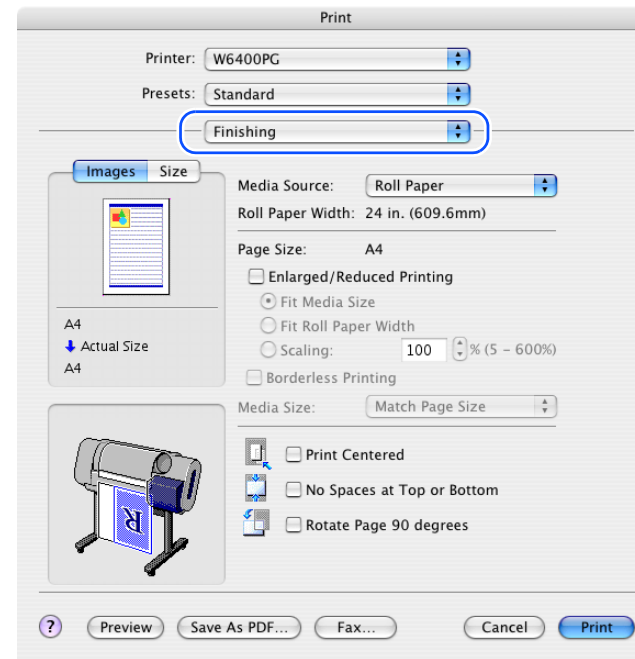
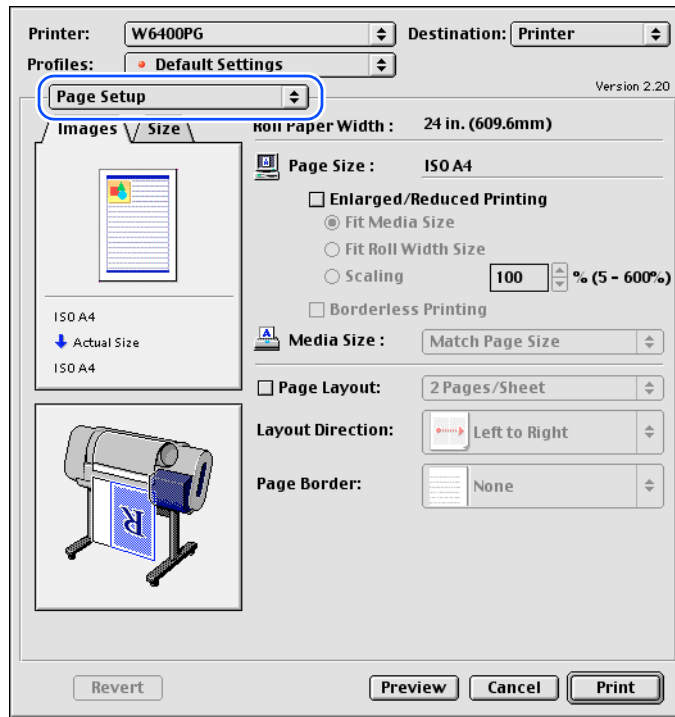
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Select the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



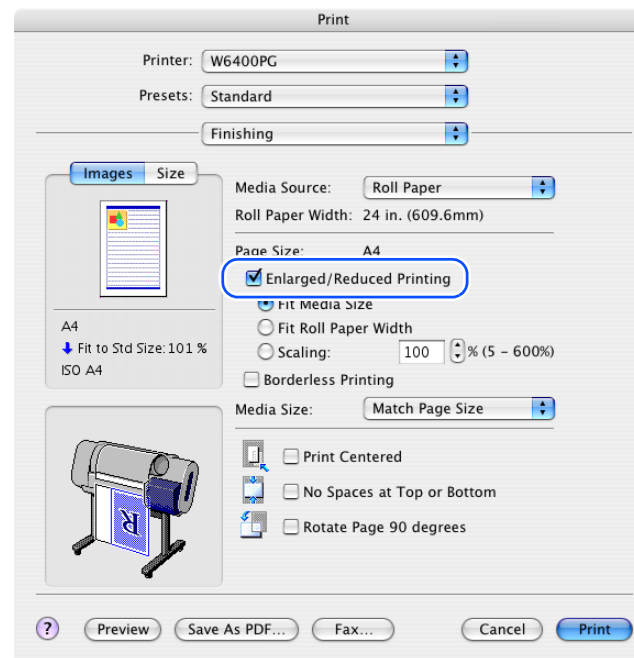
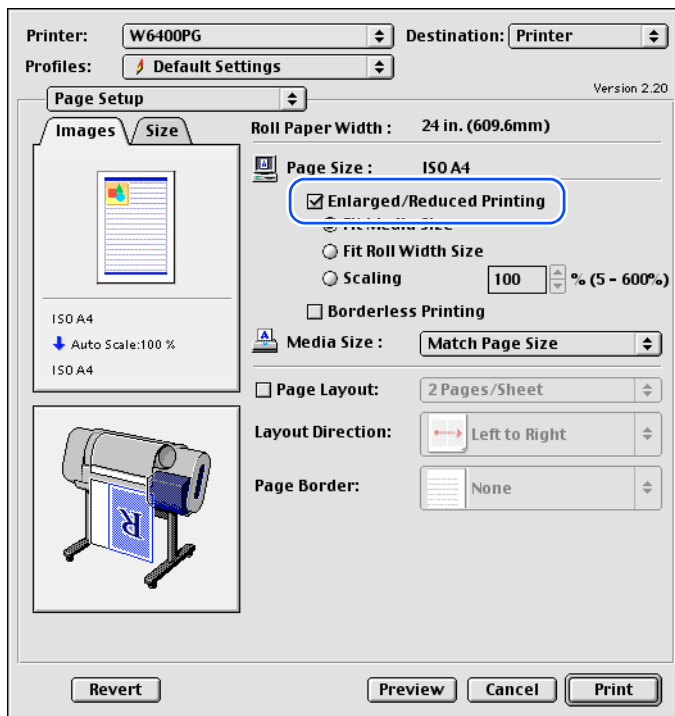
6 Confirm that the size of the original created in the software application is selected under **Page Size**.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 Select Enlarged/Reduced Printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

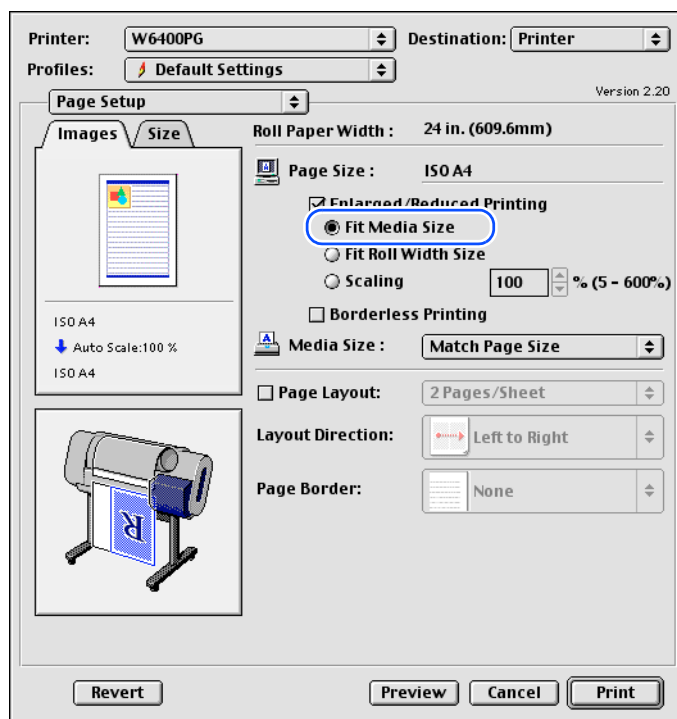
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

8 Confirm that **Fit Media Size** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



9 For **Media Size** select the size of the media that will be used for printing.



Note

- **Match Page Size** is selected as the default.



Important

- If the landscape or portrait orientation of the original page size and the print media are different, part of the image may not print on the media.

10 Confirm the content of the **Preview**, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

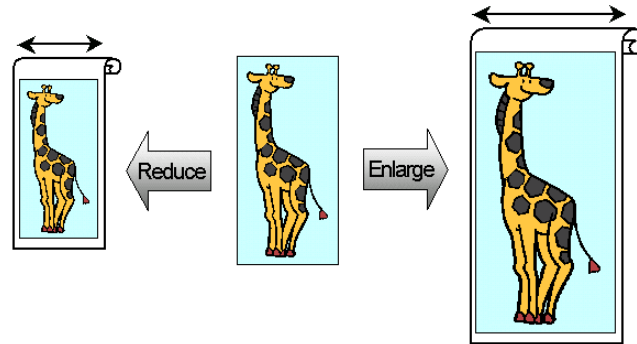
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Enlarge/Reduce to Fit Roll Paper Width

You can enlarge or reduce the entire size of the original so it fits the width of the roll.



- 1** In the software application select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 2** For **Media Size (Page Size for OS 8/9)**, select the size of the media.
- 3** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 4** From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

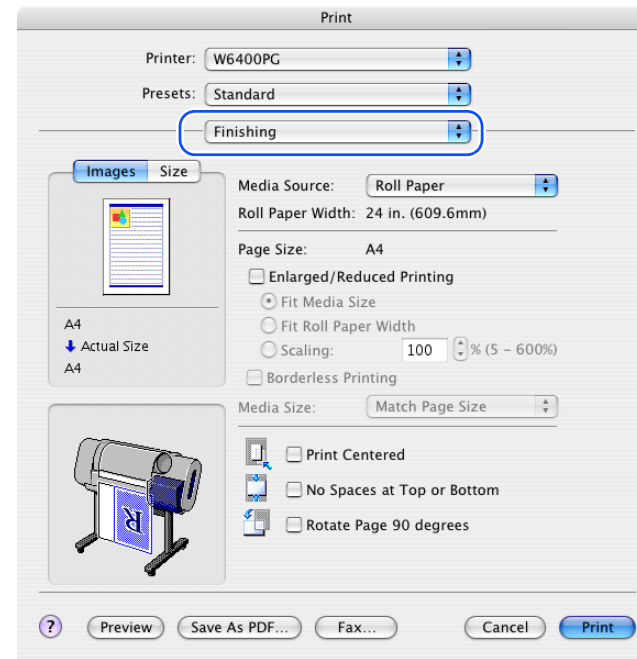
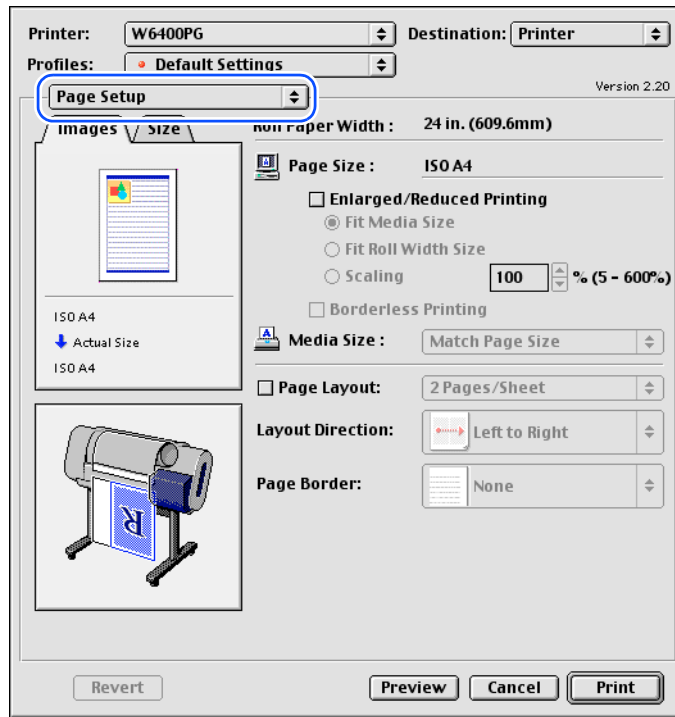
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Select the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



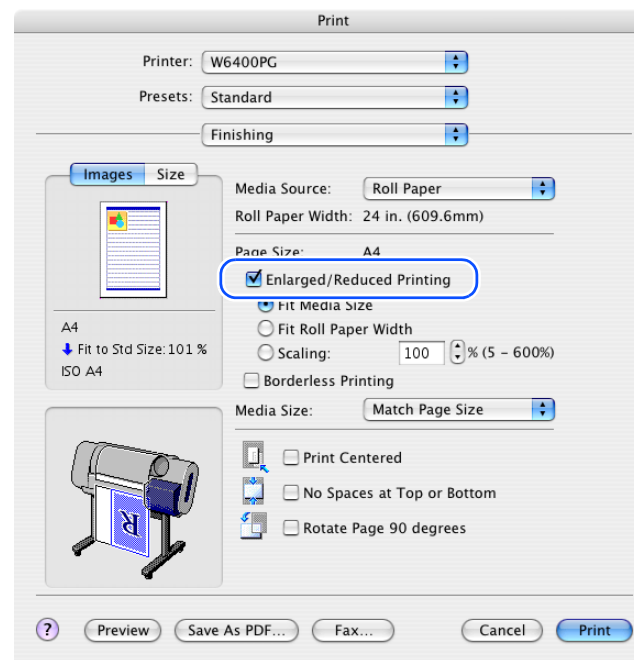
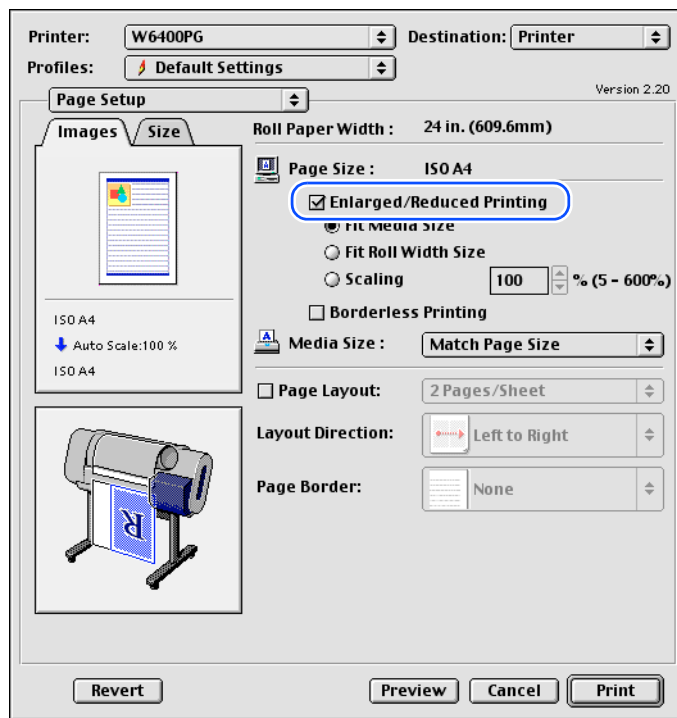
6 Confirm that the size of the original created in the software application is selected under **Page Size**.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 Select Enlarged/Reduced Printing.



8 Under Enlarged/Reduced Printing select Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size for OS 8/9).

Important

- If **Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper)** is selected on the **Finishing** panel, this function cannot be used.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

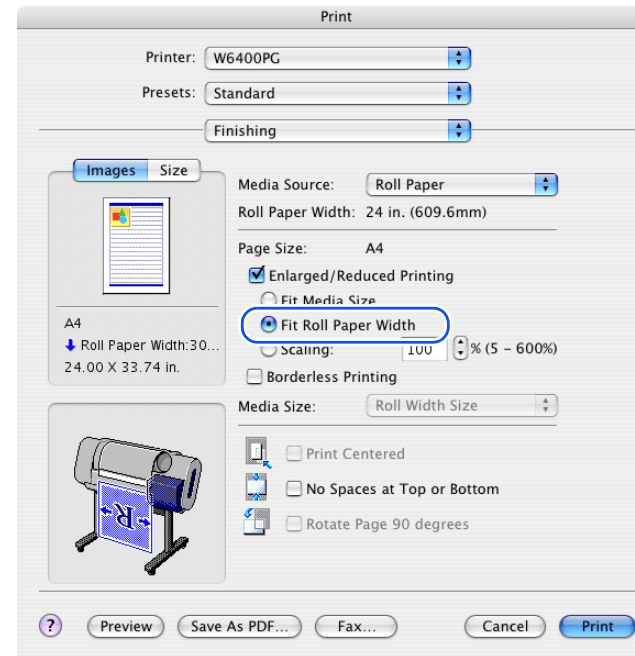
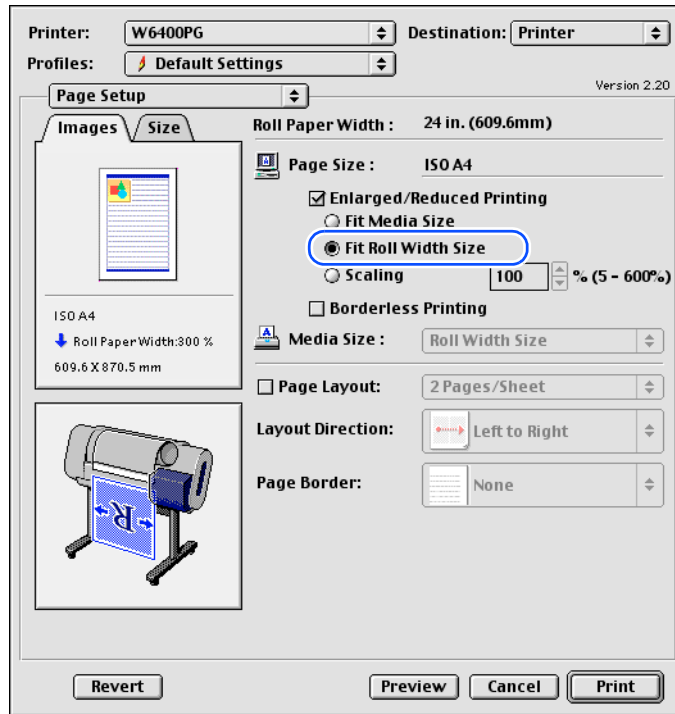
Contents

Index



Note

- Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size for OS 8/9)** to change the width setting for **Media Size**. Check the value displayed for **Roll Paper Width**.



- 9 Confirm the content of the **Preview**, then click the **Print** button.
The print job starts.

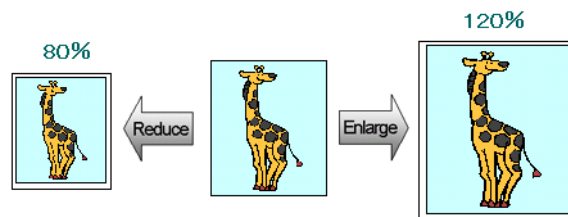
Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Selecting the Magnification Rate for Printing

You can enter the rate of magnification directly if you need to scale the enlargement or reduction for a desired effect.



- 1** In the software application select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 2** For **Media Size** (**Page Size** for OS 8/9), select the size of the media.
- 3** Click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.
- 4** From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

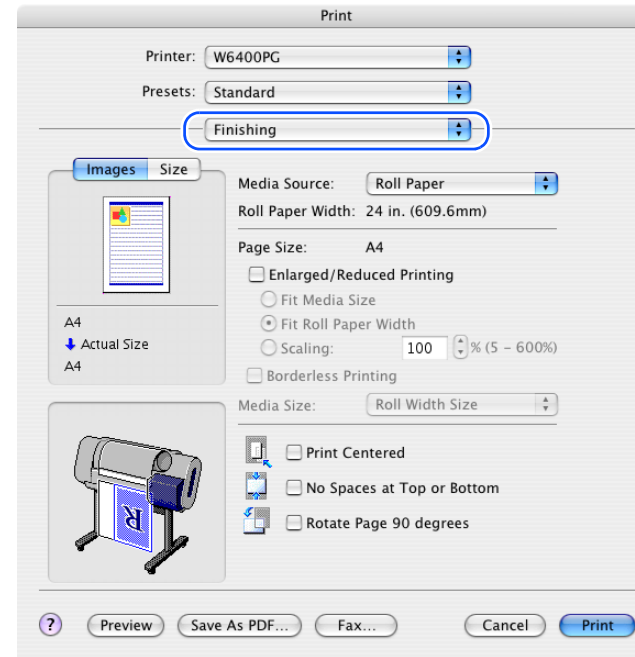
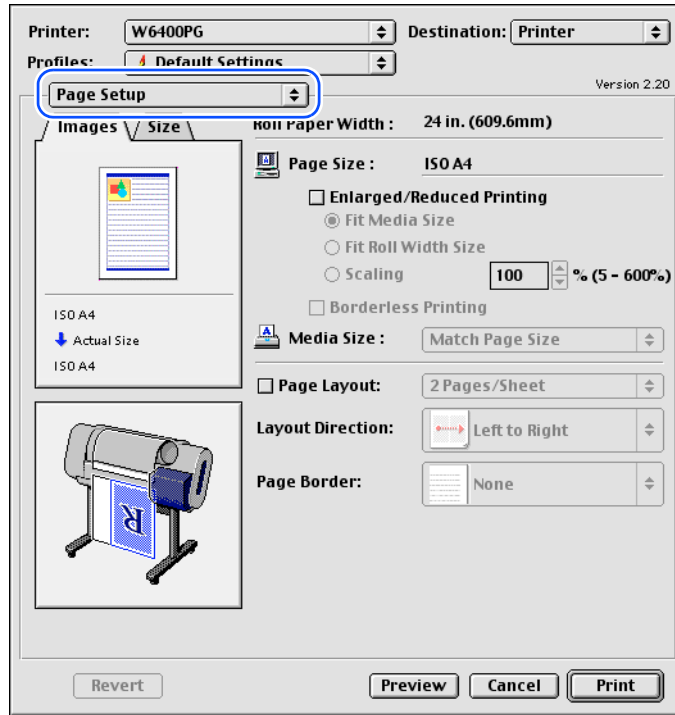
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Select the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



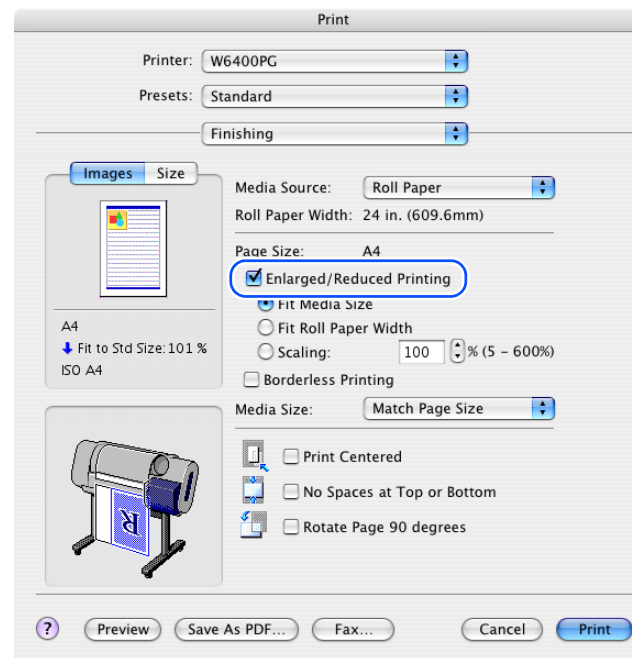
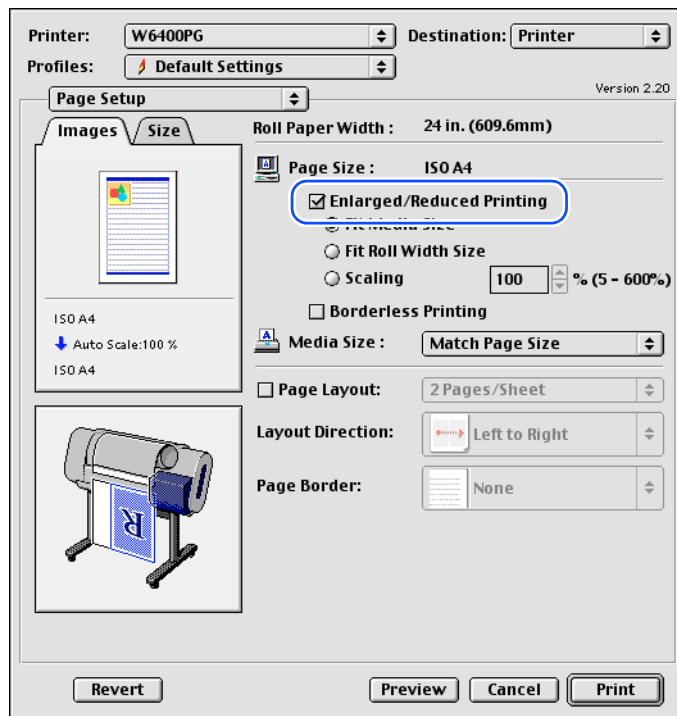
6 Confirm that the size of the original created in the software application is selected under **Page Size**.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 Select Enlarged/Reduced Printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

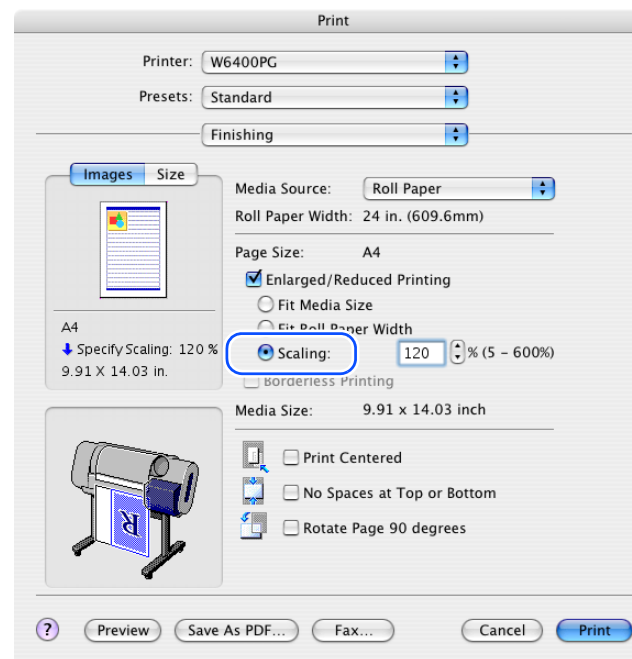
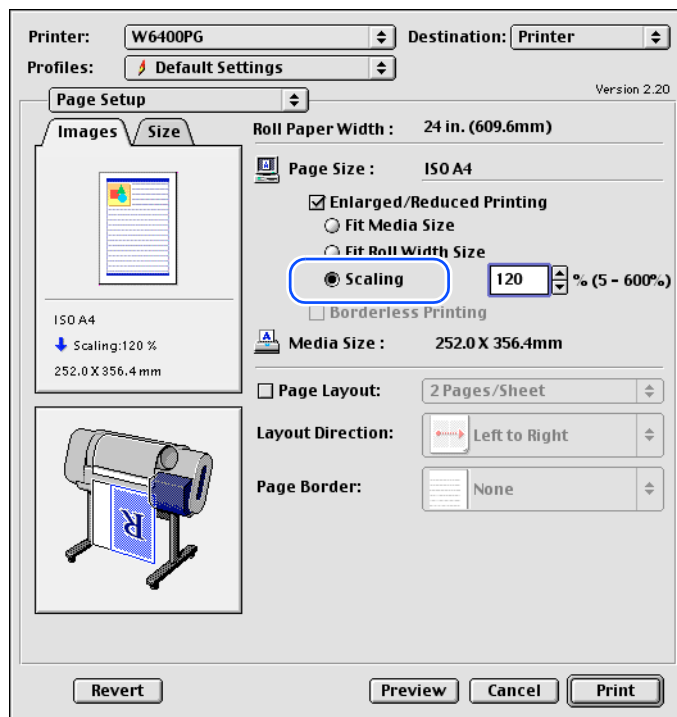
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

8 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Scaling** then specify the desired setting.



Important

- This function cannot be used when **Borderless Printing** is selected.
- You can enter a setting for the rate of magnification manually from the keyboard or use the arrow button on the right to scroll the number settings up or down. The rate can be changed in increments of 1%. The size can be scaled in the range limited by the size of the scaling entry column displayed on the right.
- You can perform a setting that is larger than the size of the media loaded in the printer, but some portions will be cut off and not printed.
- To center an image in the upper left for printing, on the **Finishing** panel select **Print Centered**.

9 Check the value displayed for **Media Size**.

10 Confirm the content of the preview, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)

Normally a printed document has white space around its edges (margins), but a borderless print for a photograph or created image has no white space at its borders; its entire surface is covered by printing.

■ Settings Required for Borderless Printing

Before performing the print job, make sure that a media that can be used for borderless printing is loaded. Only media fed from the roll can be used for borderless printing on this printer.

Here is a list of the types of roll media and their widths that can be used for borderless printing.

Paper Type	Corresponding Roll Width
Heavyweight Coated Paper, Premium Matte Paper, Extra	10-in. Roll (254.0mm)
Heavyweight Coated Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, SemiGlos	14-in. Roll (355.6mm)
Photo Paper, Heavyweight	16-in Roll (355.6 mm)
Glossy Photo Paper,	24-in. Roll (609.6mm)
Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo, Flame Resistant-Cloth, Fine Art	JIS B2/B3 Roll (515.0 mm)
Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight	ISO A1/A2 Roll (594.0 mm)
Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas SemiGlos, Special 1-5	

Important

- Paper of types and roll widths other than those listed above cannot be used for borderless printing.
- The following types of media cannot be cut and are printed left to right during borderless printing.
Fine Art Photo, Fine Art Heavyweight Photo, Fine Art Textured, Canvas Matte

When you perform borderless printing, be sure to select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** on the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9). This allows **Borderless Printing** to be performed.

Important

- **Borderless Printing** cannot be performed under the following conditions.

When Cut Sheet is selected under Media Source on the Finishing panel.
When Roll Paper (Banner Printing) is selected under Media Source on the Finishing panel.
When Scaling is selected for Enlarged/Reduced Printing .
When Rotate Page 90 degrees (Conserve Paper) is selected on the Finishing panel.
When several pages are selected for Pages per Sheet (Page Layout for OS 8/9) on the Layout panel (Page Setup for OS 8/9).
When Print Centered is selected on the Finishing panel
When the setting selected for Roll Paper Width does not support borderless printing

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Borderless Printing

This section describes the borderless printing procedure.

<To perform borderless printing on media the same size as the original>

1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.

Important

- The following page size settings can be used for borderless printing. Refer to the table below when you create the original image and set the page for a size that can be used for borderless printing.
- If the media size was pre-selected in the software application, the selected size must support **Borderless Printing**.

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Borderless printing on media the same size as the original document 	ISO A1, ISO A2, JIS B2, JIS B3, ANSI Legal, ARCH D, ARCH C, 20"x24", 14"x17", 10"x12", 10"x15", 8"x10", US Photo (16"x20")
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ■ Borderless printing with enlargement and reduction 	All page sizes

Note

- Make sure the image created for borderless printing covers the entire original page.

2 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

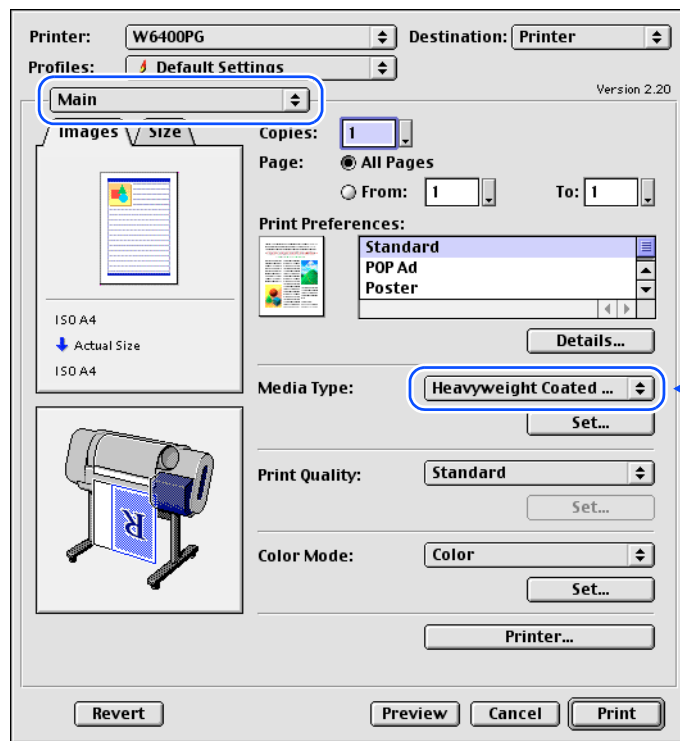
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

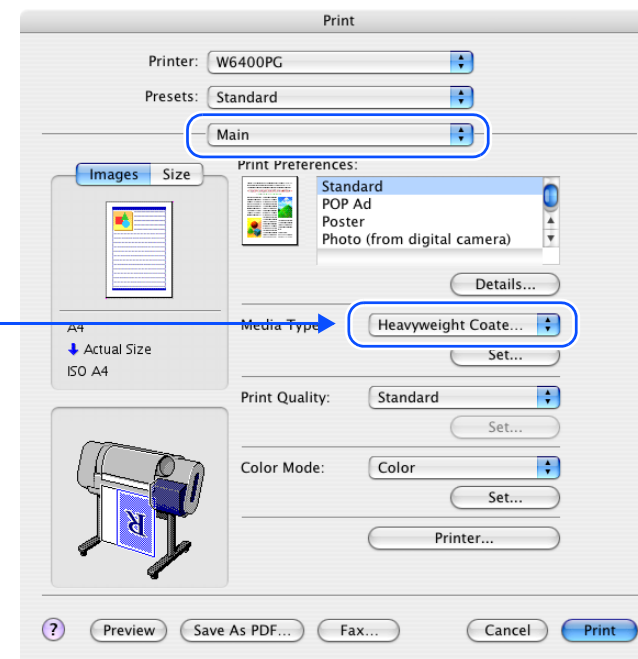
Contents

Index

3 Open the **Main** panel and perform the settings for borderless printing.



Select the media compatible with borderless printing.



4 Open the **Finishing** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9) and then select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Borderless Printing**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

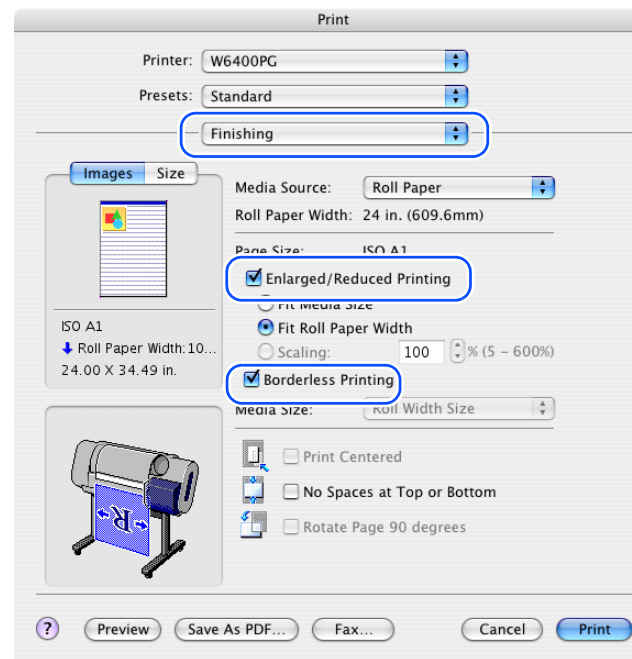
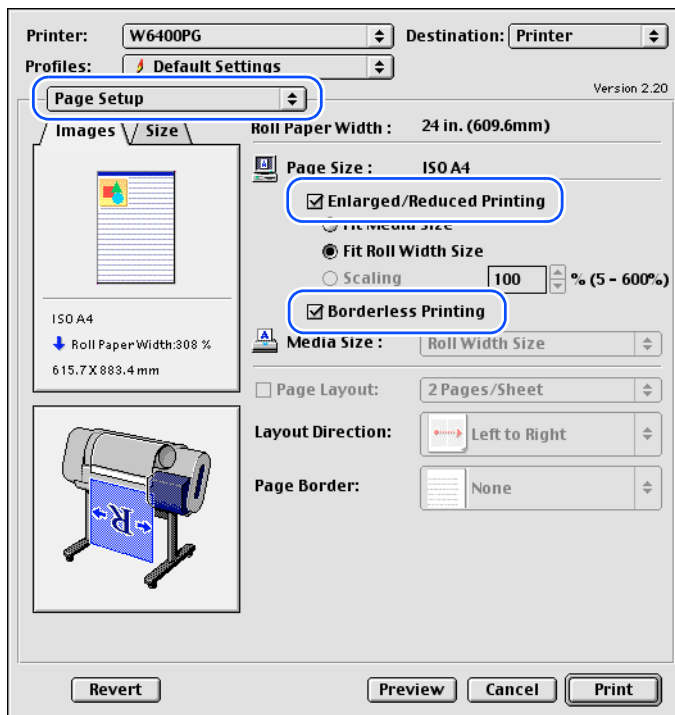
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Note

- When **Borderless Printing** is selected under the **Media Size** in the software application, [Step 4](#) to [Step 6](#) are not required.
- If you select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** with **Borderless Printing**, **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected for **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

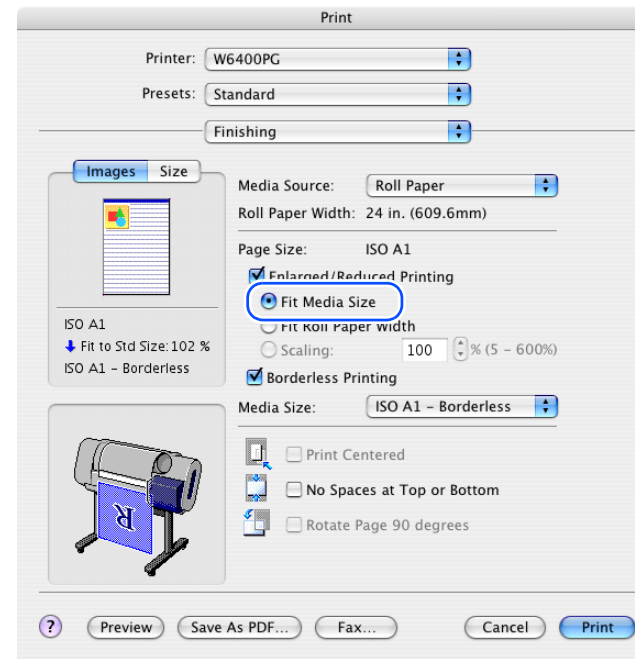
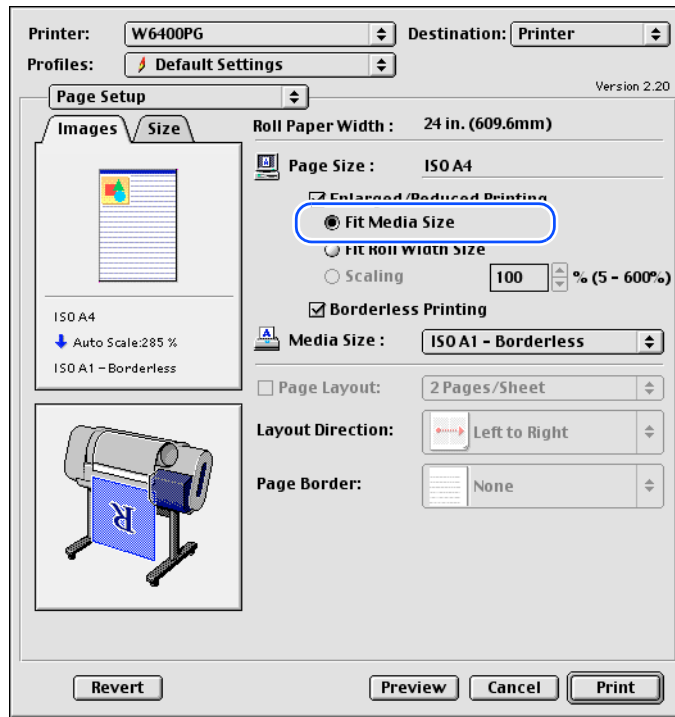
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Confirm that **Fit Media Size** is selected under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.



6 Select the **Media Size** setting that you want.

7 Confirm the content of the preview, then click the **Print** button.
The print job starts.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

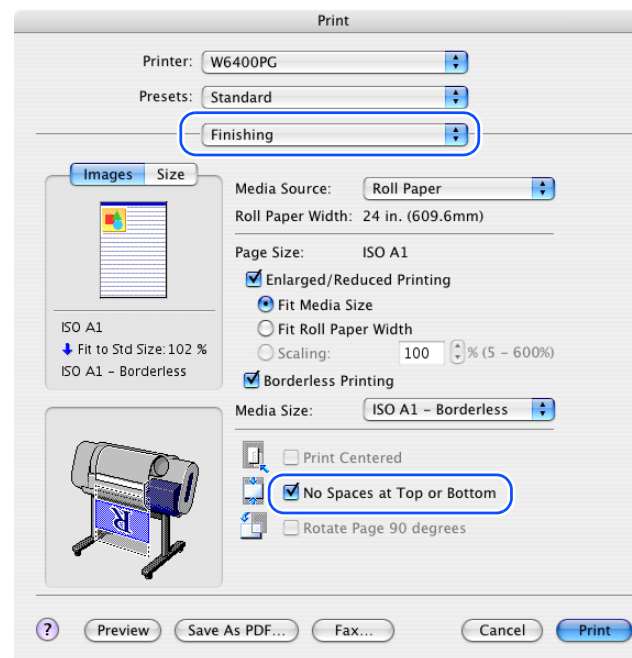
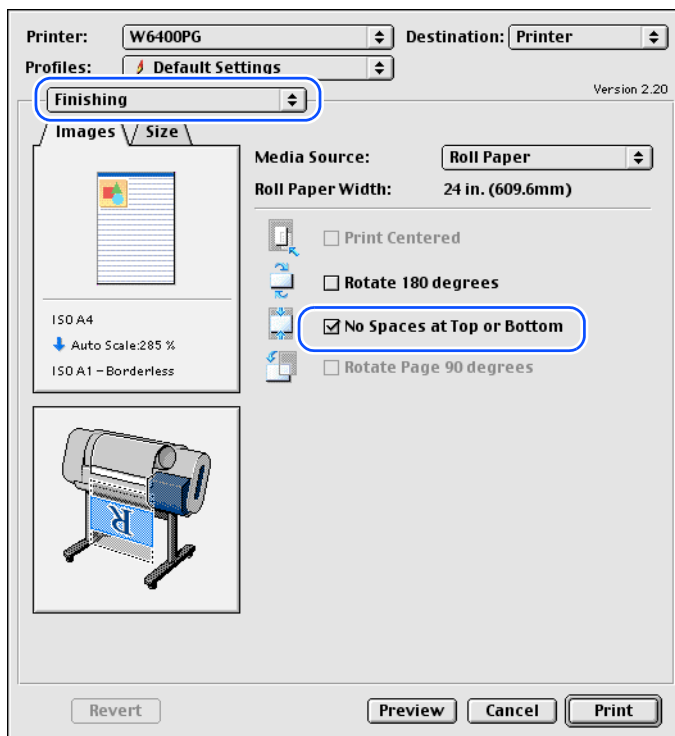
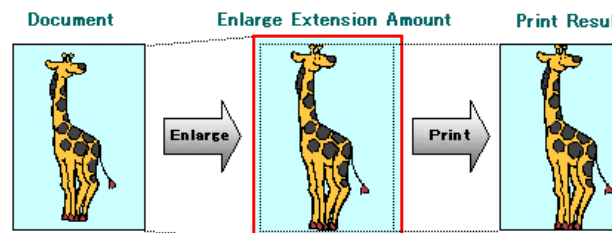
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Note

- For more about how to enlarge or reduce while performing borderless printing, please refer to “Enlarge/Reduce to fit Roll Paper Width” under “<To perform borderless document printing with a size not allowed for borderless printing>”. (→ P.3-83).
- If **Scale to fit the Page Size** is selected for borderless printing, the printer driver automatically enlarges the original by 3 mm at the top, bottom, left, and right margin. The result is the printer fills the margins on the entire page with borderless printing. The top, bottom, left and right margins of the original are set to 3 mm so no part of the image will extend beyond a margin.
- To perform a borderless print of an image with a top and bottom margin, on the **Finishing** panel you can select **No Spaces at Top or Bottom** (this is an easy way to perform a borderless print by setting these margins to zero). For more details, please refer to “Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)”. (→ P.3-100)



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

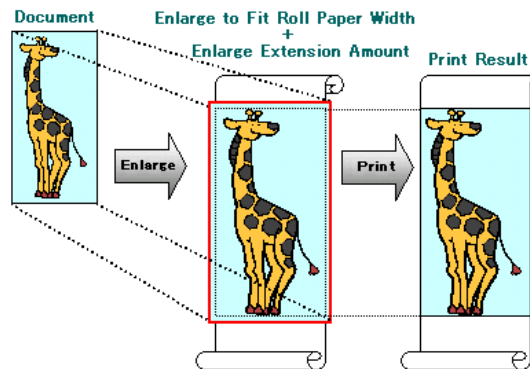
Contents

Index

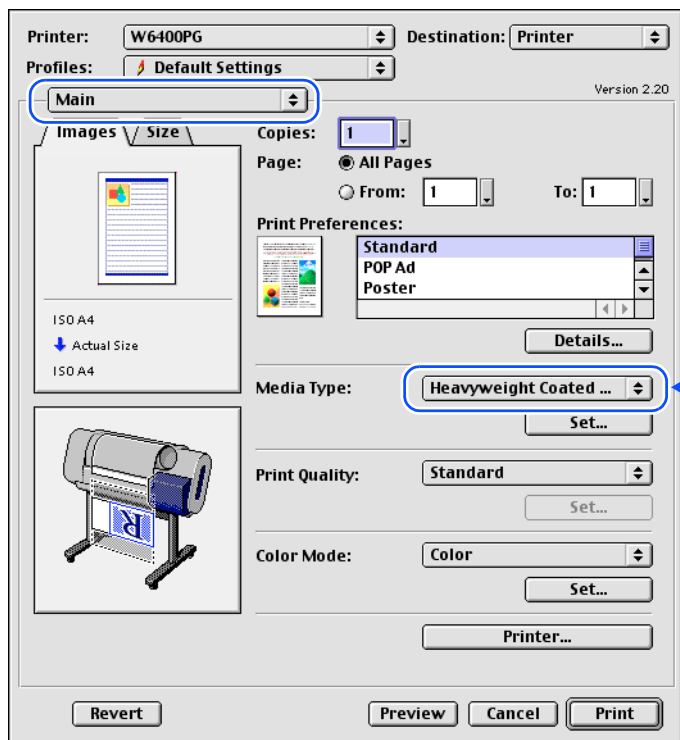
<To perform borderless document printing with a size not allowed for borderless printing>

● Enlarge/Reduce to fit Roll Paper Width

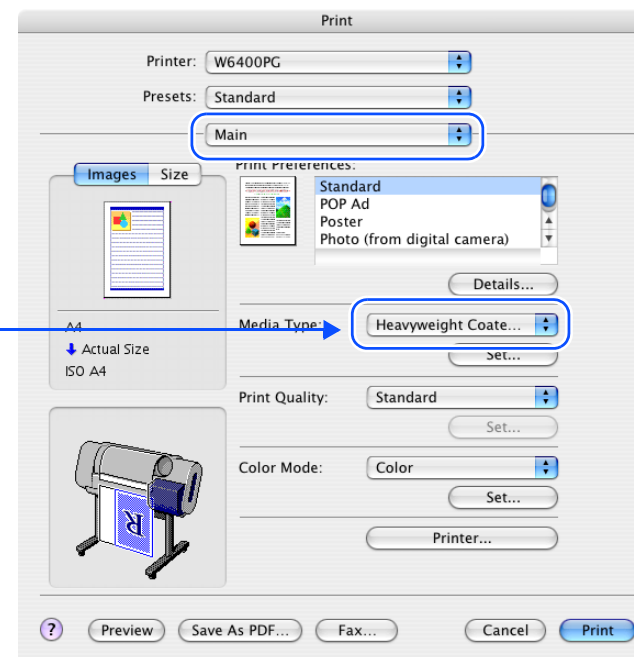
Enlarges or reduces the width of the original for printing so it will fit the width of the roll. You can print a page size not compatible with borderless printing (A4, A3, Custom Size, etc.) on roll media of a width that is compatible with enlargement/reduction printing.



- 1 Create the original in the software application so it matches the size of the media used for printing.
- 2 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 3 Open the **Main** panel and perform the settings for borderless printing.



Select the media compatible with borderless printing.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

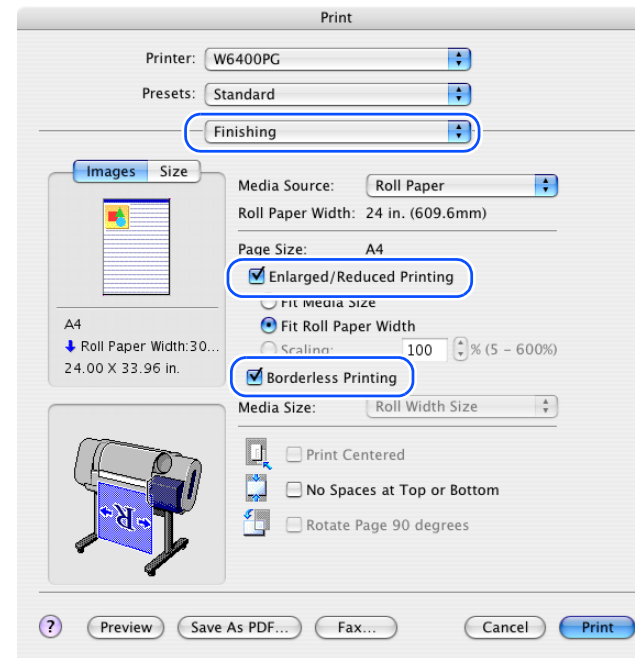
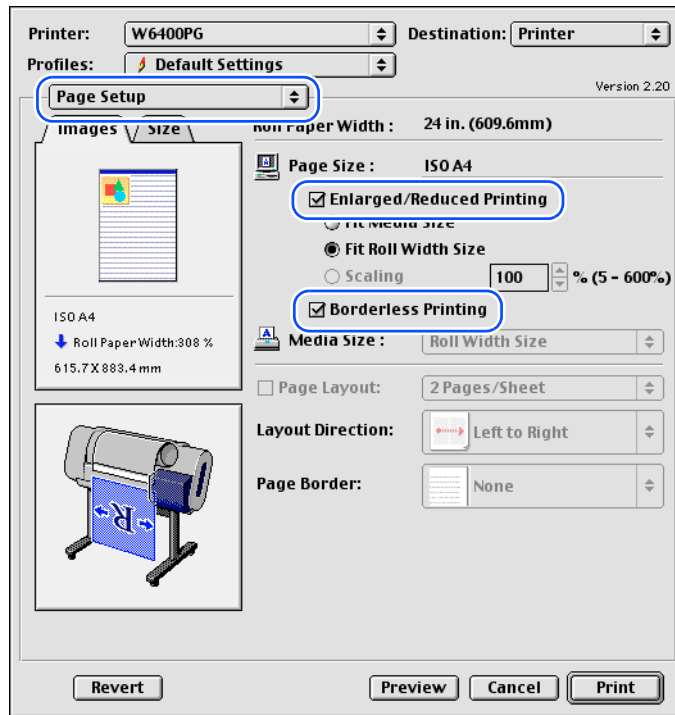
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

4 Open the **Finishing (Page Setup for OS 8/9)** and then select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Borderless Printing**.



Note

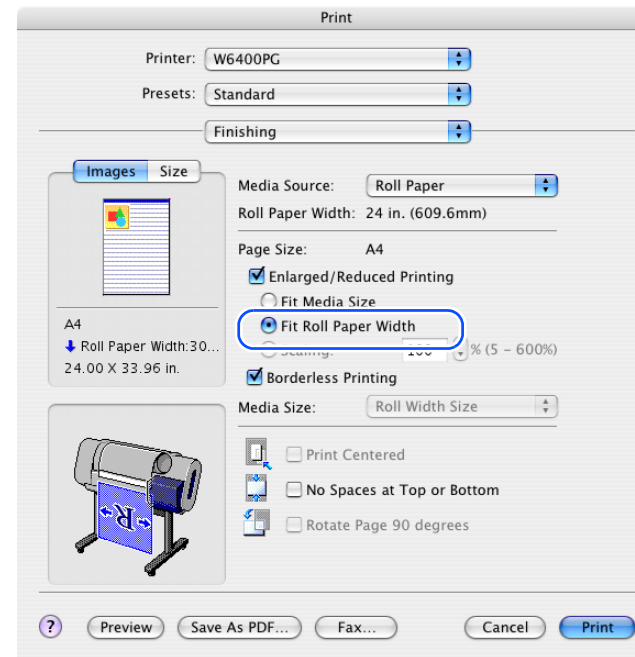
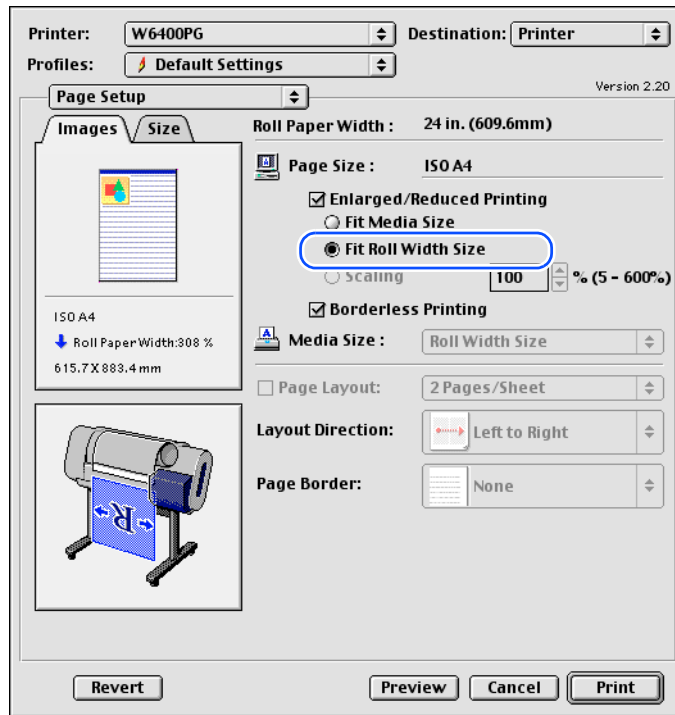
- If you select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** with **Borderless Printing**, **Fit Roll Paper Width** is selected for **Enlarged/Reduced Printing**.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Under **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** select **Fit Roll Paper Width** (**Fit Roll Width Size** for OS 8/9).



6 **Roll Width Size** is displayed in **Media Size**, so check the value for **Roll Paper Width**.

7 Confirm the content of the **Preview**, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.



Note

- After the **Fit Roll Paper Width** (**Fit Roll Width Size** for OS 8/9) feature automatically sizes to original to fit the width of the roll, the printer driver automatically enlarges the image so that each margin, that is, the top, bottom, left, and right margin, is 3 mm each. The result is the printer fills the entire page up to the edges with borderless printing. Portions of the image that protrude over the 3 mm top, bottom, right, and left margins of the original document cannot be printed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

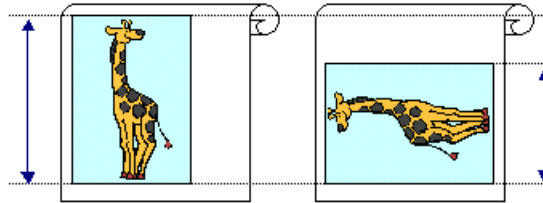
Contents

Index

Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)

In cases where the length of the print job data is shorter than the width of the media, the printer driver will rotate the image 90 degrees and the length of the image across the width of the media. By rotating the image you can maximize the use of the media and reduce waste.

If you do this setting in the printer to rotate the page image, then the page is rotated automatically for the print job. The image will not be rotated if it would not fit after rotation.



Important

- Confirm that the **Roll Paper Width** setting is correct for the media loaded in the printer.
- If the selection for the media source is not **Roll Paper**, or if borderless printing is selected, this function cannot be used.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

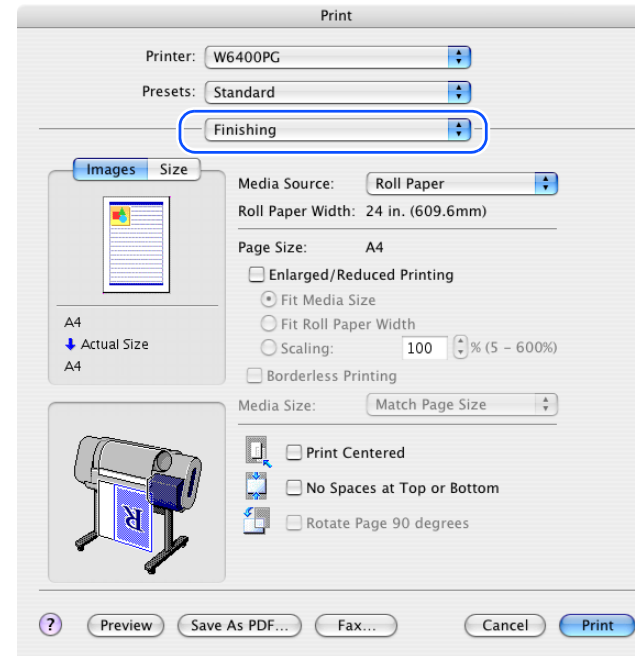
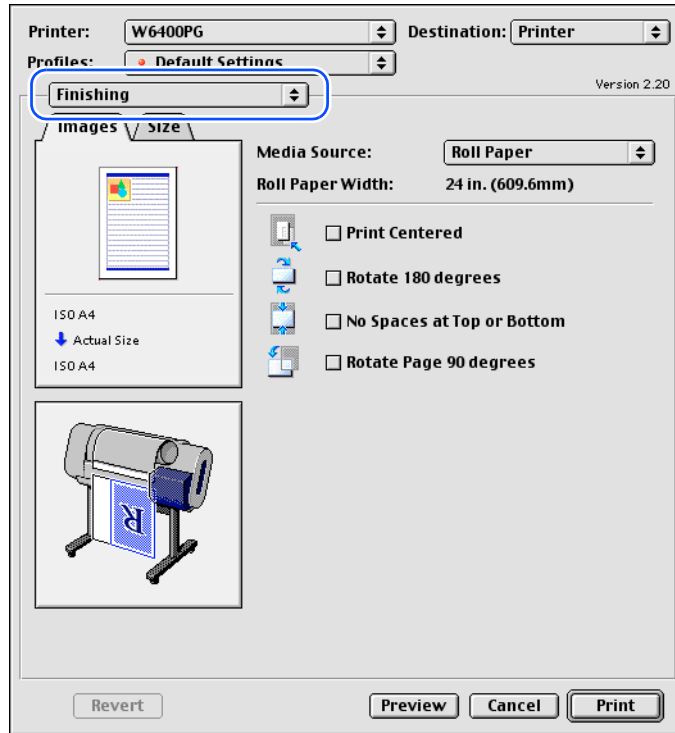
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

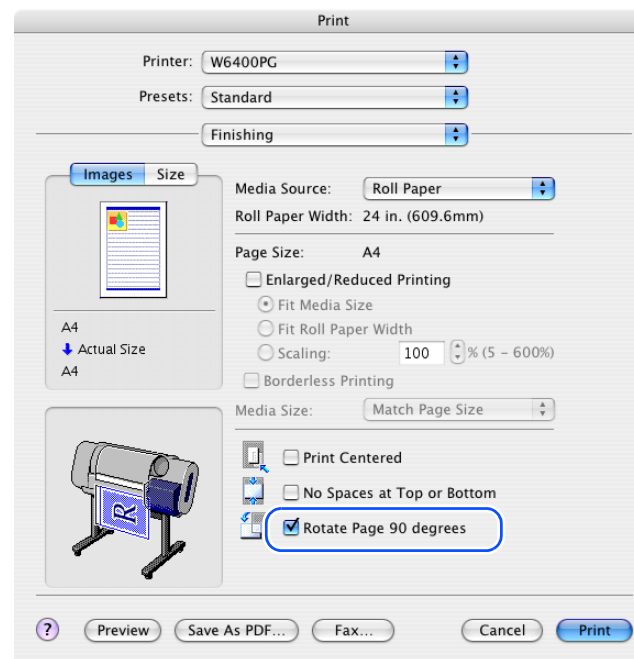
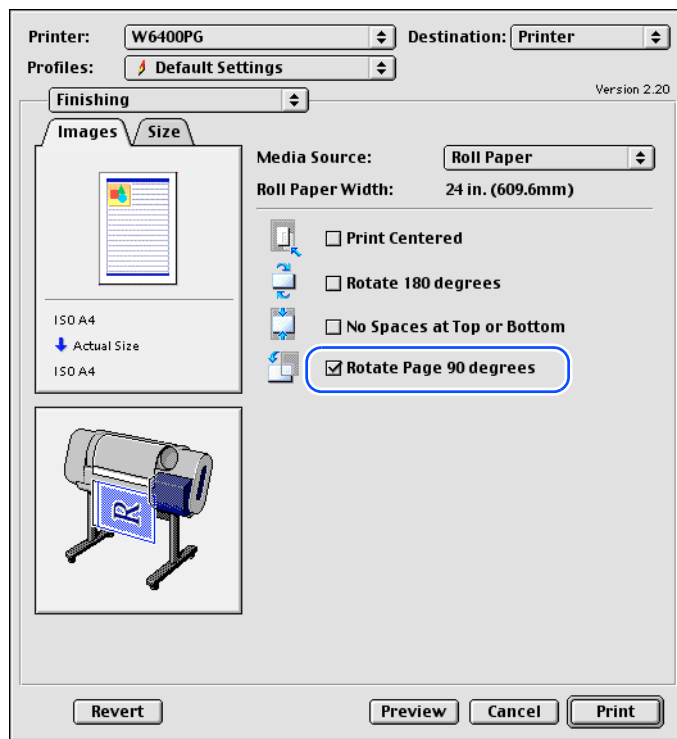
- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Finishing** panel.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

3 Select Rotate Page 90 degrees.



4 Confirm the content of the preview, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the Preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-64)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

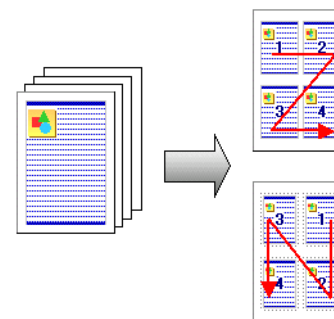
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

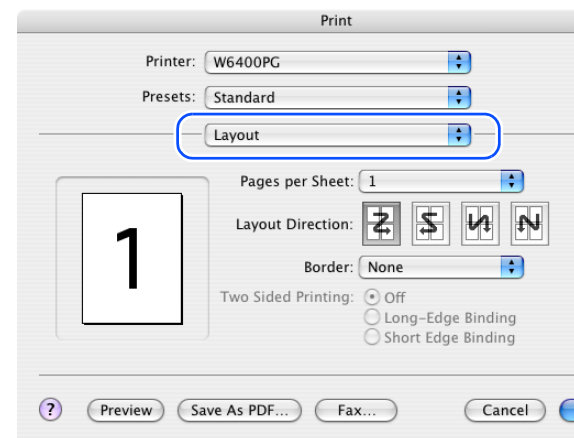
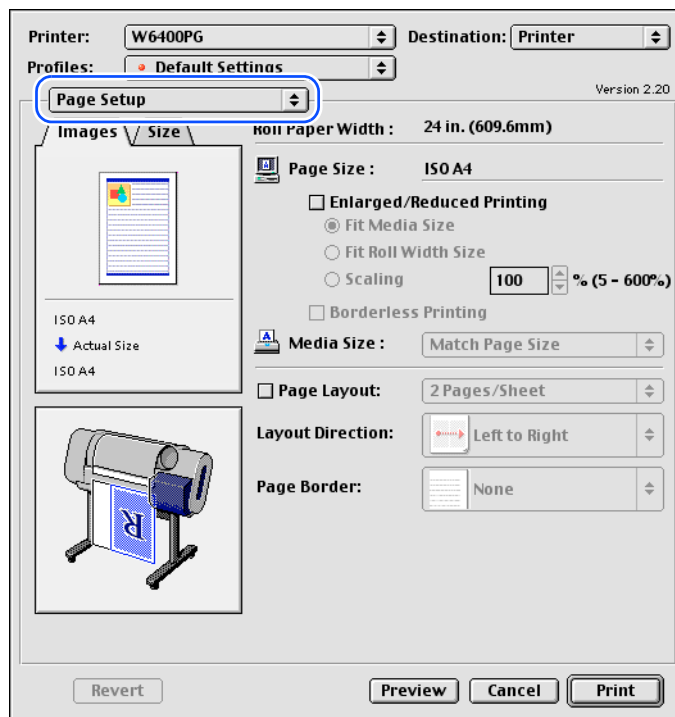
Index

Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)

You can print from 2 to 16 pages with reduced sizes on one sheet. For example, if you have a document with a large number of pages you can print two pages per sheet and the number of pages will be one-half. Also, you can perform more detailed settings, such as selecting the arrangement of the pages on the sheet and specifying whether to print each page with a border line.



- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Layout** panel (**Page Setup** for OS 8/9).



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

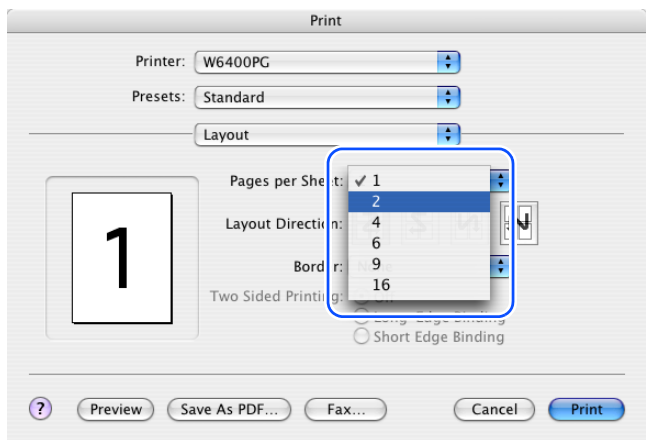
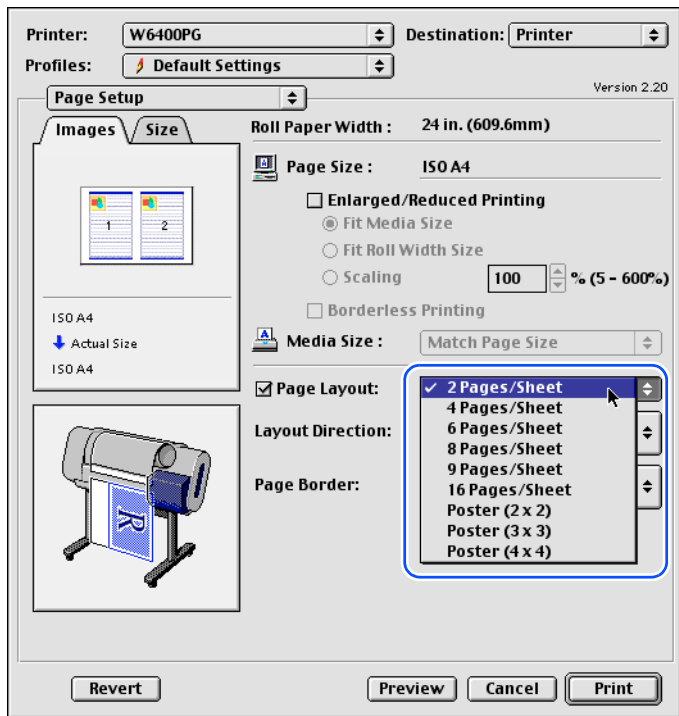
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

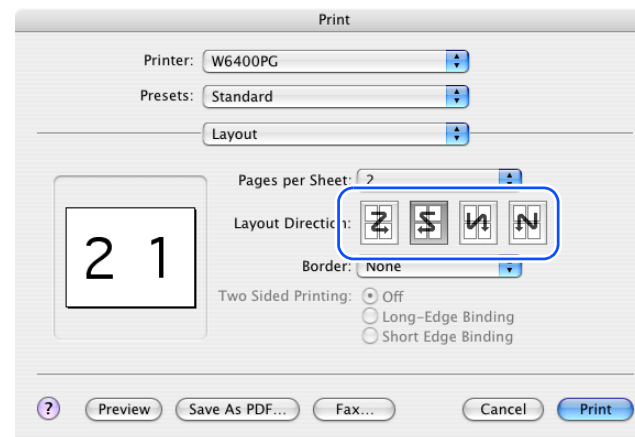
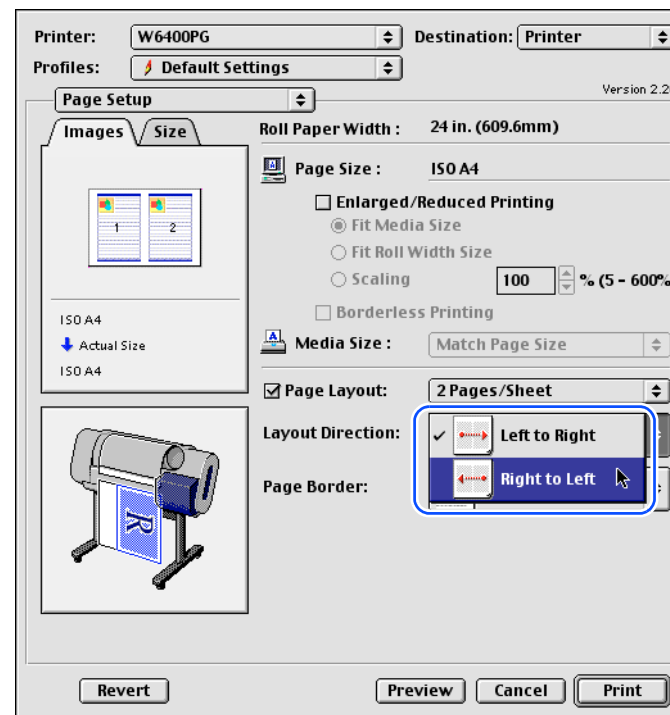
Contents

Index

3 From the **Pages per Sheet** (**Page Layout** for OS 8/9) list, select the **Page Layout** that you want to use for printing.



4 Set the **Layout Direction** to arrange the pages on the media.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

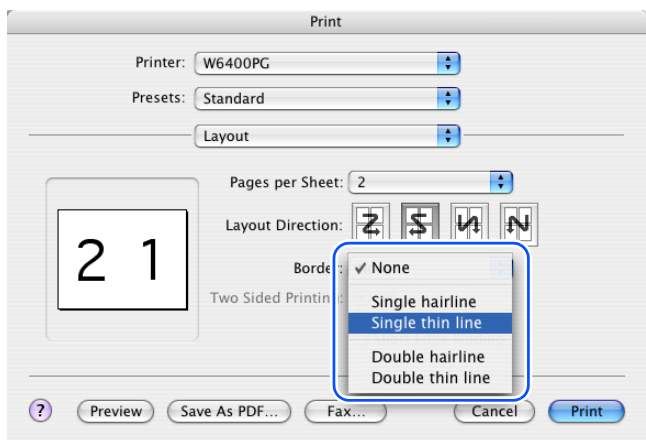
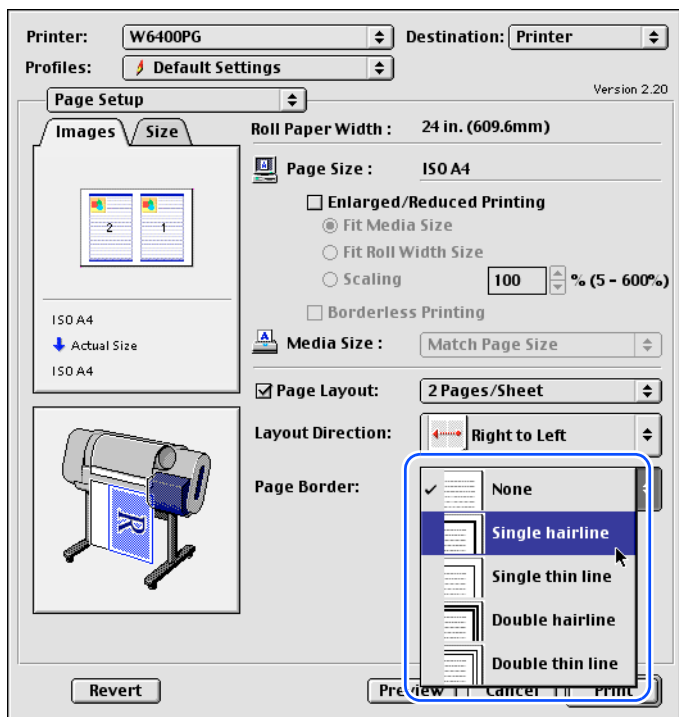
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Select a borderline from the **Page Border** list.



6 Confirm the content of the preview, then click the **Print** button.
The print job starts.

Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the Preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-64)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

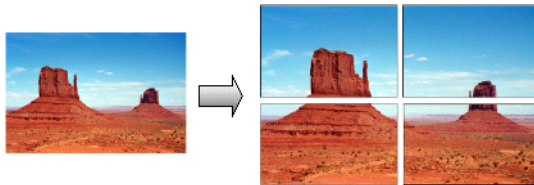
Printing Posters (Page Layout)

After the image is enlarged and divided into several sections, you can print the sections and paste them together to assemble one large poster.

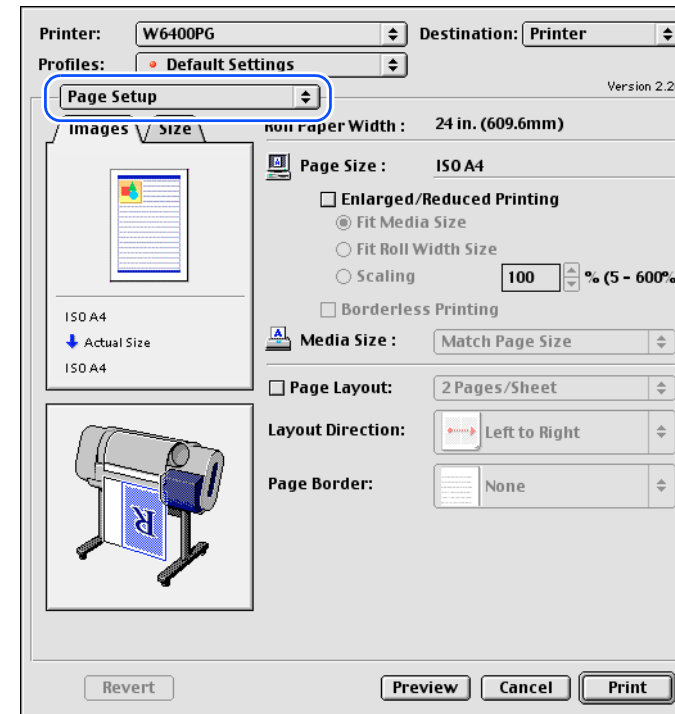


Note

- This function is not provided for OS X.



- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Page Setup** panel.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

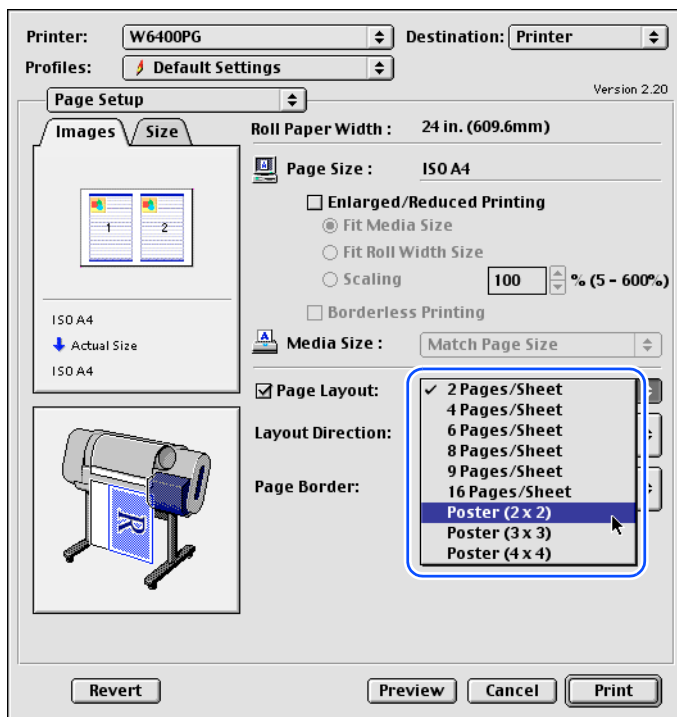
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

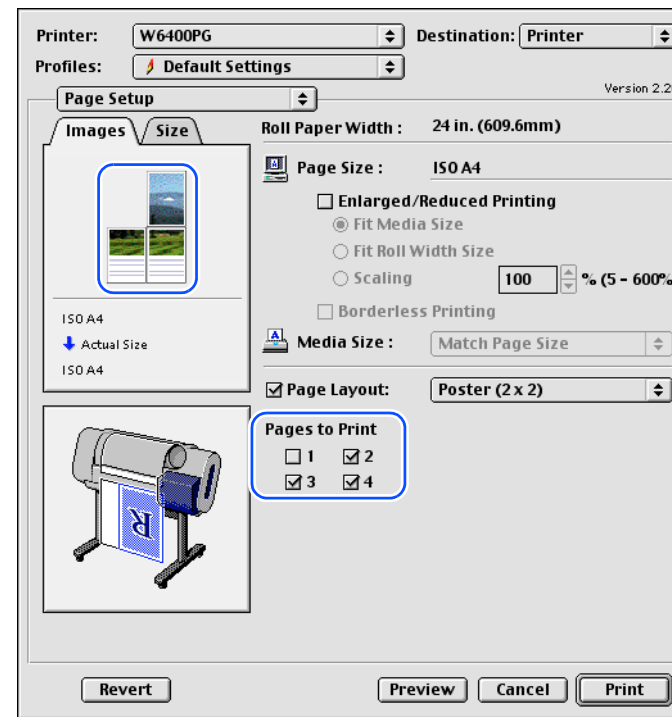
Index

3 Click the **Page Layout** checkbox on and select **Poster (2x2)** from the list.

In the **Preview** confirm the appearance of the image of the selected page layout.



4 If you do not need to print one of the panels of the divided image, click the **Pages to Print** checkbox to remove the checkmark for the panel that you do not want to print.



Note

- The pages selected for printing are displayed in the print image **Preview** and the pages that have not selected for printing are not displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 5** Confirm the content of the **Preview**, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.

Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the Preview, please refer to “[Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)](#)” in “[Before You Begin](#)”. (→ P.3-64)

Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)

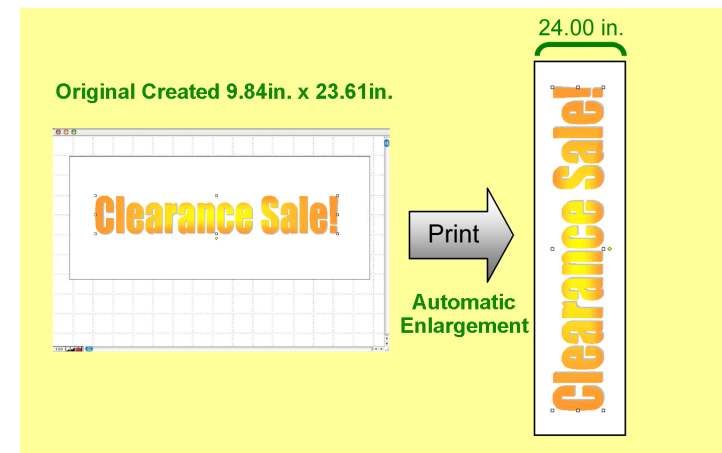
■ Matching the Width of the Roll

Once you become familiar with fitting images to the full width of the roll with your software application, it is very easy to print vertical and horizontal banners.

Here we will describe as an example how to take a 250 mm x 600 mm original and enlarge to fit a 24” roll (approximately 610 mm wide), and then print it as a banner (600 mm x 1,440 mm).

Note

- With this printer you can print a banner up to 18,000 mm maximum length (2,774 mm with OS 8/9).



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

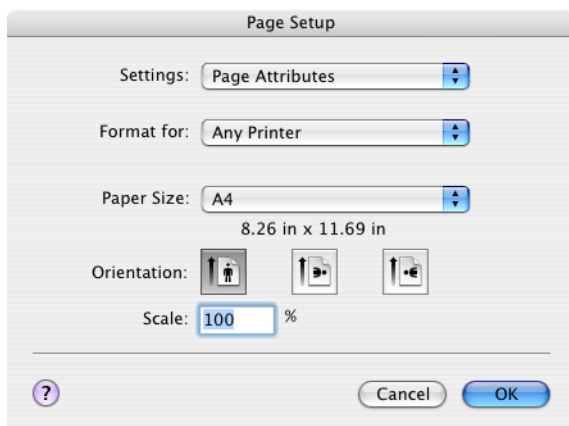
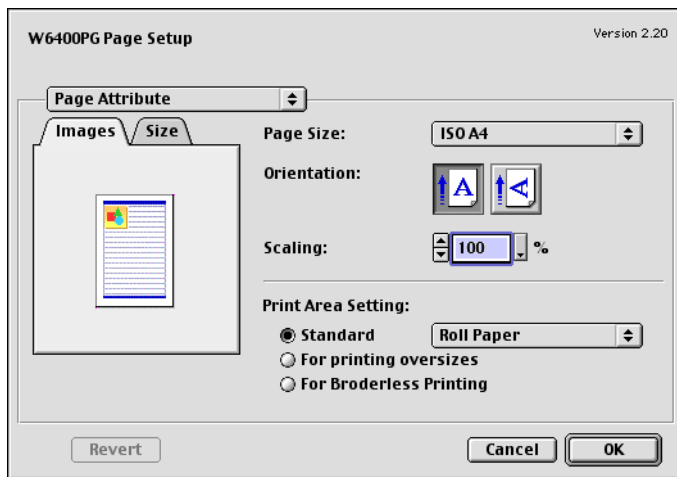
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

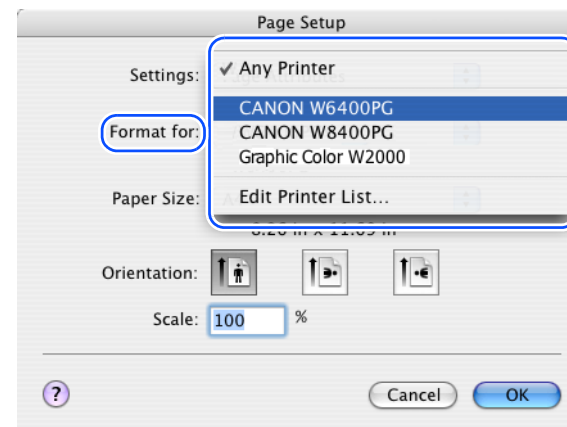
Contents

Index

- 1 Start the software application.
- 2 From the **File** menu select **Page Setup** to open the **Page Setup** dialog box.



- 3 Set the **Format for** (OS 8/9 does not have this setting).



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

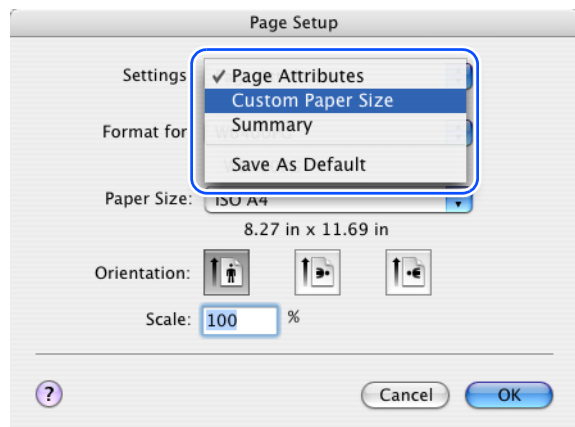
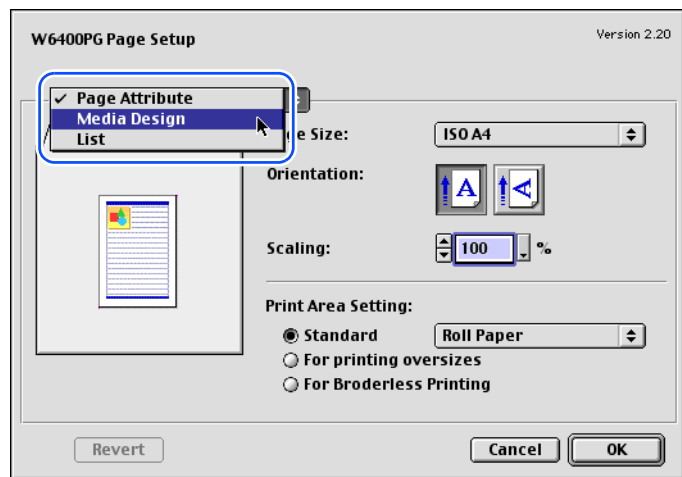
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

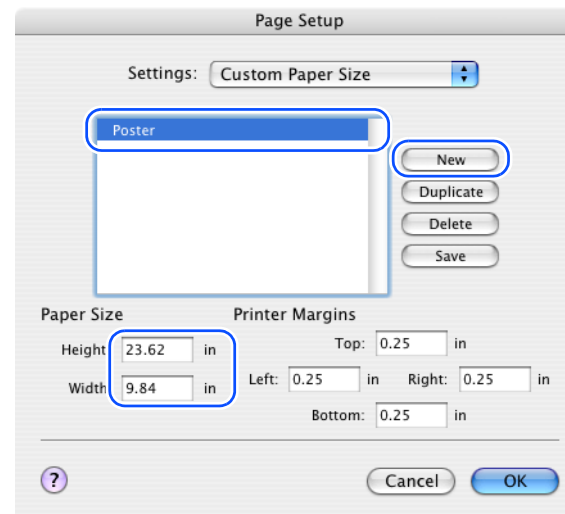
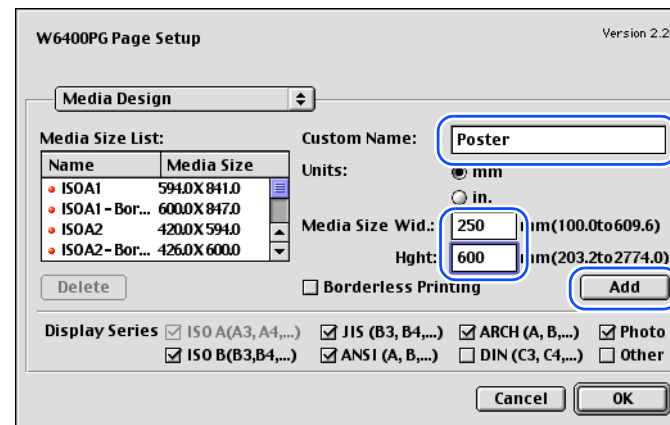
4 Select **Custom Paper Size (Media Design for OS 8/9)**.



5 Click the **New** button then define the media name and size (for OS 8/9, define the media name and size then click **Add** button).



● Enter **Poster** here for the name of the media.



6 Click the **Save** button (this step is not required with OS 8/9).

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 Select the **Page Attribute** panel.

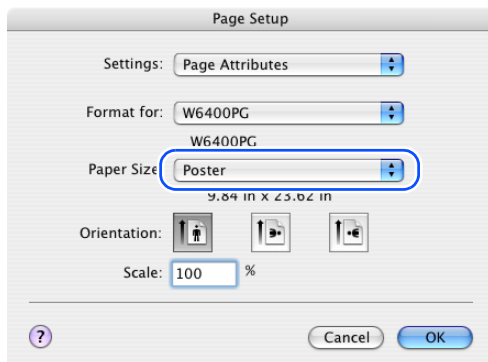
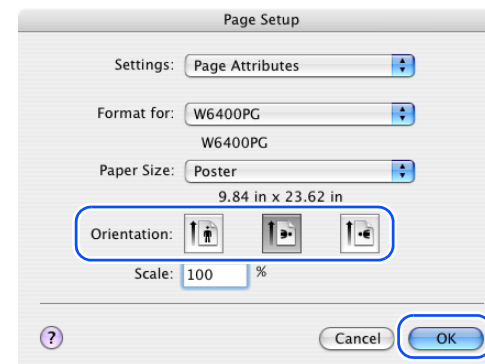
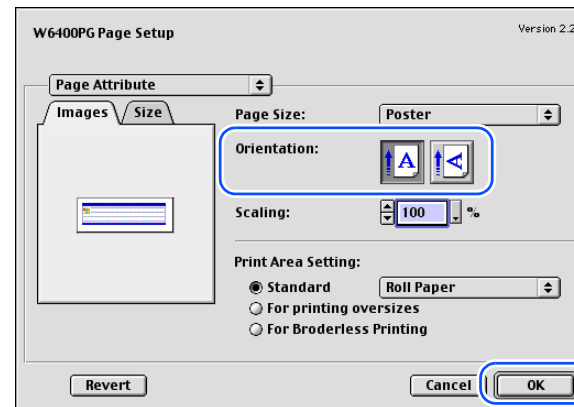
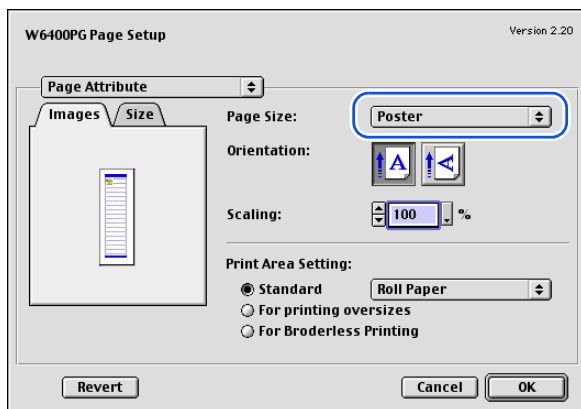
Note

- Once you have registered the size in the **Custom Paper Size** panel (**Media Design** for OS 8/9), the size settings are stored under the specified name and the name is displayed in the list. For more details about the **Custom Paper Size** panel (**Media Design** panel for OS 8/9), see “[Custom Sizes \(User Print Settings\)](#)”. (→ [P.3-121](#))

8 Select the media defined with custom settings.

- For **Page Size** on the **Custom Paper Size (Media Design** for OS 8/9) panel, select the name of the user defined custom settings.

- For the banner select **Orientation**, select the **Landscape** icon, click the **OK** button to close the **Page Setup** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

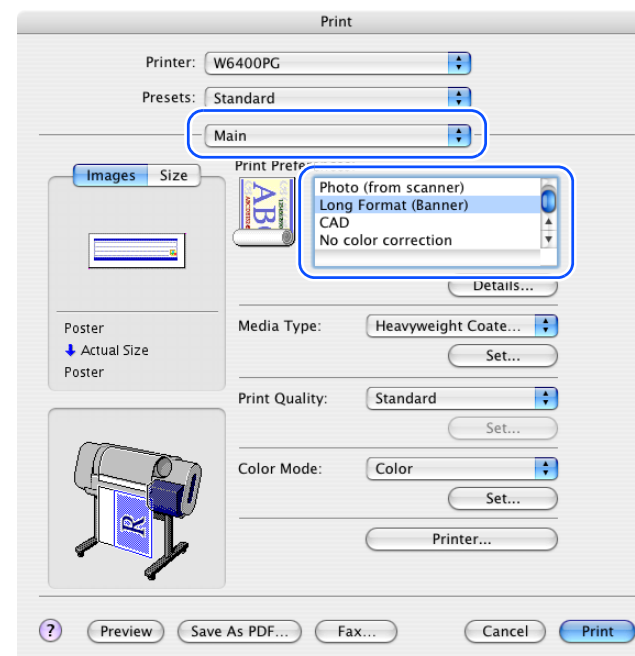
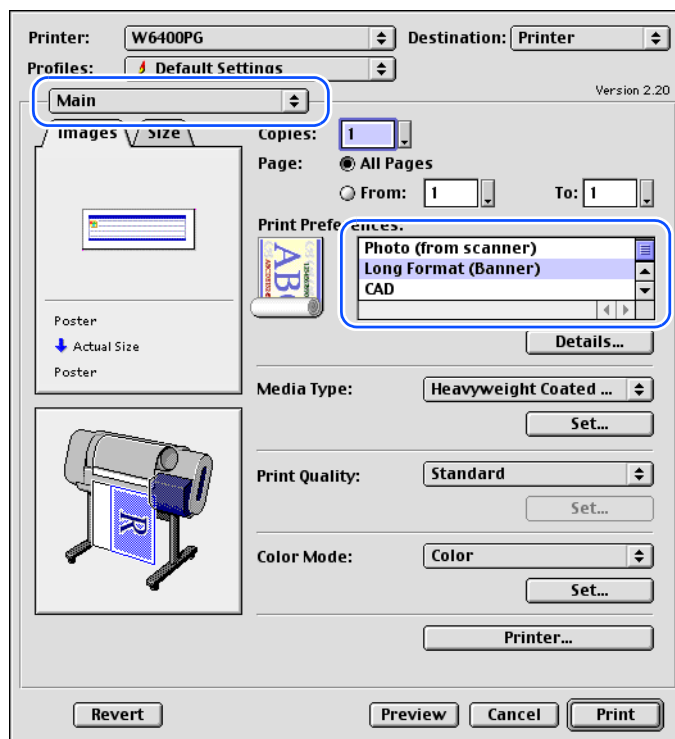
Index

9 Create the original in the software application.



10 After the original is created, from the **File** menu select **Print** to open the **Print** dialog box.

11 When the **Main** panel displays, select **Long Format (Banner)** for the **Print Preferences** for the long print.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

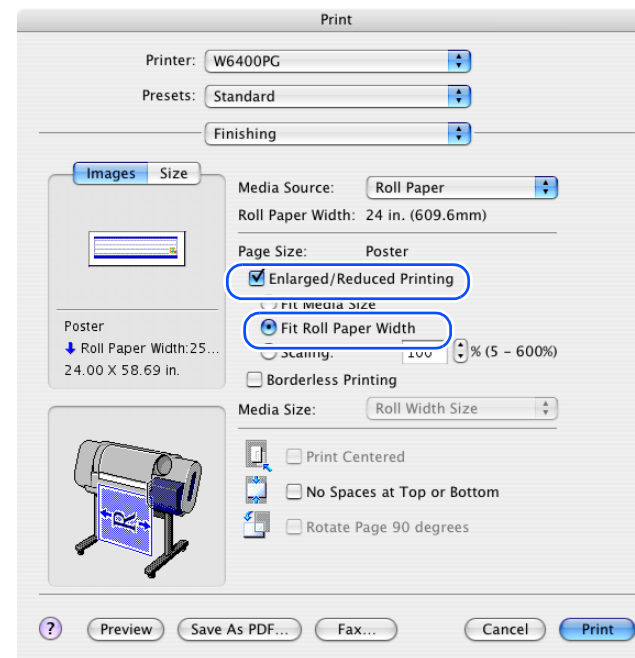
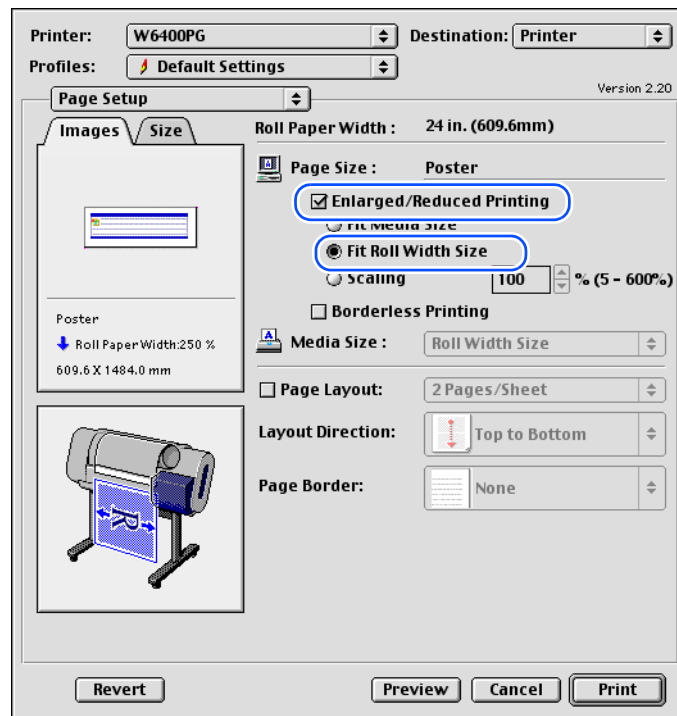
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 12** Display the **Finishing (Page Setup for OS 8/9)** panel and select **Enlarged/Reduced Printing** and **Fit Roll Paper Width (Fit Roll Width Size for OS 8/9)** for the long print.



- 13** Confirm the content of the preview, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the Preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-64)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

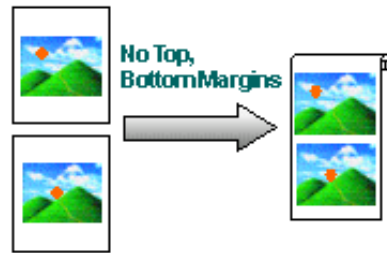
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

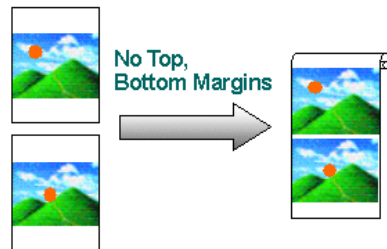
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)

The white space in the top and bottom margins can be eliminated for printing to save paper. The printer does not feed the white space in the margins to save paper. This function can be used only when **Roll Paper** is selected as the media source.



Note

- You use this method during borderless printing as shown in the illustration below.



Important

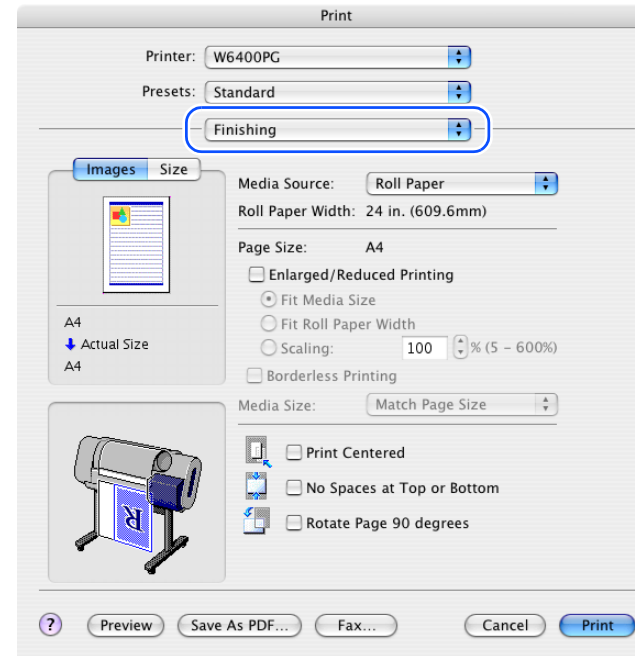
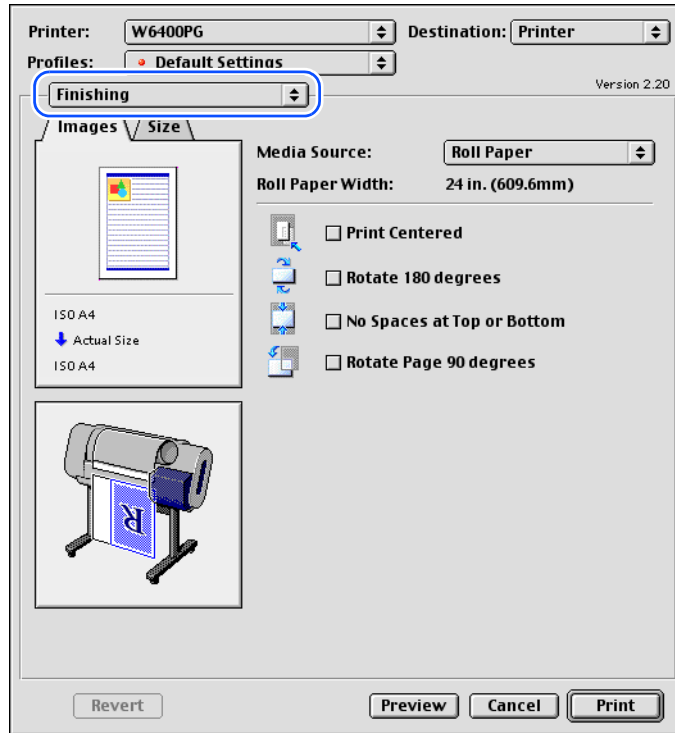
- This function cannot be used when **Banner** is selected as the media source.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

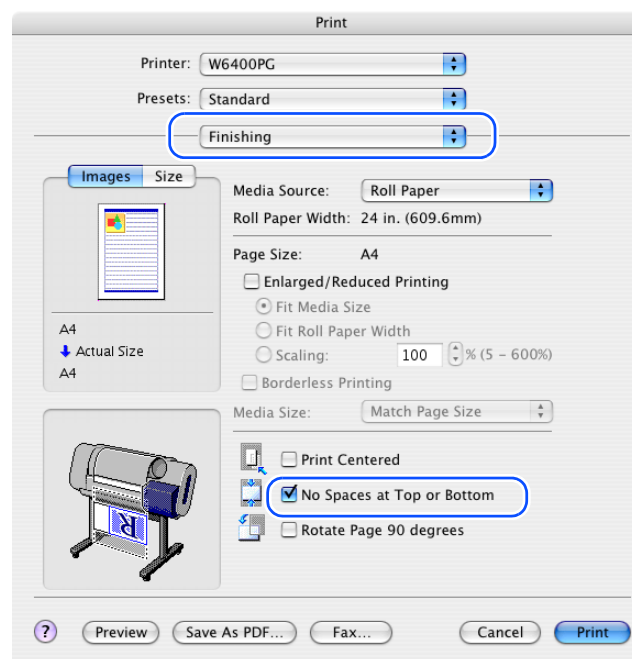
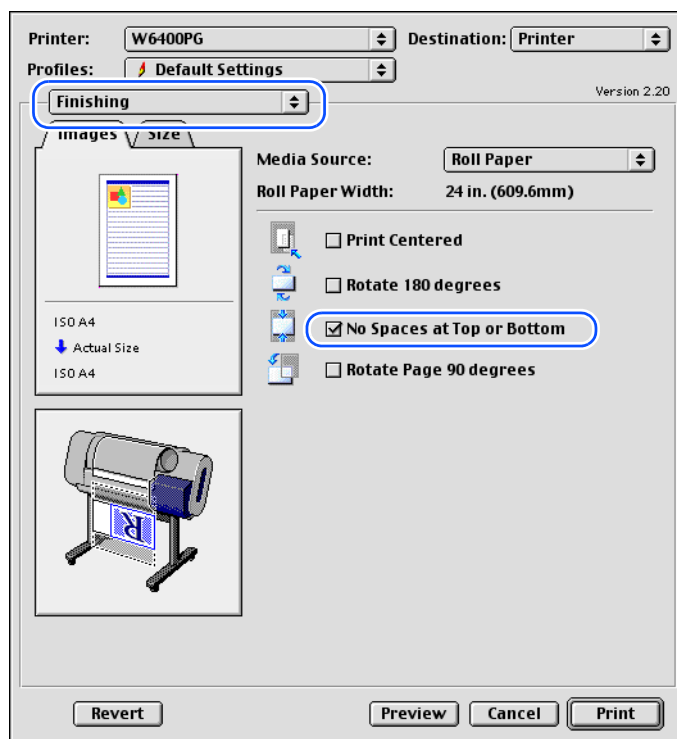
- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Select the **Finishing** panel.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

3 Select No Spaces at Top or Bottom.



4 Confirm the content of the preview, then click the **Print** button.

The print job starts.



Note

- To achieve the best print results, you should confirm the appearance of the original in the Print Preview before printing. For more details about how to display the Preview, please refer to [“Confirming the Print Image \(Print Preview\)”](#) in [“Before You Begin”](#). (→ P.3-64)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

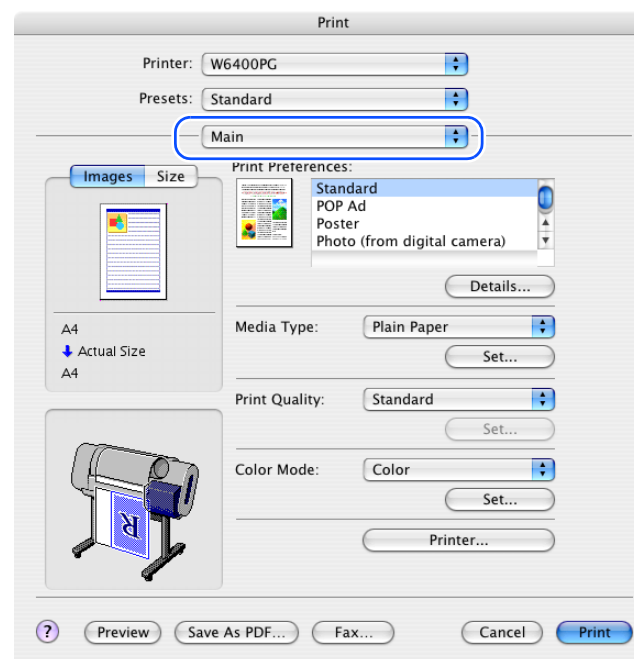
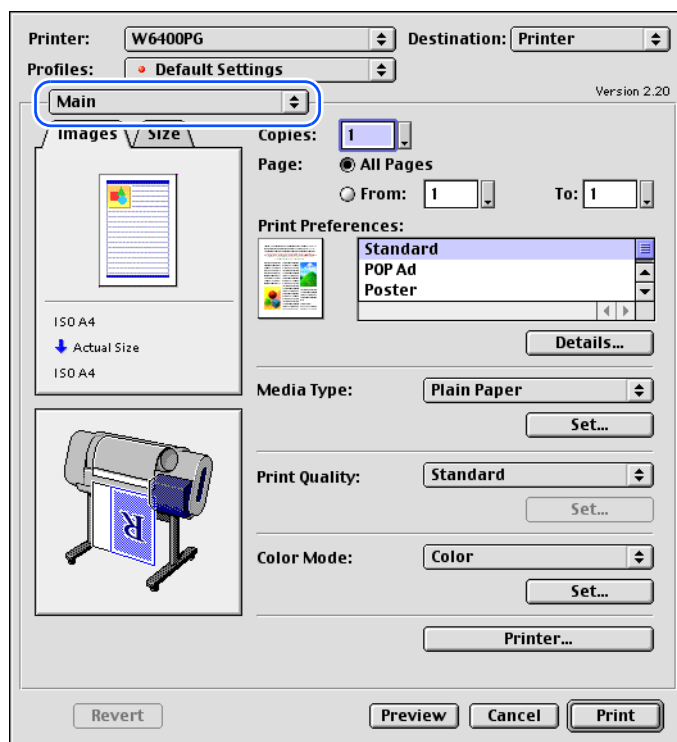
Index

Custom Print Quality

■ Customizing Print Quality

When you need to frequently perform combined settings for print quality and print speed, you can select **Custom Settings** under **Print Quality** and then perform the print quality and resolution settings in the **Custom Settings** dialog box according to the requirements of your requirements.

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Confirm that the **Main** panel is displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

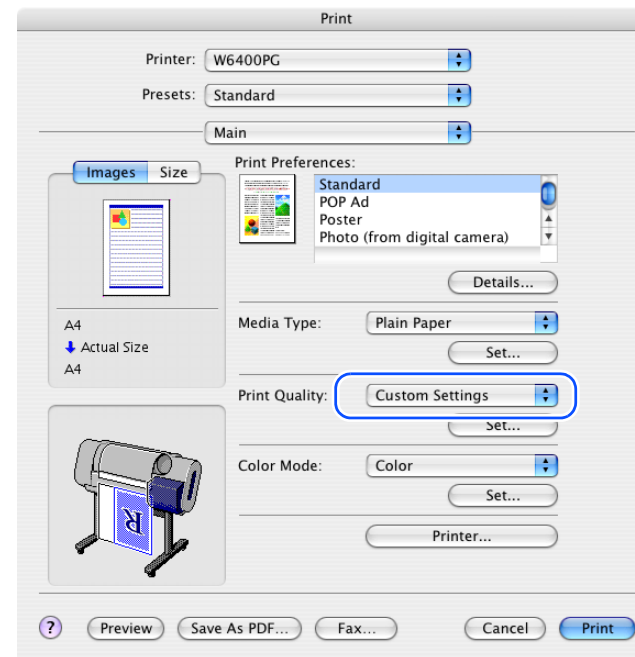
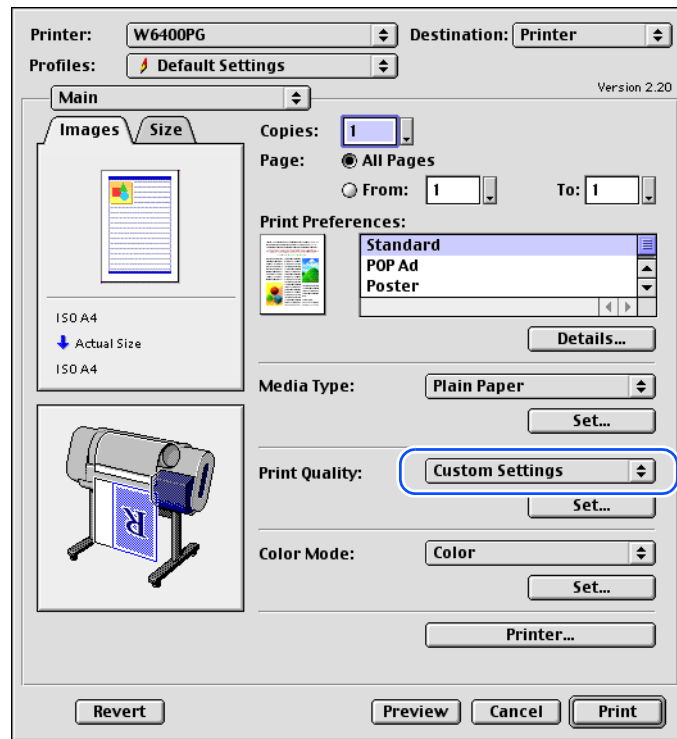
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

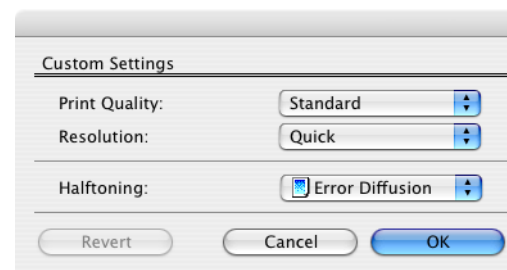
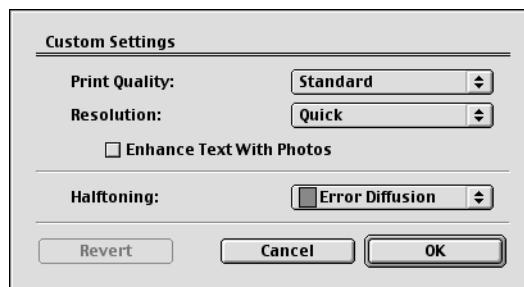
Index

3 From the **Print Quality** list, select **Custom Settings**.

A **Set** button appears in the lower right corner of the **Print Quality** group.



4 Click the **Set** button in the **Print Quality** group to open the **Custom Settings** dialog box.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

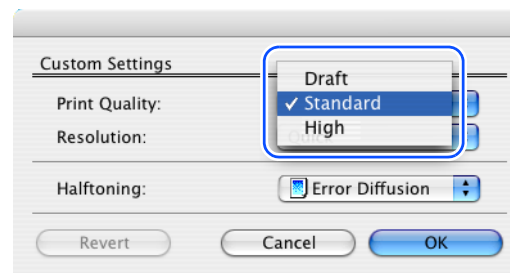
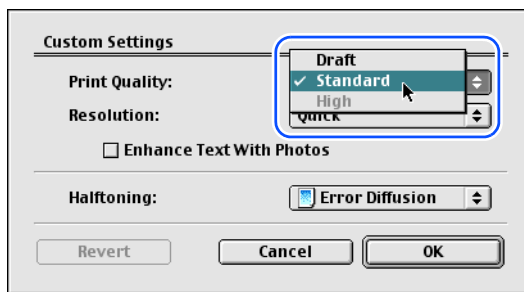
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 From the **Print Quality** list, select the quality settings.



Note

- The print quality settings that you can select for the custom settings are described below.

Print Quality	Content
Highest	Prioritizes attaining the highest image quality for printing.
High	Prioritizes attaining high image quality for printing.
Standard	Attains a stable image at an average printing speed.
Draft	Prioritizes high printing speed but you should check layout and other aspects of the image after printing.

Important

- The items of that are available for selection the print Quality may differ depending on which print media are used. Here is a list of the media where **Highest** under **Print Quality** is available.
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo, SemiGlos Photo Paper, Glossy Photo Paper
- If one of the types of media below is selected, **Draft** cannot be selected under **Print Quality**.
Premium Matte Paper, Glossy Photo Paper, SemiGlos Photo, Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper, Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo, Synthetic Paper, Adhesive Synthetic Paper, Backlit Film, Flame-Resistant Cloth, Japanese Paper Washi, CAD Translucent Matte Film

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

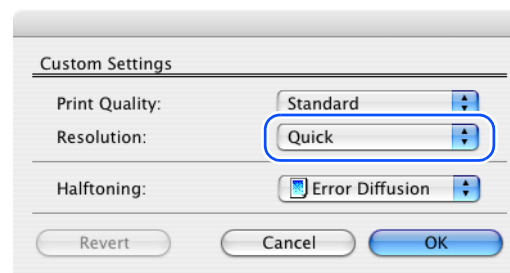
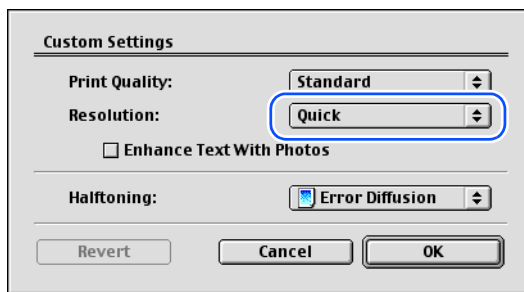
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

6 Confirm the resolution.



Important

- The resolution is set automatically depending on which print quality item is selected as shown below. If you need to change the resolution you can perform so with the setting under **Print Quality**.

Print Quality	Resolution	Content
Highest, High	Fine (600 dpi)	Print speed is slower due to the higher resolution setting. Achieves the best printing results, but printing time is longer and a large amount of computer memory is required.
Standard, Draft	Quick (300 dpi)	Print speed is faster due to the lower resolution setting. Printing time is shorter and not as much computer memory is required.

7 Click the **OK** button to close the **Custom Settings** dialog box.

Note

- In OS 8/9 if you select **Enhance Text With Photos** in the **Custom Settings** dialog box then when you have text mixed with photos or graphic data, the resolution of the text will be raised (this function is not available for OS X).
- Only the **Halftones** and **Error Diffusion** custom settings can be set. Error diffusion arranges non-standard pixels and displays them as gradations (halftones). This setting is ideal for photographs or graphic images that require printing with fine gradations.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Fine Adjusting Color for Printing

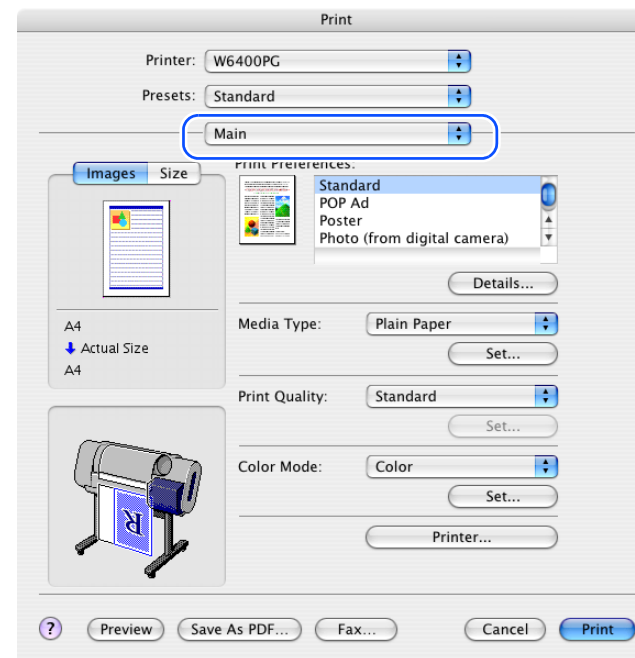
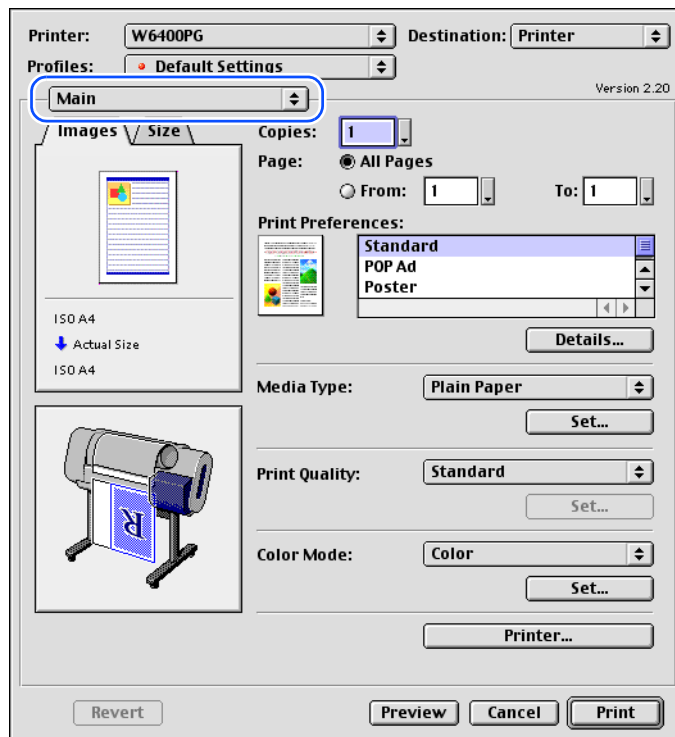
■ Adjusting Color

Basically the color settings of the software application have priority, but if the results of a print job are not what you want you can also adjust color in the printer driver.

You can also take color photos captured with a scanner or a digital camera, or any other color image, and print them in monochrome.

Now we will describe the color adjustments.

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Confirm that the **Main** panel is displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

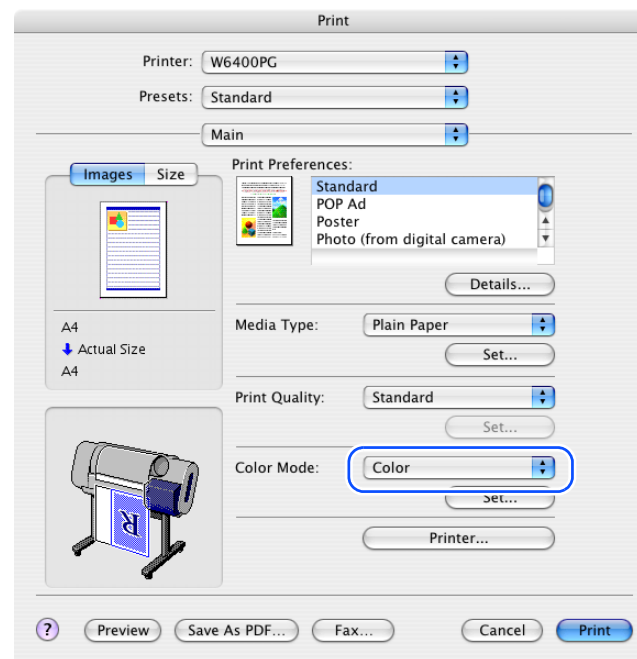
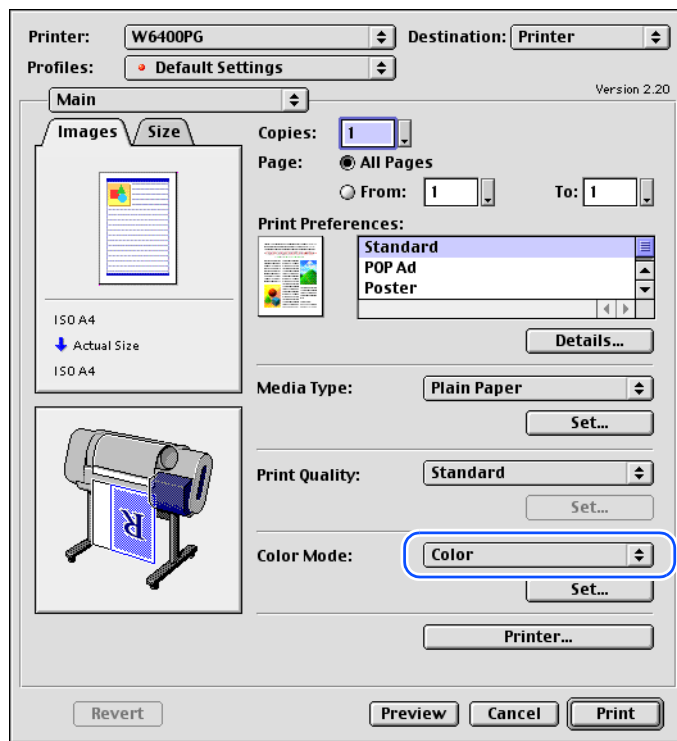
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

3 On the **Main** panel select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

● **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Prints with only a limited number of colors. Use this setting when you need fine lines with light colors in a sharp image.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

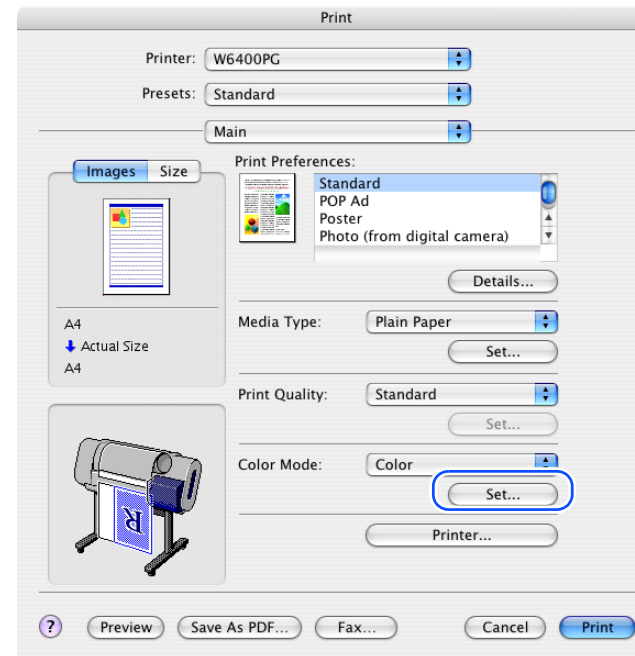
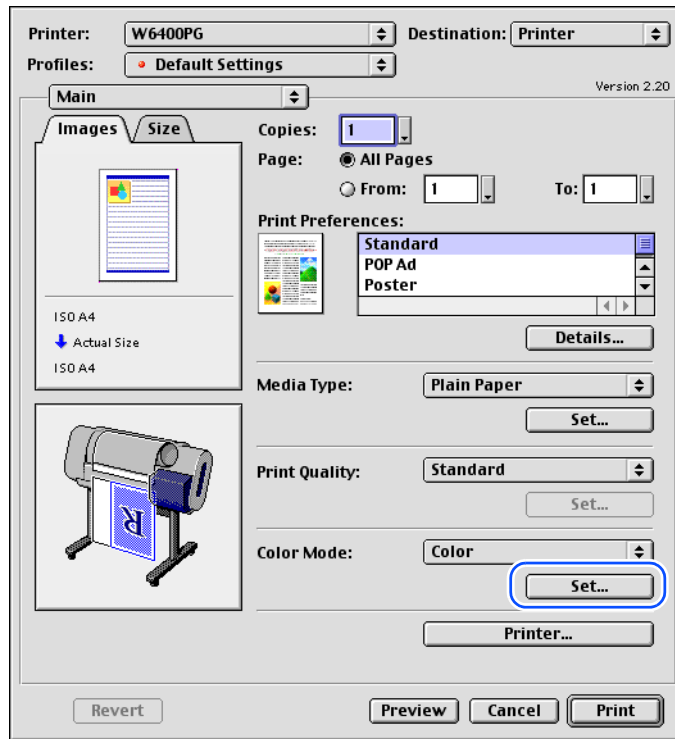
Contents

Index

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected:
Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

4 Press the **Set** button.



Note

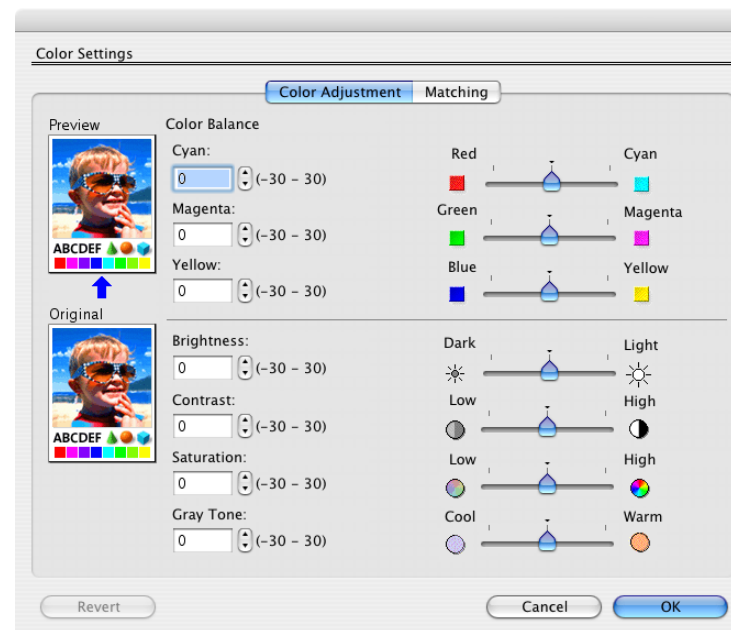
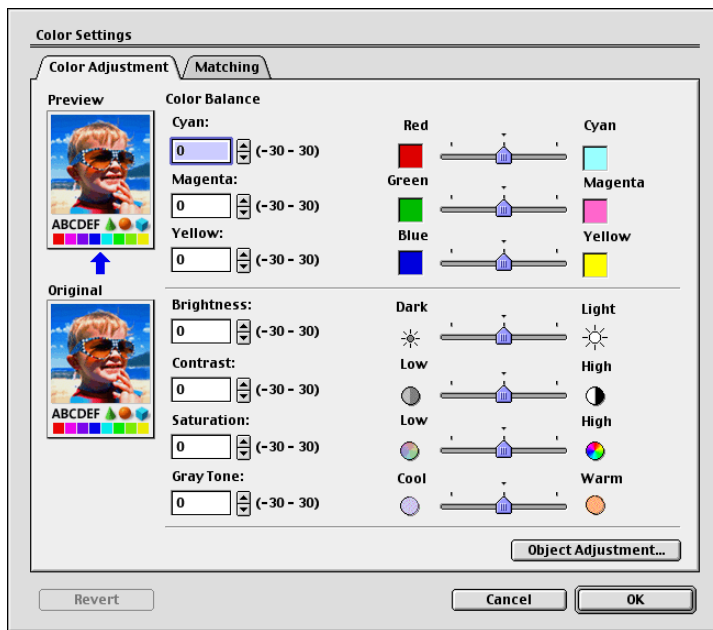
- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

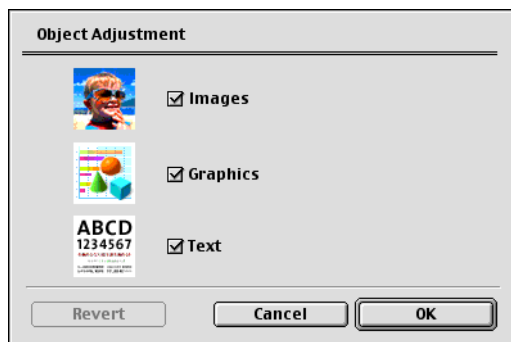
Contents

Index

5 The **Color Settings** dialog box opens.



6 Confirm that the **Color Adjustment** panel is displayed, then click the **Object Adjustment** button.



The **Object Adjustment** dialog box opens.

Note

- This function is not provided for OS X, [Step 6](#) to [Step 8](#) are not required.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

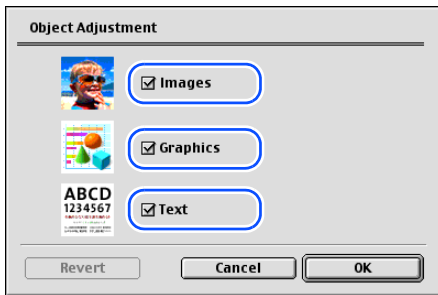
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 Select the item that you want to adjust: **Images**, **Graphics**, or **Text**.

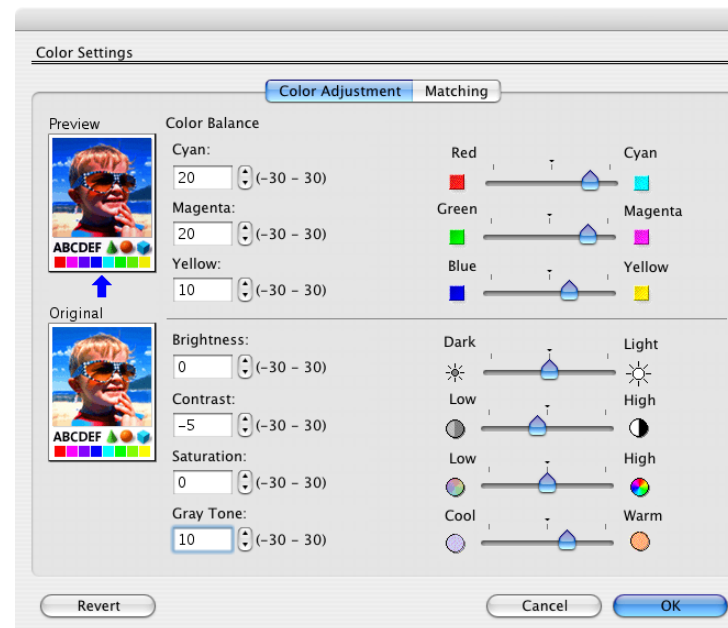
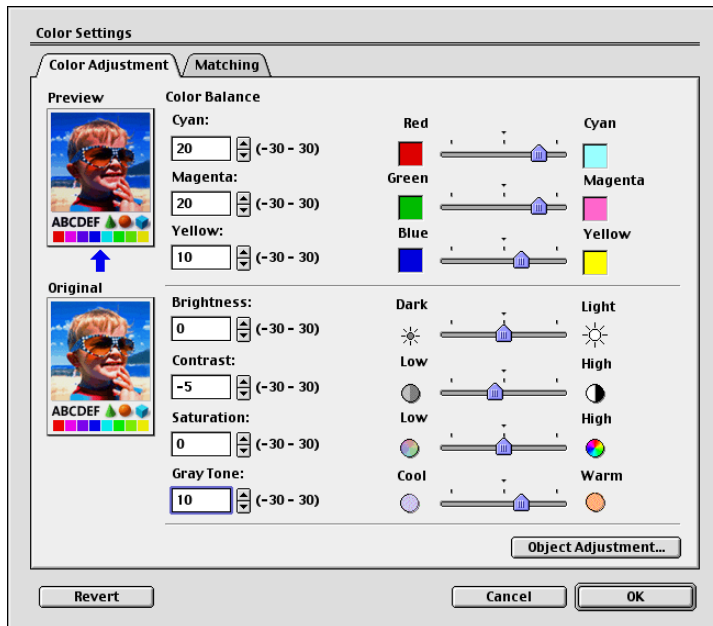


Note

- Note that for this printer driver all the items (**Images**, **Graphics**, **Text**) are selected as the default settings.

8 Click the **OK** button to close the **Object Adjustment** dialog box.

9 Drag the slide bar to the left or right for the item that you want to adjust. You can also enter the value directly or use the arrows of the spinbox to raise or lower the value.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index



Note

- The **Color Adjustment** panel presents the following items for selection.

Color Adjustment	Content
Cyan	You can calibrate the hues for Cyan, Magenta, Yellow.
Magenta	
Yellow	
Brightness	Adjusts brightness from the darkest to brightest colors so none are lost in the brightness of the printed image.
Contrast	Adjusts the relative contrast from brightest to darkest colors.
Saturation	Adjusts the vividness of colors from dull to extremely vivid.
Gray Tone Adjustment	Adjusts grayscale from cool colors (blue tones) to warm colors (red tones).



Important

- As you change each item on the panel, the image of the **Preview** on the left changes to reflect the adjustment. The **Original** shows the appearance of the initial settings, and the **Preview** reflects the current settings.

10 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

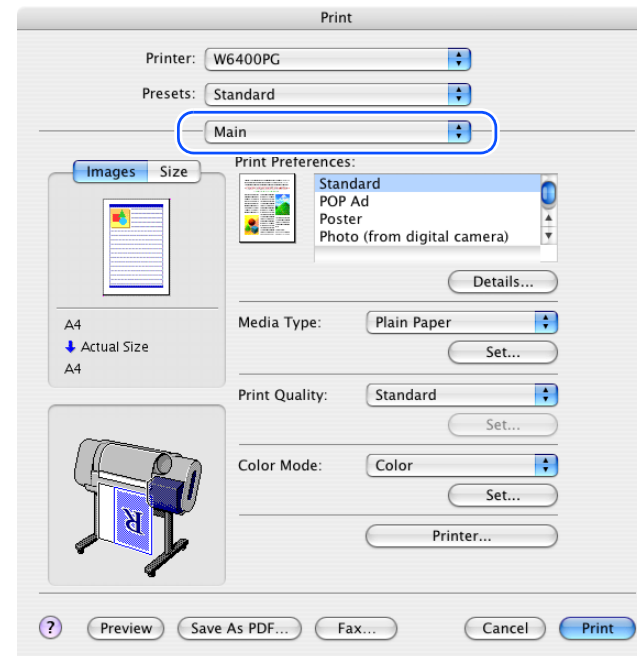
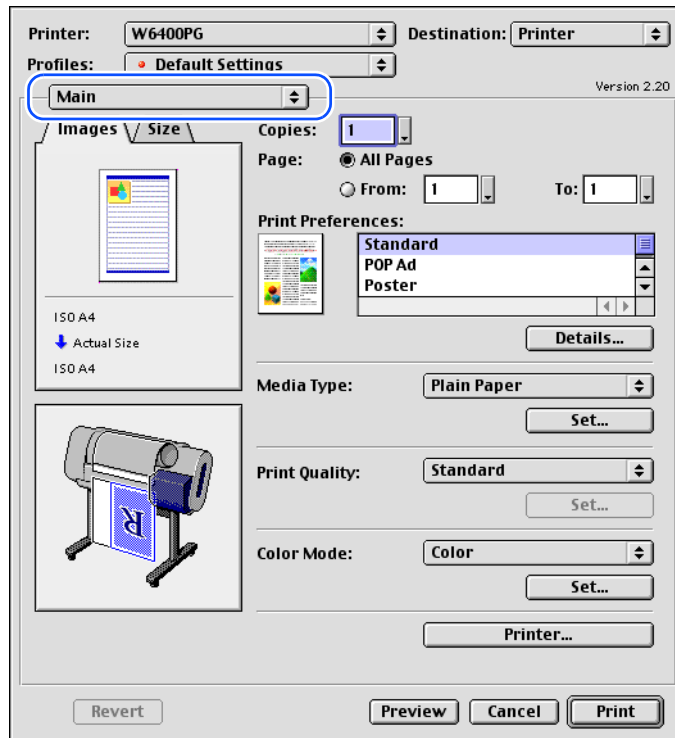
Index

■ Color Matching

When you print an image captured with a scanner or a digital camera, sometimes the appearance of the printout does not match what you see on the screen.

This is caused by differences between the display color and the printed color. In the **Color Settings** dialog box you can use the items on the **Matching** panel, that is, select an **ICC (International Color Consortium)** color profile, or select a matching mode or input profile, or printer profile settings, to have the hues of the colors on the screen more closely resemble the colors in the printout.

- 1 From the **File** menu of the software application select **Print** to display the **Print** dialog box.
- 2 Confirm that the **Main** panel is displayed.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

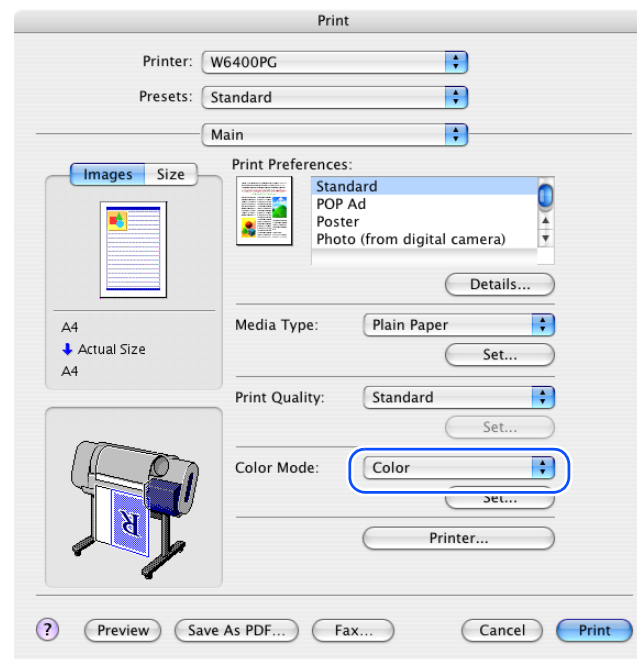
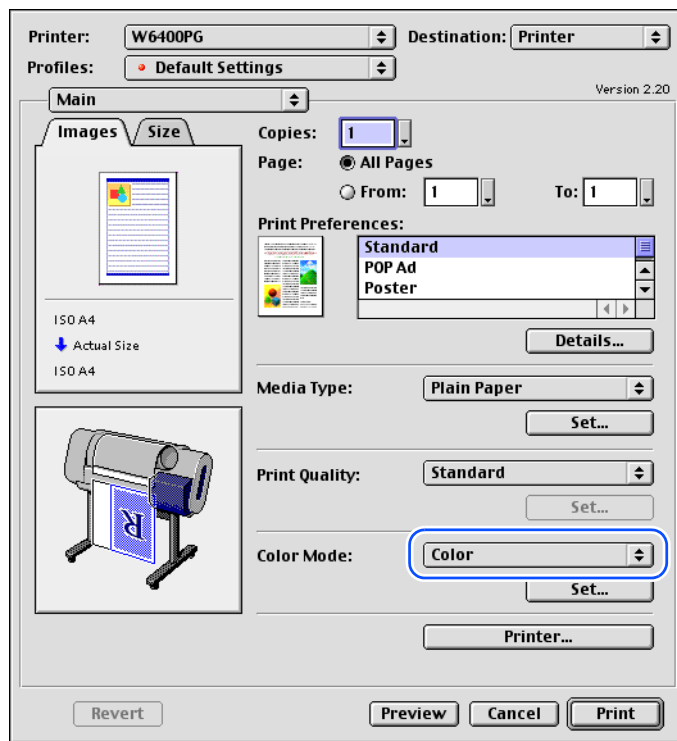
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

3 On the **Main** panel select **Color Mode** then **Color**.



Note

● **Color Mode** presents these following items for selection.

Color Mode	Content
Color	Prints in color.
Monochrome (Photo):	Provides stable monochrome photo printing with minimal tone change and enables detailed adjustment of gray scale gradations and color tones.
Monochrome	Prints in monochrome.
Solid Color	Prints with only a limited number of colors. Use this setting when you need fine lines with light colors in a sharp image.
Black Only	All colors other than white are printed black.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

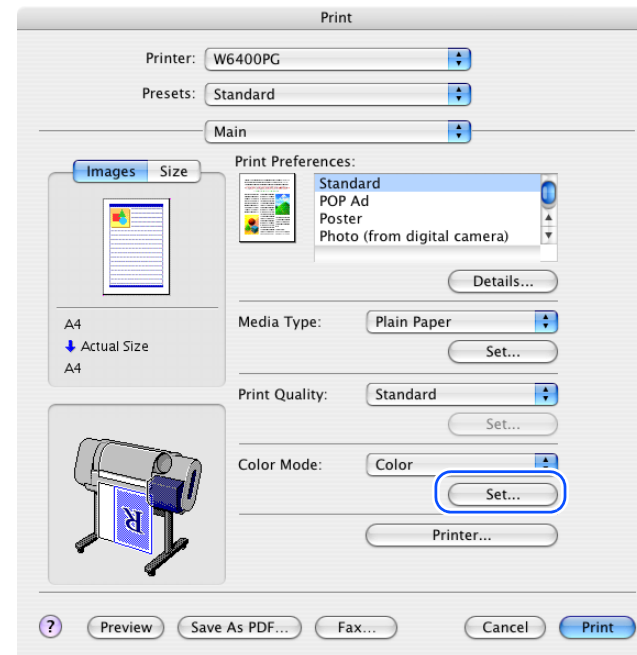
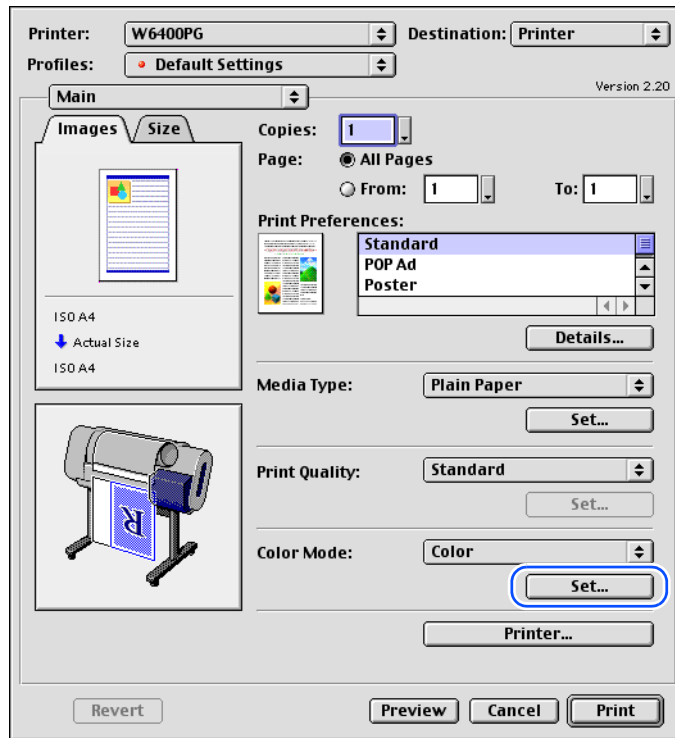
Contents

Index

Important

- Monochrome (Photo) can be selected for Color Mode only if one of the following types of paper is selected:
Glossy Photo Paper/Semi-Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper/Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper/Fine Art Photo/Fine Art Heavyweight Photo/Fine Art Textured/Japanese Paper Washi

4 Press the **Set** button.



Note

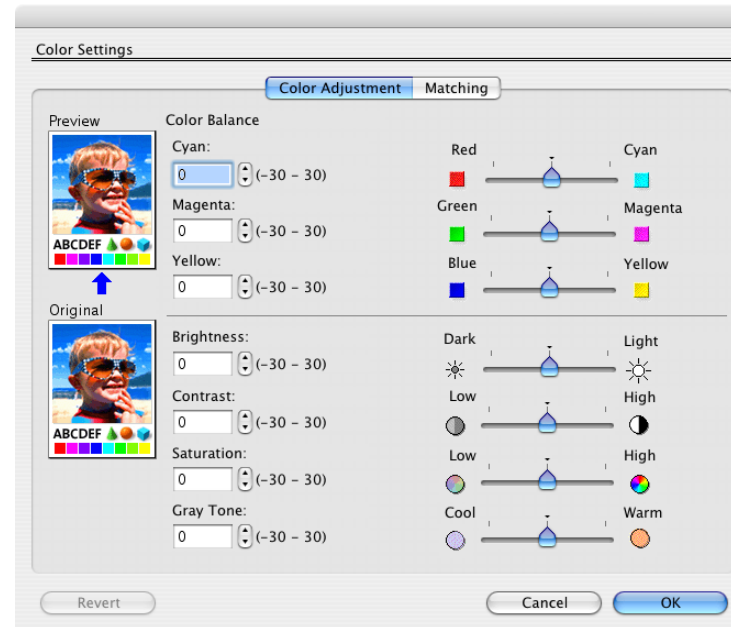
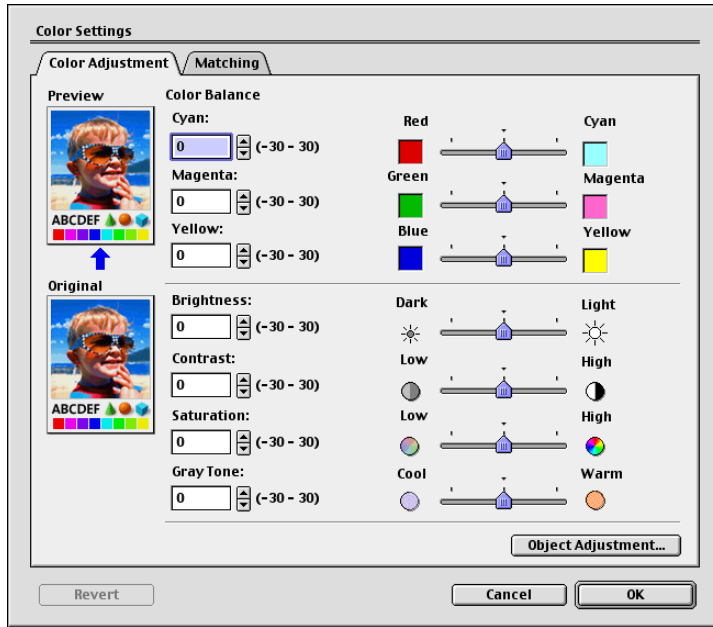
- **Manual Color Settings** are enabled when **Color**, **Monochrome (Photo)**, or **Monochrome** is selected for **Color Mode**.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

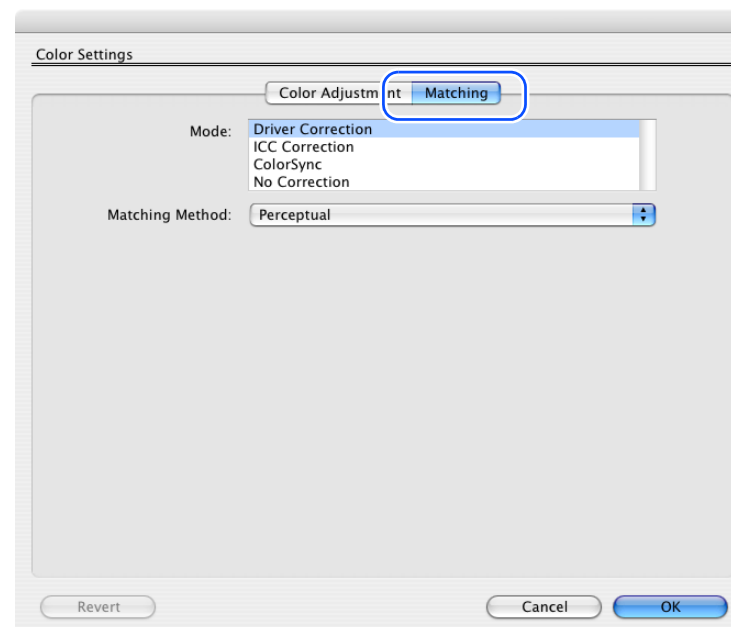
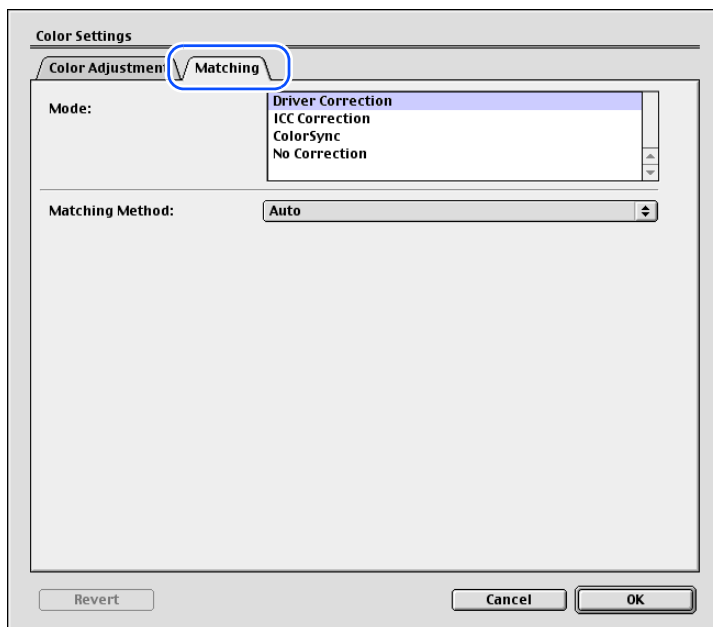
Contents

Index

5 The Color Settings dialog box opens.



6 Select the Matching panel.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

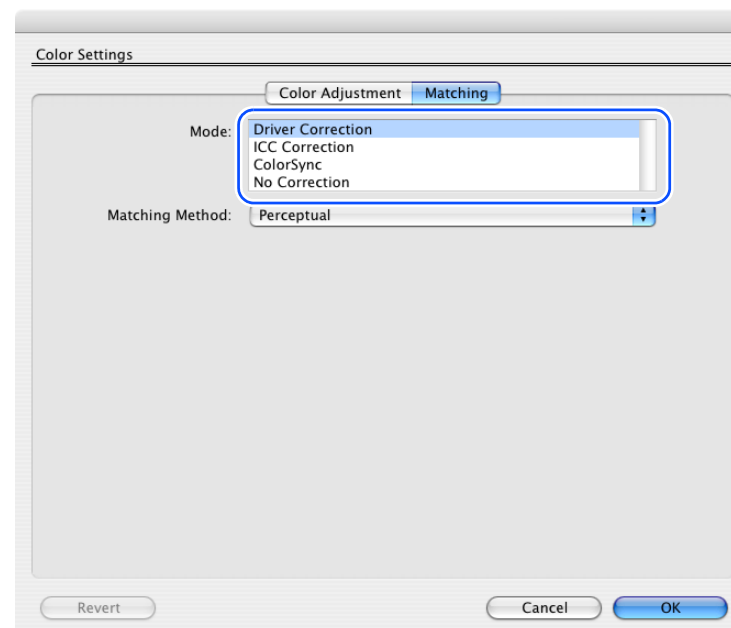
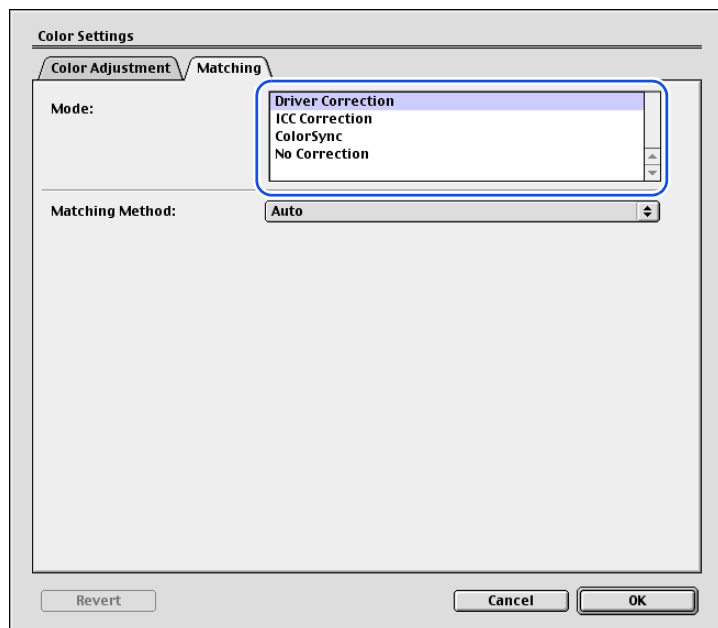
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

7 From the **Mode** list, select the matching mode.



Note

- Here is a list of the available matching modes.

Matching Mode	Content
Driver Correction	Calibrates color using the original color profile of the printer driver.
ICC Correction	Calibrates the color in the printer driver using the standards of ICC color profiles. When this mode is selected, this specifies the entry profile and printer profile.
ColorSync	Select for correction the color management system provided with the Mac OS. When this mode is selected, this specifies the printer profile.
No Correction	Does not execute color matching. The color matching is performed in the software application or performed by an independent color profile; select when you want the color matching of the printer driver to be ignored.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

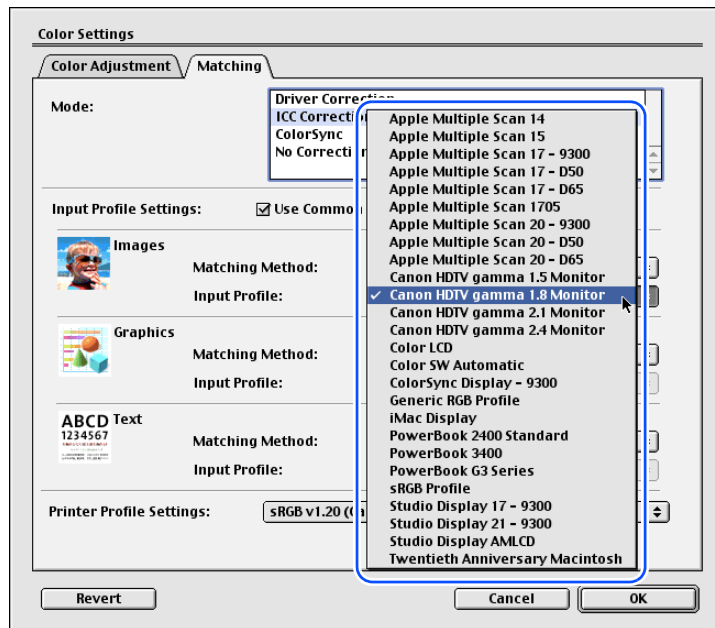
Important

- The mode you select for the **Mode** affects what items are available for selection.
- If you select the **Driver Correction**, only the **Matching Method** is available for selection.
- For OS 8/9, If you select **ICC Correction** you can adjust **Images**, **Graphics** and **Text** for the **Matching Method**. Also, if you select **Use Common Input Profile for All Objects**, then the **Images**, **Graphics**, and **Text** all apply to one profile (this function is not available for OS X).

8 When **ICC Correction** is selected for the **Mode**, at **Images** under **Input Profile Settings** select a profile from the **Input Profile** list.

Note

- When **Use Common Input Profile for All Objects** is selected, the same input profile is selected automatically for both **Graphics** and **Text**.
- If you want to perform different settings for **Graphics** and **Text**, then you must cancel the selection of **Use Common Input Profile for All Objects**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

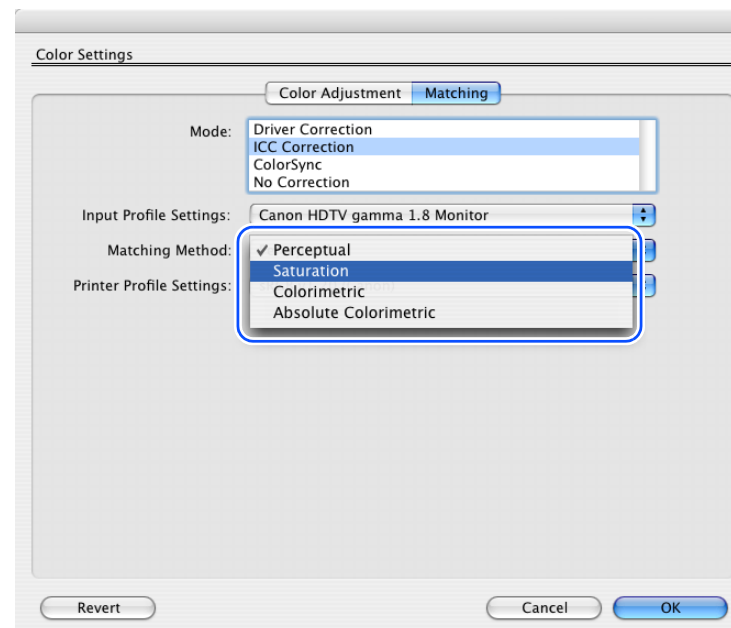
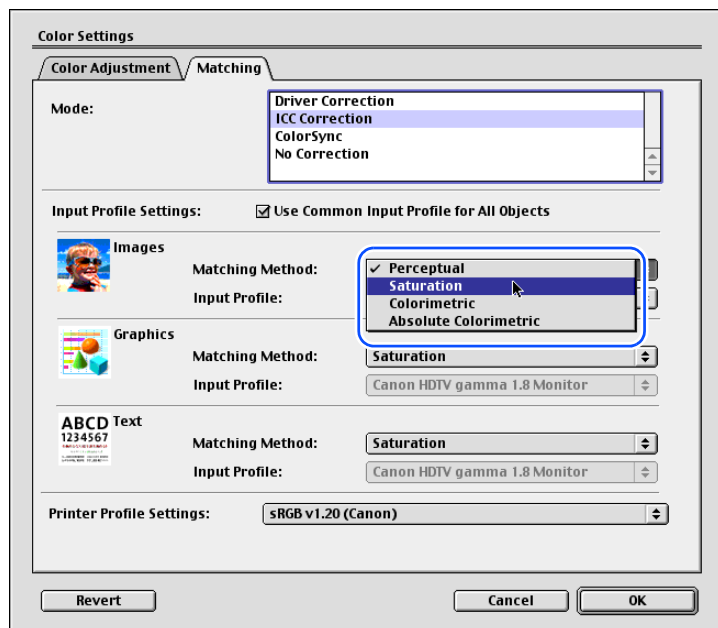
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

9 Click the input profile **Matching Method** list and select a matching method.



Note

● **Matching Method** presents the following items for selection.

Matching Method	Content
Auto	Makes the best matching selections for the Image , Graphics , and Text items. *Not provided for OS X. *This item can selected only when Driver Correction or ColorSync is selected.
Perceptual	Achieves the best results with priority on color perceptual.
Saturation	Achieves the best results with priority on color saturation.
Colorimetric	Faithfully reproduces the input data. Performs white color calibration, so there is no color when white data is output.
Absolute Colorimetric	Faithfully reproduces the input data. No white point correction is done.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

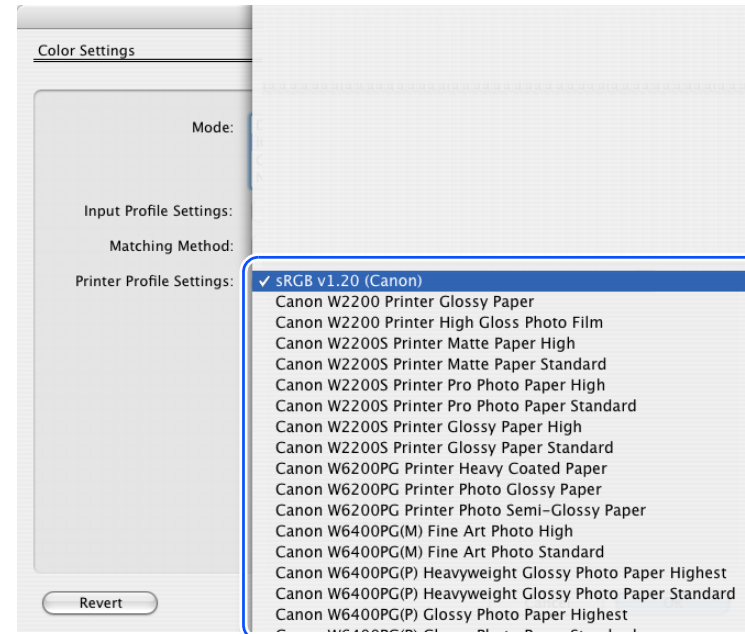
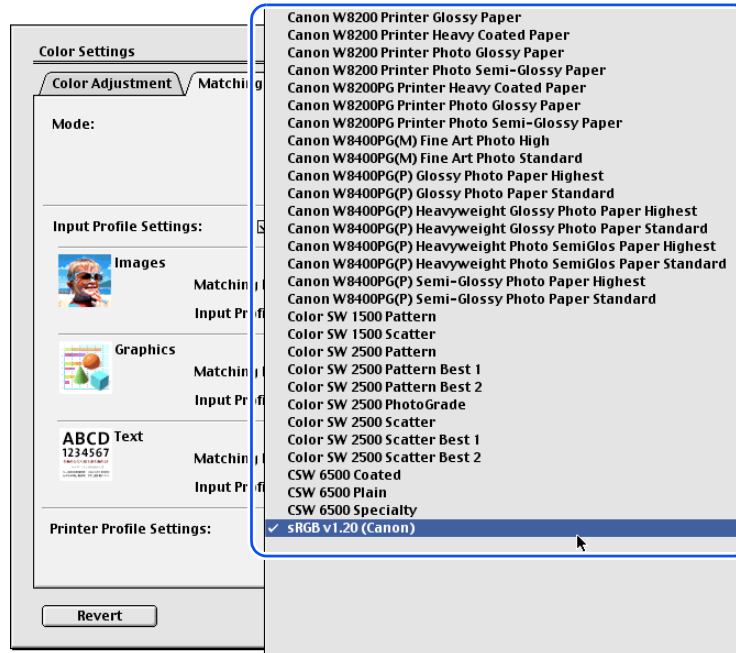
Contents

Index

10 From the **Printer Profile Settings** list, select a printer profile.

Important

- A print profile can be selected only when **ICC Correction** or **ColorSync** is selected under the **Mode**.



11 Click the **OK** button to close the **Color Settings** dialog box.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Custom Sizes (User Print Settings)

■ Creating Custom Sizes

In the software application you can define original media sizes and save them. Once a custom size has been defined, it will be listed along with the standard sizes and be available for selection.

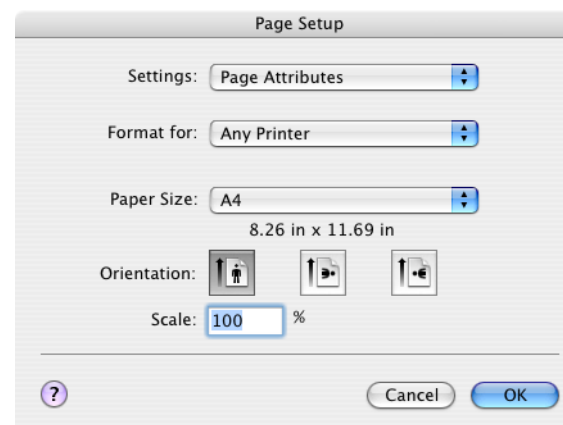
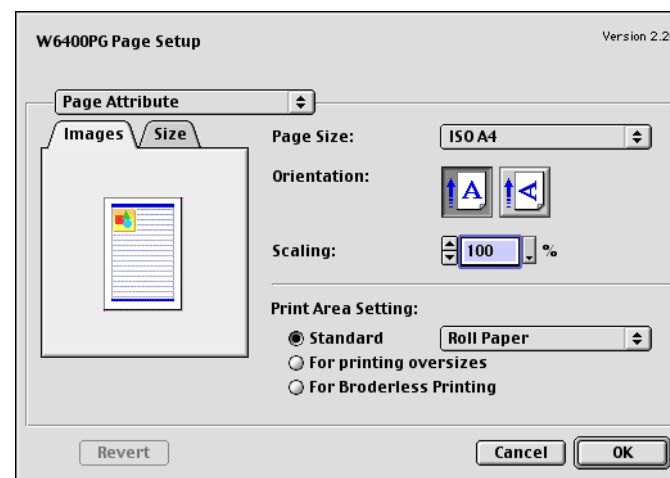
1 Select **Page Setup** from the **File** menu.



Note

- The setup method is different for some software applications.

2 The **Page Setup** dialog box opens.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

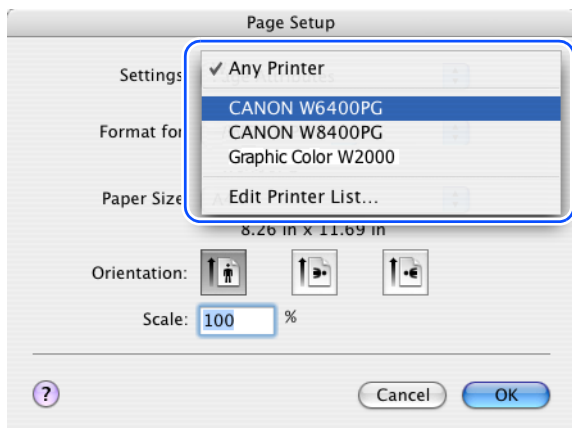
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

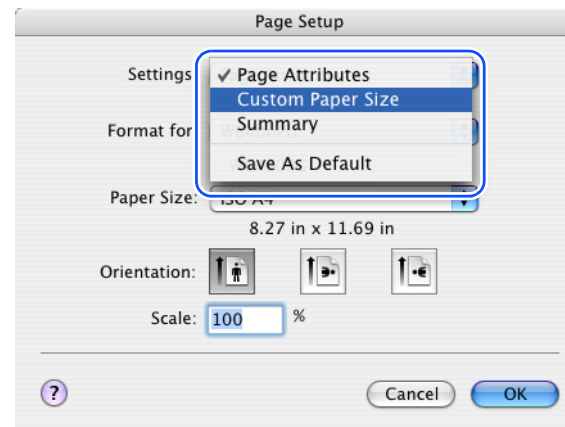
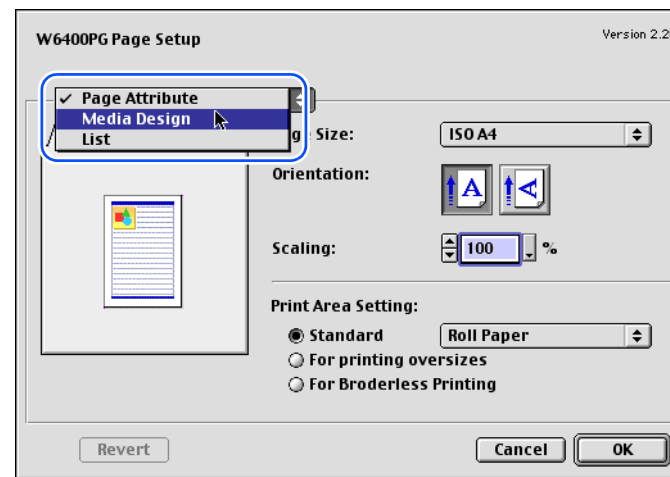
Contents

Index

3 Set the **Format for** (OS 8/9 does not have this setting).



4 Select **Custom Paper Size (Media Design for OS 8/9)**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

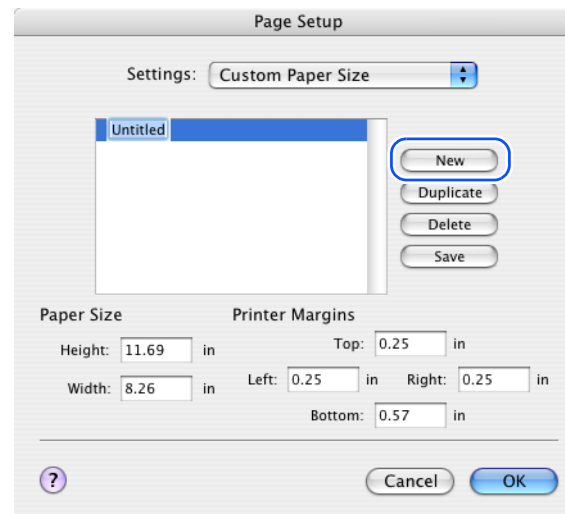
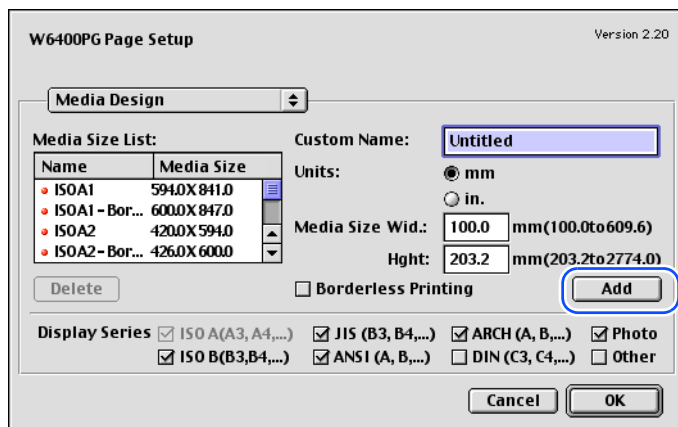
Contents

Index

5 Click the **New** button to define the user defined name, the media size and margins (for OS 8/9 click, define the user defined name, media size and other settings, then click the **Add** button).

Note

- When you select the desired size and name from the **Media Size** list on the left, the **Width (Wid.** for OS 8/9) and **Length (Hght** for OS 8/9) are entered automatically.
- For OS 8/9, If **Borderless Printing** is selected, the selection for **Wid.** changes automatically to a roll width list that supports borderless printing. Select a **Wid.** setting for the width of the desired roll, then enter a number for the **Hght** that you want. (This function is not provided for OS X.)



6 Click the **Save** button. (Not required for OS 8/9)

7 Click the **OK** button to close the dialog box.

Note

- If you are using OS 8/9 you are allowed to store up to a maximum of 5 custom settings.
- The settings in the **Custom Paper Size** panel (**Media Design** for OS 8/9) box remain in effect even after the software application is closed.
- To delete a registered custom size, select the name of the custom size to delete, then click the **Delete** button.
- To edit a registered custom size, select the name of the custom size, then input the **Width** and **Height** settings again. (this editing and correction cannot be performed for OS 8/9)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

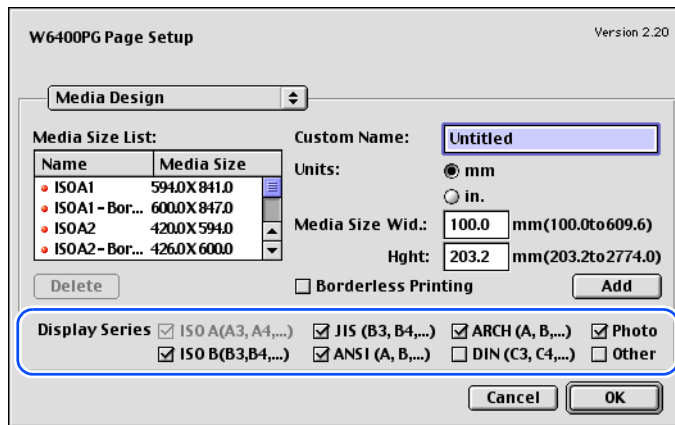
■ Selecting a Media Display Series

In **Display Series** on the **Media Design** panel, you can select a display series that will display for the **Page Size** on the **Page Attribute** panel and for **Media Size** in the **Print** dialog box.

Note

- This function is not provided for OS X.

To display a paper size series for selection for **Media Size** in the **Print** dialog box, or for **Page Size** on the **Page Attribute** panel, you must select **Display Series** with a check mark on the **Media Design** panel. Also, if you want to cancel a size series selected for display, just click check box to remove the check mark for the **Display Series** selection.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

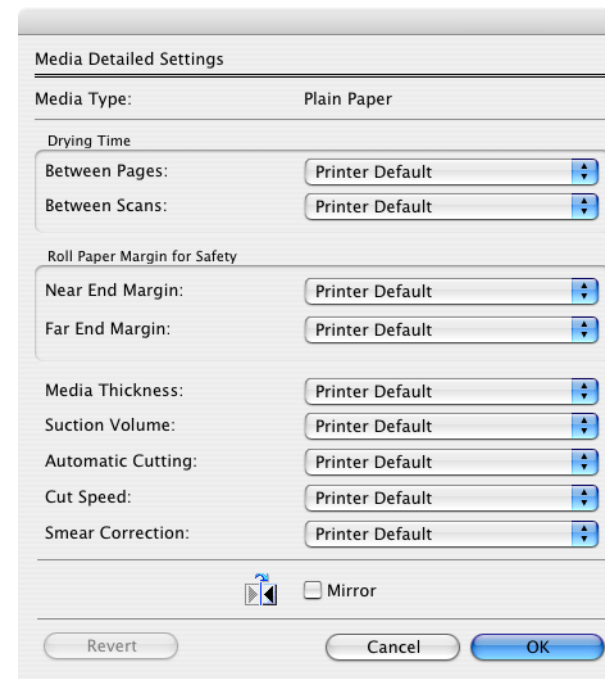
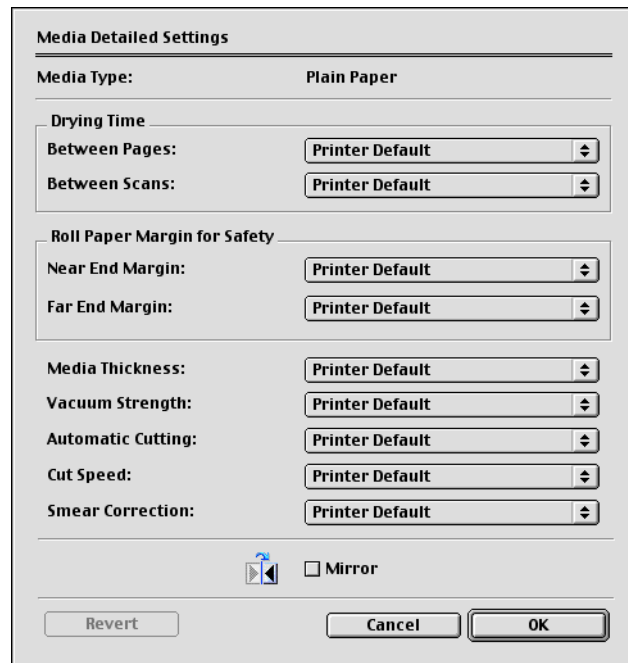
Index

When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean

■ How to Set the Media Type

You can use the printer operation panel to perform suitable settings for the ink drying time of each media and other features. These settings can also be adjusted with the items in the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box in the printer driver. If the printouts are not clear, you may be able to correct the problem by adjusting the settings in this dialog box.

For more details about the **Media Detailed Settings** dialog box, please refer to the online Help.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Software Provided for Macintosh

The following software applications are provided for use with Macintosh.

The function of each software application is described below.

■ Basic Software for Printing

imagePROGRAF Printer Driver 2005

This is a software application that required for the printer to print. This must be installed on every computer that will use the printer. The printer driver not only allows the printer to print, the driver also provides many other important functions such as enlargement/reduction, borderless printing, color adjustment, multiple copy printing, and others.

The printer driver is stored on the provided User Software CD-ROM for Mac OS 8.6/9.x and Mac OS X.

■ Displaying the Printer Status

GARO Printmonitor

This is the utility software that displays details about printer errors on the Macintosh. This utility is installed together with the printer driver.

■ Using the Printer on a Network

Remote UI

This software is used to set up the network information, display the status of the printer, delete print jobs, and display the print job history. This software is stored in the printer ROM, and settings are performed from the computer with a Web browser over the network using a specified printer IP address. (→ [Chapter 5 “Using the Printer in a Network Environment”](#))

If you use a Remote UI, you must set the IP address in the printer.

■ Printing Beautiful Digital Camera Images (for the Professional)

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop

imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop (hereafter "Print Plug-In") makes it possible to reproduce and print the vivid RGB color of Adobe created in PhotoShop. This software is intended for professionals and high-end users who want to obtain the best finished color hues.

After installation of Print Plug-In, you can view a Preview within PhotoShop that allows you to confirm how faithful the colors are reproduced and then adjust them. Because you can process RGB 16-bit data just as it is with PhotoShop, you can print without losing the high color gradations of the originals. Also, you can save the used settings so when you want to print with the same settings you only have to open and read that information to print again.

(→ [Print Plug-In for Photoshop Guide](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Select the Media Type

Media Configuration Tool

Media Configuration Tool is the software used to register information about print media (paper, film, etc.) that can be used with the printer as it becomes available. The functions of this software are provided for users who have an in-depth knowledge of printers and print media.

You can use this software to upload and download media information to and from the printer about media names, thickness, printhead height, suction fan strength, default margins, and other information. A function is also provided that allows the user to acquire the most recent information about media for printing when using the printer connected to a network.

This is installed together with the printer driver.

(→ [Media Configuration Tool Guide](#))

Important

- If you are using the Remote UI with Mac OS 8.6/9.x, open **TCP/IP** on the **Control Panel** and make sure that **Built-in Ethernet** is selected for the **Connect via**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 4 Maintaining the Printer

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Replacing Ink Tanks	4-2
How to Confirm Ink Levels	4-2
When to Replace an Ink Tank	4-3
Ink Tank Handling Precautions	4-4
Replacing an Ink Tank	4-5
Cautions About Using Refilled Ink Tanks for This Printer	4-8
Switching the Ink Level Detection Function Off	4-8
Executing a Print Job	4-9
Cleaning the Printer	4-10
Cleaning the Exterior Covers	4-10
Cleaning Inside the Upper Cover	4-11
Cleaning the Paper Restraint	4-14
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	4-16
Checking Spacing Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge	4-16
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge	4-17
Maintenance Cartridge Handling Precautions	4-18
Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure	4-18
Replacing the Printhead	4-23
Printhead Handling Precautions	4-23
How to Replace the Printhead	4-24
Replacing the Cutter Blade	4-29
Transporting the Printer	4-32
Checking the Condition of the Printer	4-36
Cleaning the Printhead	4-38
Types of Printhead Cleaning	4-38
Printhead Cleaning Procedures	4-38
Aligning the Printhead	4-40
Adjusting Amount of Media Feed	4-42
Media Feed Adjustment Procedure	4-42
Adjusting Line Feed Manually	4-43
Reducing the Amount of Cutting Dust	4-45
Changing the Black Ink Type	4-47
Black Ink Tank Exchange Procedure	4-48

→ Before clicking the **Start Print** button

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

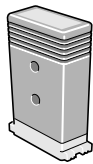
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Replacing Ink Tanks

When the supply of ink in an ink tank runs low, a message appears on the operation panel display or on the printer driver screen to tell you that it is time to replace the ink tank. You can change any one of the ink tanks among the seven when it runs out of ink: Yellow (Y), Magenta (M), Photo Magenta (PM), Cyan (C), Photo Cyan (PC), Photo Black (BK), and Matte Black (MBK).

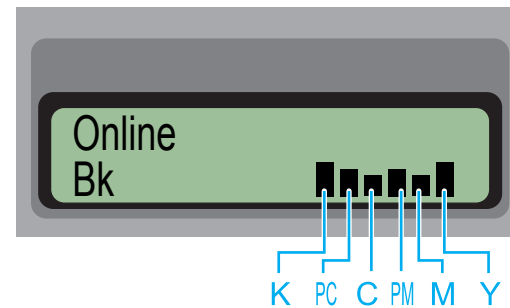


- | | |
|---------------------|-------------|
| ● Yellow Ink | BCI-1451Y |
| ● Magenta Ink | BCI-1431M |
| ● Photo Magenta Ink | BCI-1431PM |
| ● Cyan Ink | BCI-1431C |
| ● Photo Cyan Ink | BCI-1431PC |
| ● Photo Black Ink | BCI-1431BK |
| ● Matte Black Ink | BCI-1451MBK |

How to Confirm Ink Levels

You can confirm the ink level at any time by checking the printer operation panel display. You should always check the ink levels in the ink tanks and replace any ink tank that is low before starting a long print job or any other job that will consume a large amount of ink.

■ Online Status Display



The ink levels are displayed in the bottom line of the display from left to right in the following order: Black (K), Photo Cyan (PC), Cyan (C), Photo Magenta (PM), Magenta (M), Yellow (Y).

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

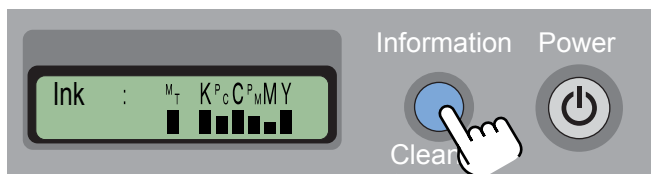
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

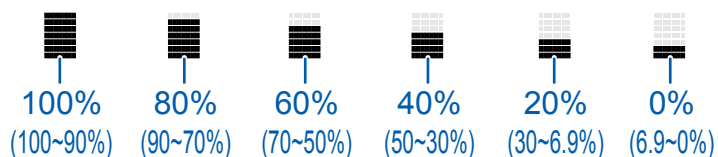
■ Information Button Display



You can check the ink level at any time (during a print job or while an error is displayed) by pressing the **Information** button. The ink levels are displayed from left to right in the following order: Black (K), Photo Cyan (PC), Cyan (C), Photo Magenta (PM), Magenta (M), Yellow (Y).

■ How to Read the Ink Level Display

The height of a small graphic ■ indicates the ink level in each tank.



When to Replace an Ink Tank

You should have extra ink tanks on hand ready for replacement when either of the conditions below occurs.

Important

- An ink tank cannot be replaced during printing because the right cover is locked.
- The printed image may become uneven if the printer is stopped during a print job to replace an ink tank.
- Never open the right cover or operate the release lever while the **Initializing** message is displayed. This could damage the printer.

■ When the Check Ink Level Message is Displayed

The **Check Ink Level** message displays when the ink level in a tank becomes low. Printing may continue. The message display tells you that an ink tank is about to run out of ink. Check the amount of ink remaining in the tanks in the Status Monitor (Windows), Printmonitor (Macintosh) or on the printer operation panel, and make sure that you have replacement ink tanks for the colors that are running low.

Note

- When the level of ink in a tank runs low, the printer may not have sufficient ink to complete Cleaning B or another maintenance operation that consumes a large amount of ink. In such a case, perform print head cleaning after replacing the ink tank.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ When the Rep. Ink Tank (Replace Ink Tank) Message Is Displayed

When the ink in a tank runs out, the **Rep. Ink Tank** message displays and the printer stops printing. Replace the ink tank as soon as this message appears. When you open the right cover, you will see the amount of ink remaining for each color along with its notation (Y= Yellow, M= Magenta, PM= Photo Magenta, C= Cyan, PC= Photo Cyan, Bk= Photo Black/Matte Black). A flashing color display means the ink tank of that color should be replaced.



Note

- If more than one color has disappeared, replace the ink tanks of the missing colors to recover printing.

Ink Tank Handling Precautions

Obey the following precautions when you handle ink tanks.

Caution

- Always store ink tanks in a safe location where they are out of the reach of small children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.

Important

- Before installing an ink tank, slowly rotate it from side to side about 7 or 8 times before breaking its seal. If you do not shake the tank the ink will precipitate, causing a deterioration in the print quality.
- After breaking the seal on an ink tank, avoid dropping or shaking it. Spilled ink can stain the work area.
- The ink supply ports of empty ink tanks may be covered with ink. Always handle ink tanks carefully. The ink could spill on your clothing and make stains that cannot be removed.
- An ink tank should be used up within six months after its seal has been broken or after it has been removed from its package. After this time period has elapsed for the ink tank, this could cause the quality of printing to deteriorate.
- Never leave an ink tank removed from the printer for a long period (over one month). The ink could clog and lead to poor print quality.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Replacing an Ink Tank

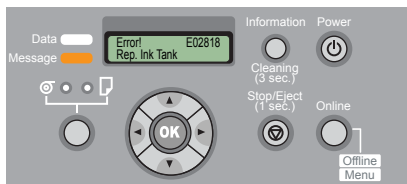
Follow the procedure below to replace an ink tank. You can follow this same procedure to replace any ink tank.

⚠ Caution

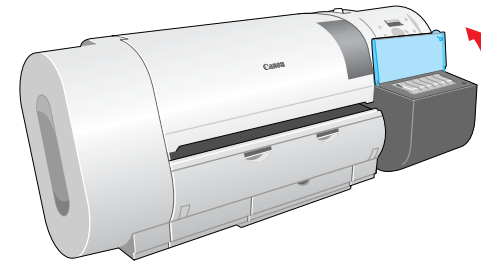
- Always confirm that the replacement ink tank is the same type as the tank that is installed in the printer. If you mistakenly exchange a Photo Black ink tank and a Matte Black ink tank, this could damage the printer. To change the type of black ink tank, you must execute **ChangeBkInkType** on the printer operation panel and then exchange the black ink tanks. (→ P.4-47)

- Look at the printer display and make sure that the printer is not operating.

You can replace an ink tank while the display shows any of the following: **Online**, **Offline**, **Check Ink Level**, or **Rep. Ink Tank**.



- Open the right cover.



The ink level is shown in the display; a flashing color means that the ink tank of that color must be replaced.



👉 Important

- The right cover cannot be opened while the printer is initializing immediately after the printer is switched on, during printhead cleaning, or during a print job. Please wait until processing is completed.

Offline
Please Wait...

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

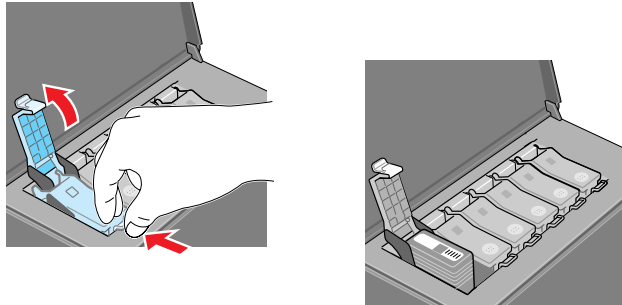
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

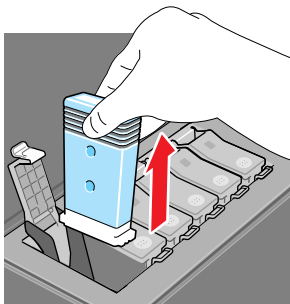
Contents

Index

- 3** Press the ink tank lever of the color to replace, then open the ink tank cover.



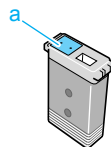
- 4** Hold the empty ink tank by the grips on the left and right side of the ink tank, then remove it.



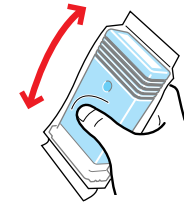
Place each ink tank in a vinyl or plastic bag and seal it.

Important

- If ink remains in a removed ink tank, store the ink tank with the ink supply port (a) pointing up. Ink leaked from ink tanks will stain the work area.



- 5** Slowly rotate a new ink tank still in its package 7 or 8 times, then remove it from its package.

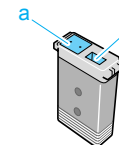


Important

- Always confirm that the replacement ink tank is the same type as the tank that is installed in the printer. If you mistake a Photo Black Ink tank for a Matte Black Ink tank, this will cause poor print quality. To change the type of black ink tank, you must execute **ChangeBkInkType** on the printer operation panel and then exchange the black ink tanks. (→ P.4-47)
- Always hold an ink tank by its left and right grips (b) while you are handling it.



- Never touch the ink supply port (a) or the electrical terminal (c). This could damage the ink tank, cause poor print quality, or stain the work area.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

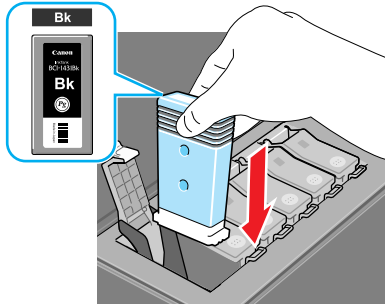
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

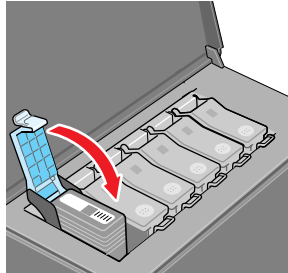
Contents

Index

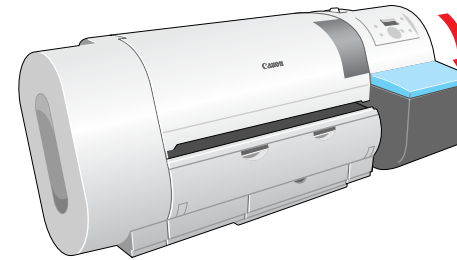
- 6** With the ink supply port facing down and the label facing front as shown, insert the ink tank into its holder.



- 7** Close the ink tank cover until you hear it catch.



- 9** When you finish replacing ink tanks, close the right cover.



The printer returns to the **Online** or **Offline** mode. Printing restarts if the **Rep. Ink Tank** message displayed during a print job.

Important

- If an ink tank has not been installed, then in the printer display you will see a **Exxxx** error code in the top line and the **No X Ink Tank** message in the bottom line. Go to [Step 2](#) to correct this problem and make sure that all the color ink tanks are installed.

Important

- The ink tanks are shaped so the cover will not close if you set the wrong ink tank in a holder. If the ink tank cover does not close, confirm that the color labels on the holder match the color of the ink tank and the direction of the ink tank.

- 8** To replace an ink tank of any other color, repeat [Step 3](#) to [Step 7](#).

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Cautions About Using Refilled Ink Tanks for This Printer

Ink tanks specified for use with the printer provide an ink level detection function where the printer can detect when ink runs out during printing to prevent damage to the printhead.

If you use a refilled ink tank, the ink level detection function will no longer function correctly, and the printer will halt when ink runs out. Before you can use tanks like this, you must switch off the ink level detection function.

If you print with the ink level detection switched off, this could damage the printer (especially the printhead) or cause other problems. Canon, Inc. can assume no responsibility for damages caused by using ink tanks not designed for use with the printer.

Caution

- Once the ink level detection function is switched off, the ink level detection function cannot be recovered for the ink tanks in the printer. To recover the ink level display, the ink tanks must be replaced with new ink tanks designed for use with the printer.
- If the same ink tank is repeatedly removed and reinserted, this could damage the connection points between the ink tank and the printer, leading to ink leakage which could damage the printer.

Switching the Ink Level Detection Function Off

- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
- 2** Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select **System Setup** then press [▼].
- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Stop Ink Check**, then press [▼].
- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Bk Ink Tank etc., then press the **OK** button.

Note

- To cancel the procedure of the ink level detection function off at any time, just press the **Online** button.

- 5** When **Stop Function?** appears press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

An equals sign (=) appears as a prefix to the setting and the ink remains detection function of the selected ink tank is switched off.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Executing a Print Job

After switching off the ink level detection function, every time you execute a print job from the computer the **Ink level?** message appears on the printer operation panel display and the printer goes offline. To start the print job, just press the **Online** button on the printer operation panel.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Cleaning the Printer

Clean the printer periodically to maintain high print quality and to avoid problems.

Obey the following precautions when you clean the printer.

⚠ Caution

- When you clean the printer, always switch the printer off and unplug its power cord from the power supply. If the printer is accidentally switched on while you are cleaning it, moving parts inside the printer could cause personal injury if you are touching them.
- Never use a flammable liquid like thinner, benzene, alcohol, etc. to clean the printer. If such combustible materials come into contact with electrical component inside the printer, this could cause a fire or electrical shock.

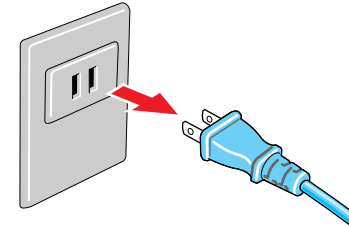
Cleaning the Exterior Covers

During normal use the printer surfaces require cleaning at least once a month.

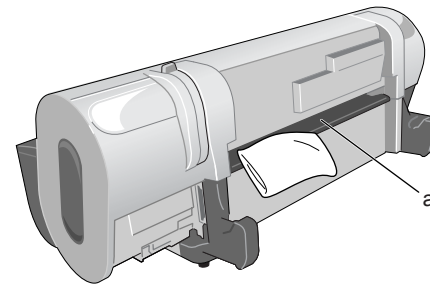
- 1 Hold down the **Power** button for more than 1 sec. to display **Shut Down..** then switch the printer off.



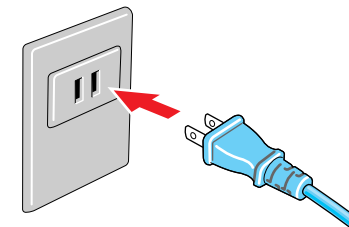
- 2 Disconnect the power cord at the power supply.



- 3 Dampen a clean cloth, wring it out completely, then use it to clean dirt and paper dust from the printer exterior surfaces, feed slot (a), and power cord plug, then wipe the cleaned surfaces with a dry cloth.



- 4 Insert the plug of the power cord into the power source.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Cleaning Inside the Upper Cover

To maintain optimum use of the printer, you should clean the interior surfaces of the upper cover when you see the print surfaces or back sides of printouts fouled with ink, after printing one complete roll, or at least once a month. Also, you should clean the printer after replacing media, especially after printing on small size media, after a borderless printing job or after printing on the paper that contains many paper dust.

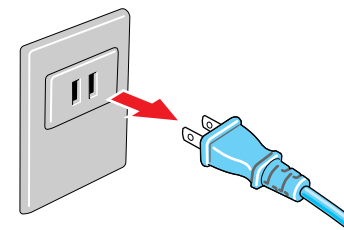
Important

- Immediately after borderless printing or printing on small size paper, be sure to open the top cover and clean around the platen. You should also diligently clean the platen area at other times as well. If the platen area is dirty, this could cause ink stains on the back sides of printed sheets.

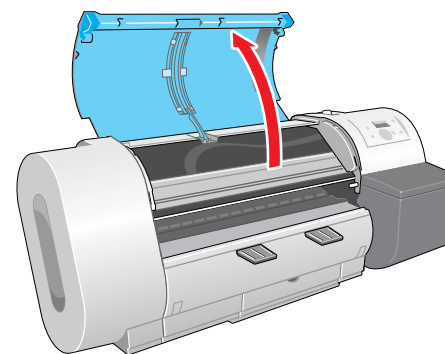
- 1 Hold down the **Power** button for more than 1 sec. to display **Shut Down..** then switch the printer off.



- 2 Disconnect the power cord at the power supply.



- 3 Open the upper cover.



Important

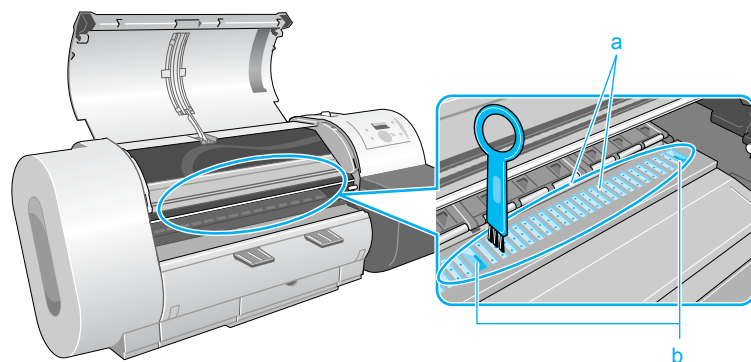
- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

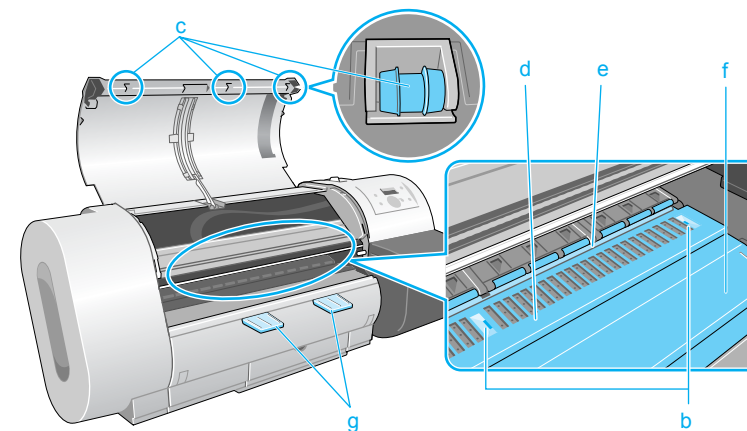
4 If paper dust has collected in the suction ports (a) on the platen and the borderless print ink groove (b), use the provided cleaning brush to remove the dust and dirt from the ports and groove.



Note

- Wash the cleaner brush with water if it is dirty.

5 Use a damp cloth (well wrung out) to clean the upper cover handles, upper cover rollers (c), the area around the platen (d), the paper pressure plate (e), the exit guide (f), the borderless print ink groove (b), and the auxiliary output guide (g).



Important

- Never polish the areas under the upper cover with a dry cloth during cleaning. This could create static electricity that attracts dust and dirt that could lower print quality.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

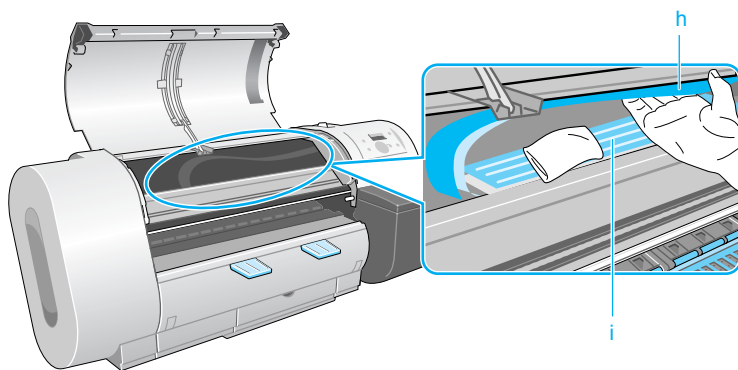
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

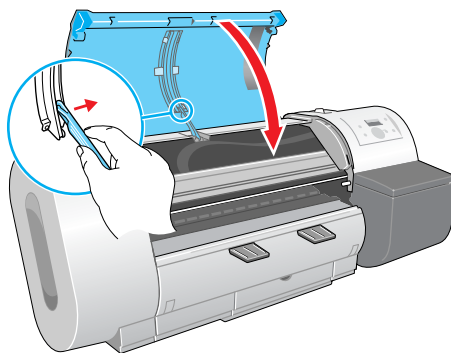
Contents

Index

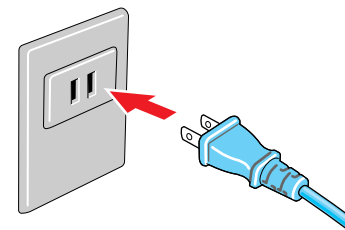
- 6** While raising the flexible wire (h) with one hand, wipe away the dirt on the flexible wire guide (i).



- 7** Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



- 8** Insert the plug of the power cord into the power source.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Cleaning the Paper Restraint

To maintain the proper use of the printer, use a piece of plain paper to clean the back surface of the paper pressure plate when you see the print surface or back surface of media fouled with ink, especially before switching from a small roll size to a larger size, or once a month.

Before starting this procedure, prepare some plain paper (or any media other than film).

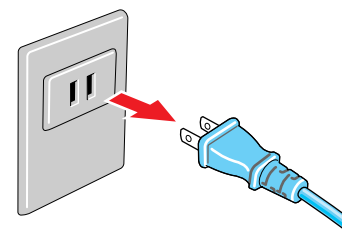
Important

- The paper you use for cleaning should be plain paper that does not easily produce cutting dust. If you use film or any type of media that produces cutting dust that could hang up, this could lower the print quality.

- 1 Hold down the **Power** button for more than 1 sec. to display **Shut Down..** and switch the printer off.

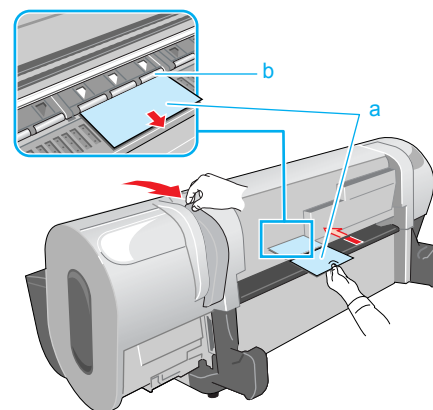


- 2 Disconnect the power cord at the power supply.



- 3 Push the release lever back to open it, fold a sheet of plain paper (a) 2 or 3 times, insert it from the back of the printer so it is under the paper restraint (b), then use the paper to clean the under side of the plate.

Be sure to wipe clean the entire length of the paper restraint. When you are finished, pull the release lever to the front to close it.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

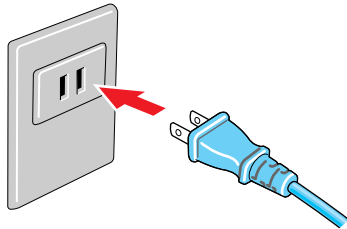
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

4 Insert the plug of the power cord into the power source.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

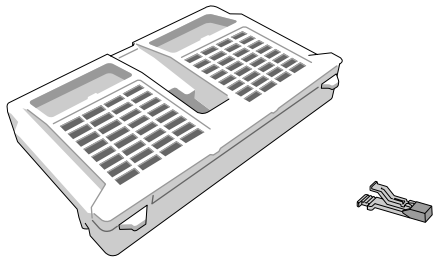
Contents

Index

Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

The maintenance cartridge vacuums excess ink that accumulates as a result of borderless printing, printhead cleaning, and ink mist produced by other operations. When you see the message prompt that tells you to replace the maintenance cartridge, replace the cartridge.

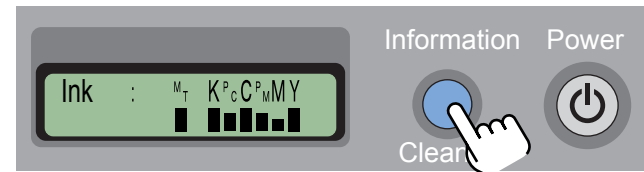
- Maintenance Cartridge MC-01



Checking Spacing Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge

You can confirm the amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge at any time by checking the printer operation panel display. You should always check the amount of space remaining in the maintenance cartridge before Heading Cleaning B, moving the printer, or any other operation that could use up space in the maintenance cartridge, and then replace the cartridge in advance.

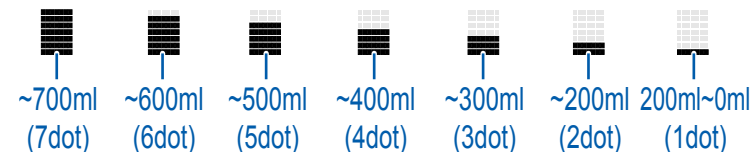
- Information Button Display



You can check on how much space remains in the maintenance cartridge at any time (during a print job or error display) by pressing the **Information** button. The icon at the right end of the bottom line shows you the amount of space that remains in the maintenance cartridge.

- Reading the Maintenance Cartridge Display

The height of the bar tells you how much more ink the maintenance cartridge vacuum and store.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

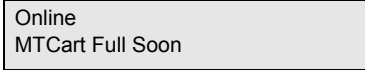
Index

When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge

When the maintenance cartridge becomes full of ink, the printer driver screen or the printer operation panel will display a message to tell you that it is time to replace the maintenance cartridge.

■ When You See the **MTCart Full Soon** Message

When you see this message, this means that the maintenance cartridge is nearly full. You can continue to operate the printer. When the **MTCart Full Soon** message appears, this means that the maintenance cartridge is about to be full. Obtain a new maintenance cartridge.



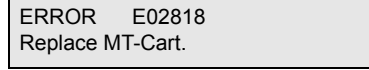
Online
MTCart Full Soon

Note

- While this message is displayed, you cannot replace an black ink tank or move the printer. First, you must replace the maintenance cartridge.

■ When You See the **Replace MT-Cart.** Message

This message means that the maintenance cartridge is full, and the print job will stop when the **Replace MT-Cart.** message appears. Replace the ink tank as soon as this message appears.



ERROR E02818
Replace MT-Cart.

Note

- While this message is displayed, you cannot replace the black ink tank, replace the printhead, or move the printer. First, you must replace the maintenance cartridge.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Maintenance Cartridge Handling Precautions

Follow the guidelines below when you handle the maintenance cartridge.

Important

- Never remove a maintenance cartridge until you are ready to replace it.
- To avoid ink spills with a maintenance cartridge that is full of ink, never drop it and always lay it flat (never at an angle). Spilled ink can stain the work area.
- Ink adheres to the top of a used maintenance cartridge. Handle maintenance cartridges carefully. The ink could spill on your clothing and make stains that cannot be removed.
- Once a maintenance cartridge has been installed in one printer, it cannot be installed in another printer.

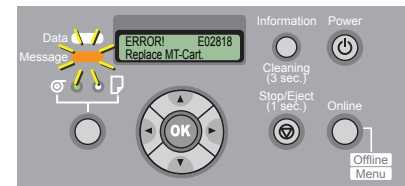
Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure

Follow the procedure below to replace a maintenance cartridge.

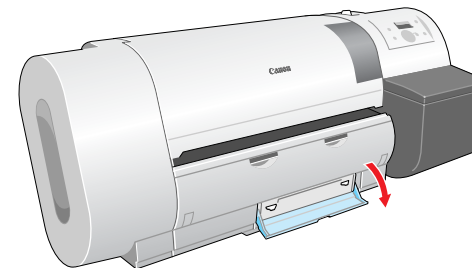
- Replacing the maintenance cartridge (→ [P.4-18](#))
- Replacing the Shaft Cleaner (→ [P.4-21](#))

■ Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge

- 1** Look at the printer display and make sure that the printer is not operating.



- 2** Open the maintenance cartridge cover.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

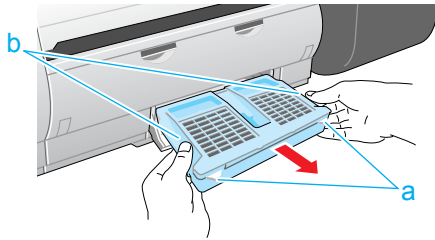
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menu

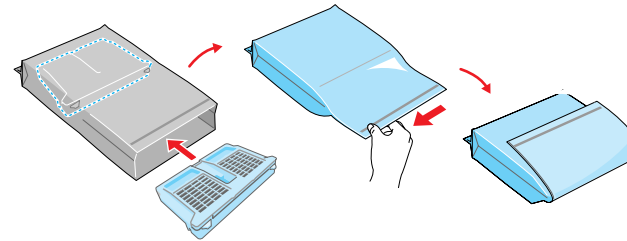
Contents

Index

- 3** Pull out the tabs (a) of the used maintenance cartridge and remove it horizontally with the handles (b) on both sides.

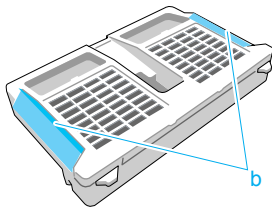


- 4** While holding the used maintenance cartridge level, slip it into the protective vinyl bag that held the new cartridge, press down on the bag to expel excess air, then close the zipper completely.



Caution

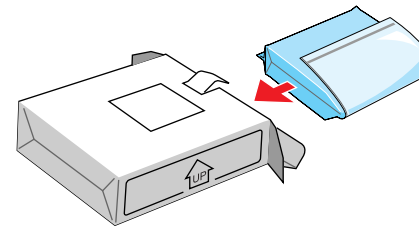
- Always store a used maintenance cartridge in a safe location out of the reach of children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.



Important

- In accordance with its active and on-going policy to protect the environment, Canon collects used maintenance cartridges. Follow the instructions provided with the new maintenance cartridge that describe how to process the used cartridge.

- 5** Check the top and bottom of the bag holding the used maintenance cartridge, place it in the packing box, then store it flat in a safe location.



Important

- An full maintenance cartridge is heavy. Grip the cartridge tightly by the left and right handles (b) and hold it level when removing or storing it. If you drop a maintenance cartridge or lay it down at an angle, this could cause ink to leak and stain the work area.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

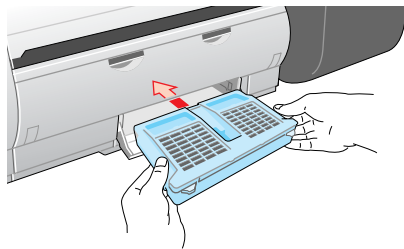
Contents

Index

Important

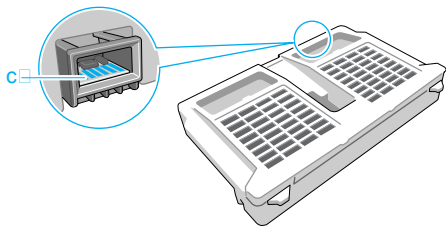
- Be sure to store the removed maintenance cartridge in a packing box and store it on a flat surface. An ink leak can stain the work area.
- Before you place the vinyl bag into the packing box, make sure that the zipper is closed completely.

- 6** Place the new maintenance cartridge into the maintenance cartridge cover and make sure that it is inserted completely.

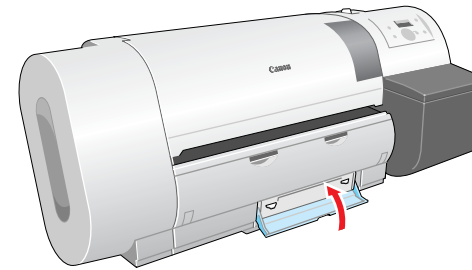


Important

- Never touch the terminal (c). Touching the terminal on the back of the maintenance cartridge could damage it.



- 7** Close the maintenance cartridge cover.



- 8** Press the **Information** button.



The initialization of the new maintenance cartridge finishes after about 5 seconds, then the printer enters the **Online** or **Offline** mode.

Important

- Never attempt to remove or re-attach the maintenance cartridge within 5 seconds after it enters the online mode. The maintenance cartridge could be damaged.

Note

- The maintenance cartridge can also be replaced with the printer switched off. In this case, never attempt to remove or re-attach the maintenance cartridge for at least 5 seconds after you switch the printer on again.

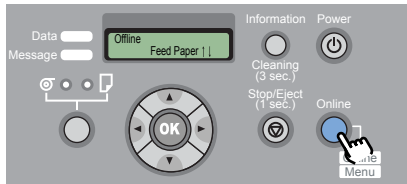
Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Replacing the Shaft Cleaner

- 1 Press the **Online** button to display **Offline**.

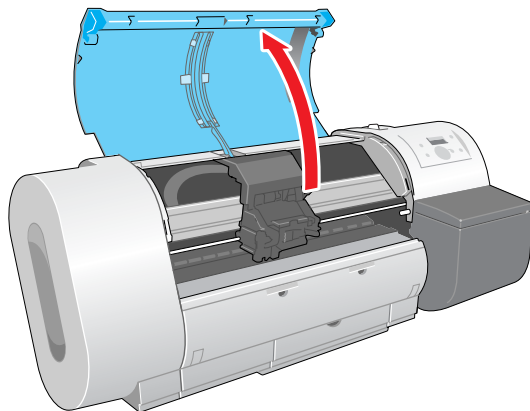


- 2 Hold down the [**Left Arrow**] button for more than 1 second.



The carriage moves to the center and **Open Upper Cover** message appears on the display.

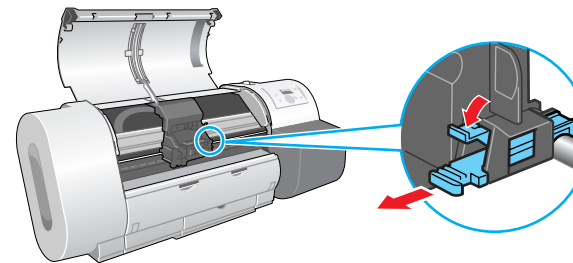
- 3 Open the upper cover.



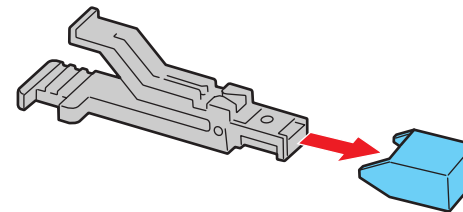
Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

- 4 Grip the lever of the shaft cleaner and pull it toward you.



- 5 Remove the cap of a new shaft cleaner provided with the maintenance cartridge.



Note

- Remove the cap from a new shaft cleaner and attach it to the used shaft cleaner, place the used shaft cleaner in its box, place it in the original box with the used maintenance cartridge, and dispose of them together.

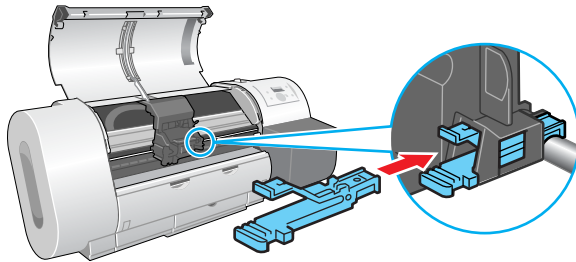
Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menu

Contents

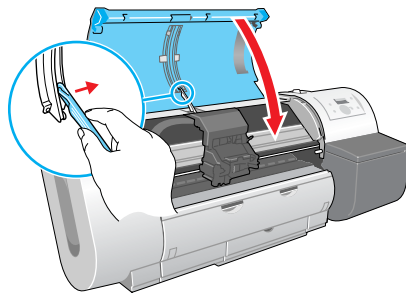
Index

6 Install the new shaft cleaner into the carriage.

Push in the shaft cleaner until you hear it catch.



7 Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



The carriage returns to the home position and the printer enters the **Online** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

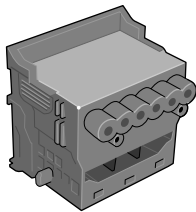
Contents

Index

Replacing the Printhead

Replace the printhead if two consecutive Head Cleaning B executions do not restore acceptable print quality, if **ERROR E02813** is displayed, or if a customer service center instructs you to replace the printhead. You can easily stain your hands during printhead replacement, so wear the plastic gloves provided in the box with the new printhead.

- Printhead BC-1350



Note

- When the ink supply runs low in an ink tank, procure a new ink tank for replacement as soon as possible.

Printhead Handling Precautions

Always follow these precautions when handling a printhead.



Caution

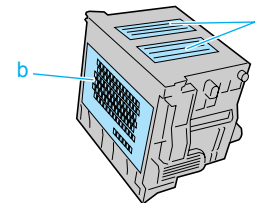
- Always store a printhead in a safe location where it is out of the reach of small children. If a child licks or ingests ink accidentally, seek medical assistance immediately.

- Never touch a printhead immediately after printing has stopped. A printhead becomes extremely hot during printing and can cause minor burns.



Important

- Try to avoid dropping or shaking a printhead. Spilled ink can stain the work area.
- The ink supply port of a removed printhead may be covered with ink. Always handle a printhead carefully. The ink could spill on your clothing and make stains that cannot be removed.
- Never break the seal on a printhead package until immediately before you install the printhead. Always handle a printhead carefully after breaking its seal. If a printhead is stored with its seal broken this can cause the nozzles to dry and lead to poor print quality.
- If you need to store a printhead temporarily, set it with its nozzles (a) and electrical contact points (b) pointing down. Damage to the nozzles or electrical contacts can lead to poor print quality.



- Never attempt to disassemble or alter a printhead. This could damage the printer.
- Never touch the nozzles (a) or the electrical contacts (b) on the printhead. This could cause poor paper feed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

How to Replace the Printhead

To replace the printhead, execute **Replace P.head** on the **Maintenance** menu then follow the messages on the printer operation panel display to perform the procedure. Before you adjust the position of the printhead after replacing it, make sure a roll or cut sheets A3 (L) size or wider is loaded in the printer.

- Remove printed and other media from the platen.
- Clean the paper pressure plate. (→ P.4-14)
- Execute **Replace P.head**
- After ink has drained from the printhead, remove it.
- Install the new printhead.

Important

- Always follow the prescribed procedure to replace a printhead. If you fail to follow the prescribed procedure, this could cause the printhead to leak ink that will stain the printer and the work area.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

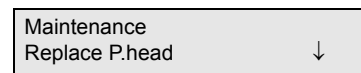
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



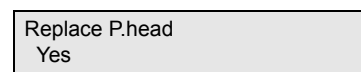
- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Maintenance**, then press [▼].



- 4 Select **Replace P.head** then press [▼].



- 5 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.



Printhead replacement processing starts when you see **Please Wait..** displayed. The processing requires about 3 minutes to complete.

When preparation is finished, **Open UpperCover** is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

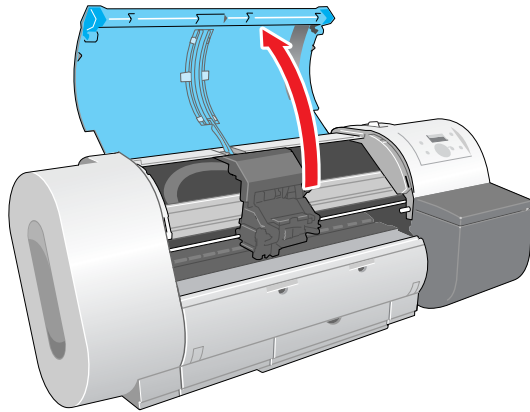
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menu

Contents

Index

6 Open the upper cover.

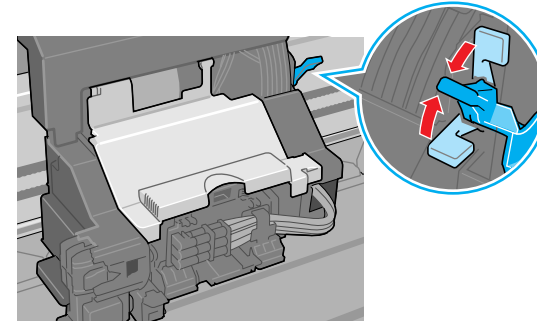


Rep. P.head OK is displayed on the printer operation panel.

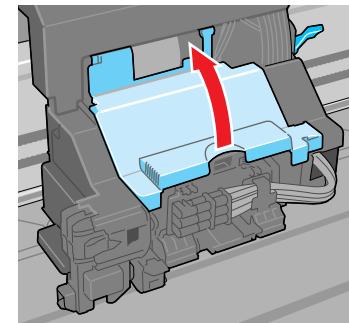
Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.
- Before you start the procedure, wring out a damp cloth and clean the carriage cover, printhead cover, and printhead lock lever if they are dirty.

7 If the printhead adjustment lever is in either the high or low position, return it to the center (normal) position, then raise the carriage cover completely.



8 Raise the carriage cover so it is completely open.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

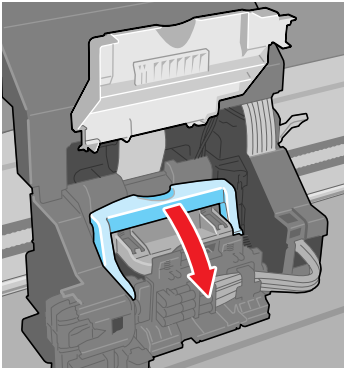
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

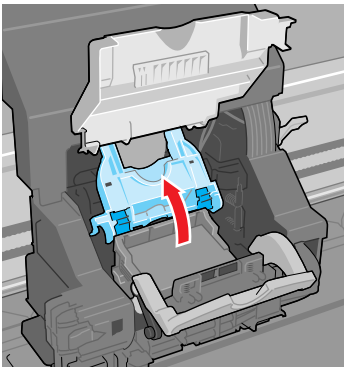
Contents

Index

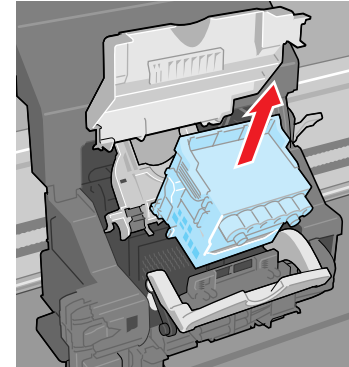
- 9** Pull the printhead lock lever completely forward to open it.



- 10** Raise the printhead lock cover completely to open it.



- 11** Remove the old printhead.



⚠ Caution

- If you are going to replace the printhead immediately after printing, wait a few minutes before performing the replacement. The metal components of the printhead may be hot immediately after printing, and touching these parts could cause a minor burn.

👉 Important

- Never touch the carriage terminal. This could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

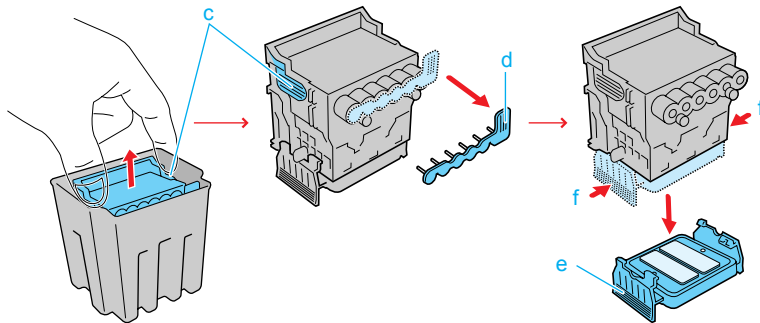
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

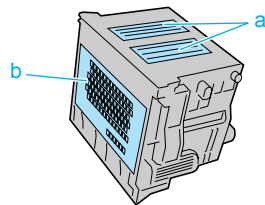
Index

- 12** While holding the new printhead by the grips (c), remove it from its package; remove the orange protective cap 1 (d), then on both sides of protective cap 2 (e), while pressing in both grips (f) as shown, pull down to remove the cap.



Important

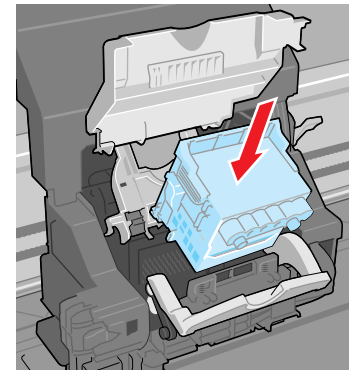
- The inside surface protective cap 2 (e) is covered with ink to protect the nozzles. Do not touch this area of the cap or drop it. Performing so could cause problems.
- When handling the printhead, always hold it by the grips (c) on the left and right sides.
- Never touch the nozzles (a) or the electrical contacts (b). This could damage the printhead, cause poor print quality, or stain the work area.



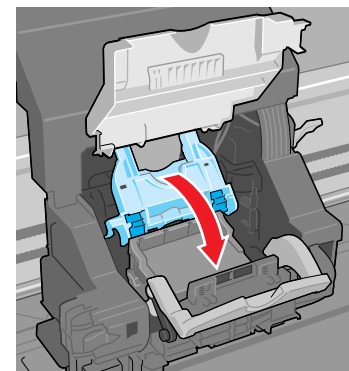
- Never try to re-attach the protective caps or packing material removed from the printhead.

- 13** With the nozzles pointing down and the electrical contacts facing the printer, insert the new printhead into the carriage.

Handle the printhead carefully so its nozzles do not touch the carriage, then press down to ensure that it is installed completely.



- 14** Pull the printhead lever toward you and down to lock the printhead in place.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

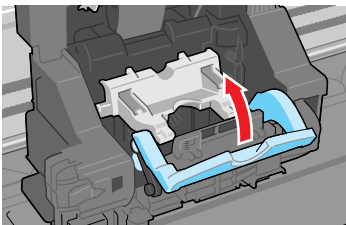
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

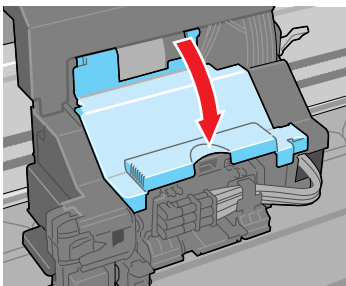
Contents

Index

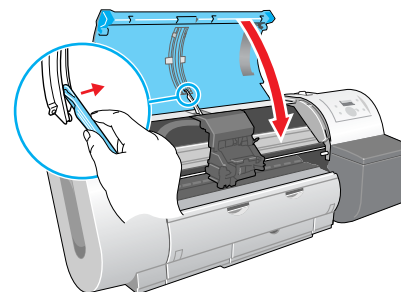
- 15** Push the printhead lever toward the back of the printer and down, then press down until you hear it click and lock.



- 16** Lower the carriage cover and press down until you hear it click and lock.



- 17** Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



As soon as you close the upper cover of the printer, **Please Wait..** is displayed in the bottom line of the display and processing begins. The processing requires about 10 minutes to complete.

As soon as processing is finished, **Advanced Adj.** is displayed and the printhead is adjusted automatically. (→ [P.4-40](#))

Important

- The printhead adjustment does not execute if the **Auto Print** feature on the Main menu is set to **Off**. After replacing the printhead, perform **Advanced Adj.** under **Auto Head Adj.** on the printer operation panel to adjust the printhead automatically. (→ [P.4-40](#))
- The printhead adjustment cannot be performed if the loaded roll paper or cut sheets are not at least A3 (L) size or larger. Printhead adjustment continues as soon as the media is set.
- Never attempt to remove an ink tank when the ink tanks are filling during the installation procedure and immediately after replacing the printhead, or during the printer cleaning operation.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Replacing the Cutter Blade

Follow the procedure below to change the position of a blade that no longer cuts cleanly. The cutting position can be changed twice for one blade. Once the cutting position adjustment dial is set to 3, replace the blade with a new one.

- Cutter Blade CT-02



- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

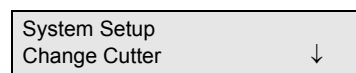
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



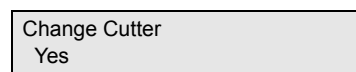
- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to display **System Setup** then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Change Cutter**, then press [▼].



- 5 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.



Carriage Moving appears in the bottom line of the display, and **Open Upper Cover** appears after the carriage moves to the center of the platen.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

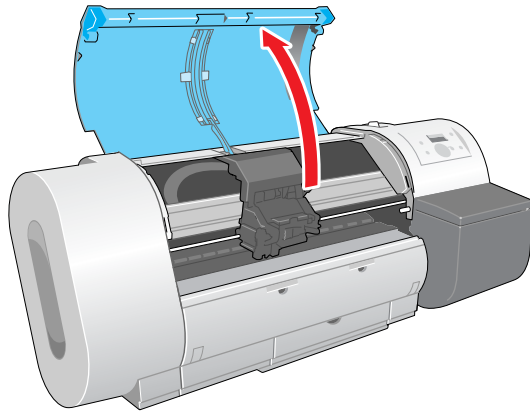
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

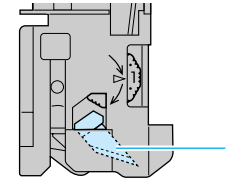
Index

6 Open the upper cover.



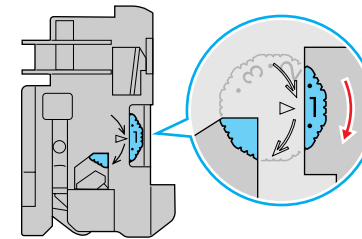
Important

- After removing the cutter blade, never touch the cutting edge (b). This could cause personal injury.



8 Rotate the cutter position adjustment dial 1 notch in the direction shown.

If the dial is already at notch 3 replace the cutter blade with a new one.



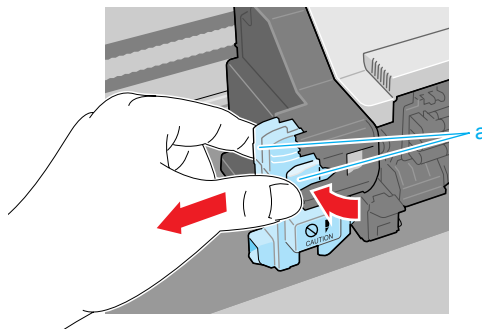
Note

- The position adjustment dial has 3 positions that can be adjusted; the blade can be used at three steps (1, 2, 3). The blade cannot be used with the dial returned to a position.
- Once you have set the cutter blade dial to position 3, procure a new cutter blade for future replacement.

Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.
- If the cutter blade or the carriage is dirty, before you perform the procedure to adjust the operation of the cutter blade, wring out a damp, clean cloth and use it to clean the cutter blade and the carriage.

7 Grasp the cutter blade (a) by the grips then remove it from the carriage.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

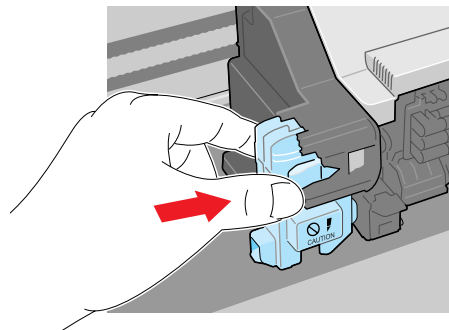
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

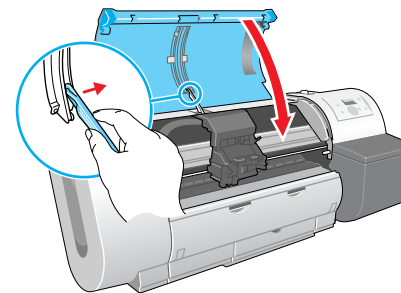
Contents

Index

9 Install the cutter blade back into the carriage.

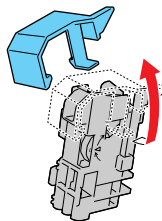


10 Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



Note

- To remove the protective cap from a new cutter blade, turn the cap in the direction of the arrow. Also, you must attach the removed cap to the used cutter blade and discard the used blade in accordance with local laws and regulations.



Please Wait.. appears in the bottom line of the display, the carriage moves, then the **Reset Cut Count** message displays.

11 Once you have set the cutter position dial to **2** or **3** and pressed the **Stop** button and replaced the cutter blade, press the **OK** button.

Reset Cut Count
Press/OK Stop

The printer returns to the **Online** or **Offline** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Transporting the Printer

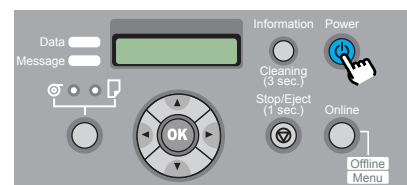
Before you transport the printer, follow the procedure below to prepare the printer for shipping so its internal mechanisms are protected. To pack the printer for transport, refer to the Quick Start Guide and follow the installation procedure in reverse order.

(→ Quick Start Guide)

Important

- Before you move the printer always perform this procedure by executing the **Move Printer** menu and following the instructions on the display. The printer could be damaged if you attempt to move it after disconnecting the power cord before switching off the printer. If you accidentally disconnect the power cord before switching the printer off, reattach the power cord, reinstall the ink tanks, then perform the procedure again from [Step 1](#). (→ Quick Start Guide)
- You cannot execute **Move Printer** once the **MTCart Full Soon** or **Replace MT-Cart** appears. You can execute **Move Printer** after the maintenance cartridge has been replaced.
- Never tilt the printer while you are moving it. This could spill ink inside the printer and foul the work area.
- If you cannot avoid tilting or standing the printer on end in order to move, please contact the dealer where you purchased the printer or the nearest service center.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

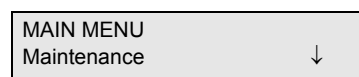


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

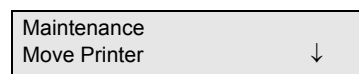
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Maintenance**, then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Move Printer** then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

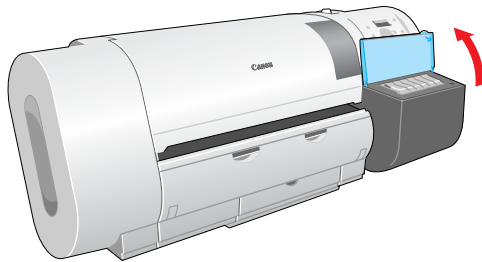
Index

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

Move Printer
Yes

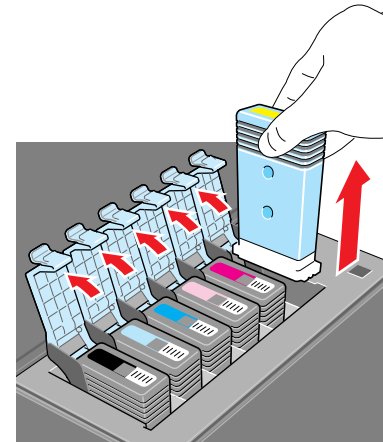
Open RightCover is displayed.

- 6** Open the right cover.



Remove Ink Tank is displayed on the operation panel.

- 7** Open the ink tank covers and remove all of the ink tanks.

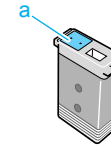


Place each ink tank in a vinyl or plastic bag and seal it.



Note

- Store the removed tanks with the ink supply ports up (a). Ink leaked from ink tanks will stain the work area.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

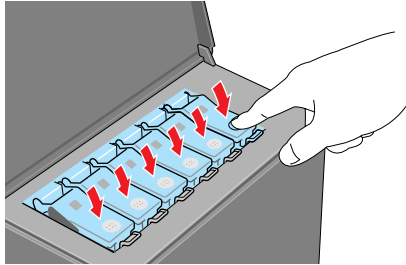
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 8** Close and lock all the ink tank covers and close the right cover.

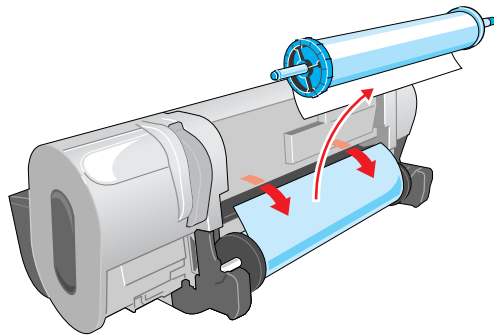


Please Wait.. appears followed by **Ink Draining** while the ink is sucked from inside the tubes. This processing requires about 4 minutes to complete.

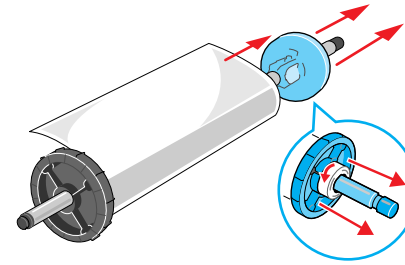
The printer switches off automatically once processing is completed.

- 9** Disconnect the power cord and the interface cable.

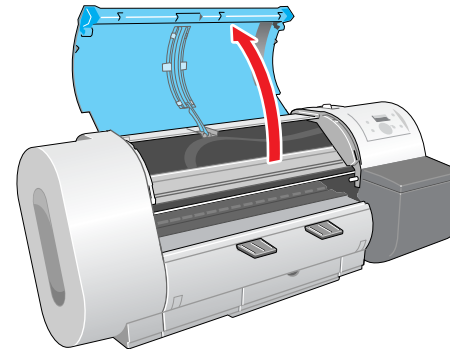
- 10** Remove the roll holder.



- 11** Lower the lever of the holder stopper, remove the stopper, remove the roll from the roll holder, then store the roll holder and the holder stopper.



- 12** Open the upper cover.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. This could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

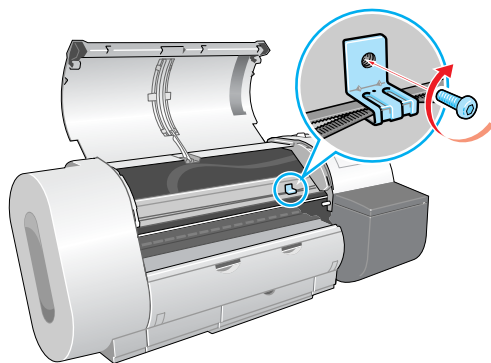
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

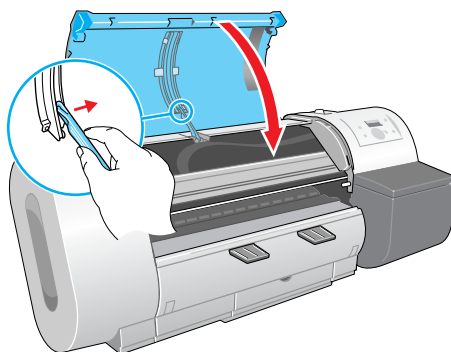
- 13** Clamp the belt with the belt stopper then use the hex wrench to fasten the belt stopper.



Note

- Attach the belt stopper that was removed at installation and stored.

- 14** Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



- 15** Tape each printer cover in the reverse order of tape removal during setup.

- 16** If you are using the optional stand, follow the installation procedure in reverse to remove it.

- 17** Remove the printer in reverse order of setup procedure.

- 18** If you are using the stand, follow the installation procedure in reverse to disassemble it.

- 19** Reattach the tapes and shipping materials to the roll holder and printer, then pack them in the original shipping box.

This completes preparing the printer for moving.

Important

- Follow the procedures in the **Quick Start Guide** to re-install the printer at the new location after moving the printer.
- If you execute **Move Printer** and then unplug the power cord from the power source before switching the printer off, this could damage the printer. Connect the power cord, install the ink tanks, and perform the procedure again from [Step 1](#). (→ Quick Start Guide)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Checking the Condition of the Printer

When you see that the printouts are faded and uneven, or streaked with white lines, print a nozzle check pattern to determine whether the nozzles are blocked. Before you print a nozzle check pattern, make sure roller paper or cut sheets A3 (L) size or wider are loaded in the printer.

 Note

- If you are using cut sheets, make sure at least one sheet of unused A3 paper (not the blank sides of used paper) or larger are set.

1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

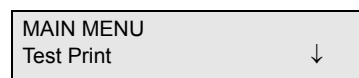


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Test Print** then press [▼].



4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Nozzle Check**, then press **OK** button.



The nozzle check pattern prints. The printer returns to the online mode and displays **Online** in the display as soon as printing completes.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

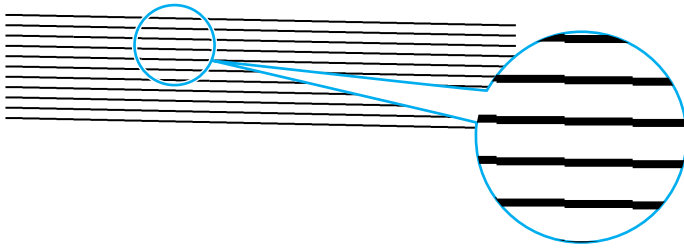
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

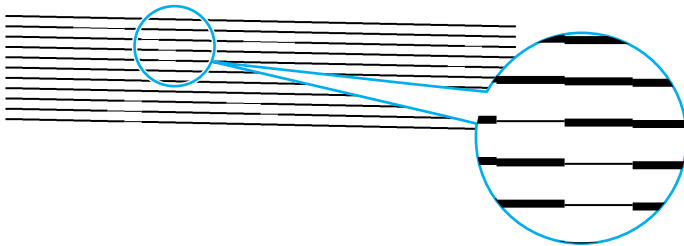
Index

If there are no breaks in the horizontal lines of each color, the nozzle check pattern is normal.

• Sample: Printhead Operation Normal



• Sample: Printhead Operation Not Normal



If any of the lines are broken, perform the following procedure:

1. Execute printhead cleaning. (→ [P.4-38](#))
2. Print the nozzle check pattern again.
3. If the nozzle check patterns are still broken after repeating this procedure several times, call the dealer where you purchased the printer or call the nearest service center.

Cleaning the Printhead

If the nozzles become blocked, cleaning the printhead may recover optimum printer operation.



Note

- When you set **Nozzle Check**, the printer performs a nozzle check and recovery automatically for every page specified for printing. Before shipping a printer, the setting is set for 10 Pages.

Types of Printhead Cleaning

There are two methods for printhead cleaning.

■ Head Cleaning A:

Execute when printing appears uneven, or when the printhead is dirty. This cleaning method consumes the least amount of ink. **Head Cleaning A** requires about 1 minute.

■ Head Cleaning B:

Perform this cleaning if no ink is coming out of the print-head or if **Head Cleaning A** did not correct the problem. **Head Cleaning B** requires about 3 minutes.

Printhead Cleaning Procedures

Follow this procedure to clean the printhead. The procedure is almost the same for each cleaning method.

If one execution of **Head Cleaning A** does not correct the problem, perform **Head Cleaning B**. If **Head Cleaning B** does not correct the problem, repeat **Head Cleaning B** two or three times. If the printer operation does not recover after performing **Head Cleaning B**, the printhead may be at the end of its service life. Call for service or contact the dealer where you purchased the printer. (→ P.4-23)



Note

- You can execute **Head Cleaning A** by holding down the **Information** button for more than three seconds.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

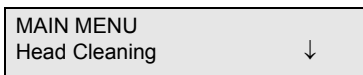
Contents

Index

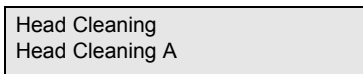
- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3** Select **Head Cleaning** then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the printhead cleaning method then press **OK** button.



Printhead cleaning starts. When printhead cleaning is finished, the printer returns **Online**.

- 5** Print the nozzle check pattern to determine if printing has been recovered. (→ [P.4-36](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Aligning the Printhead



If printed vertical lines are bent, or if the colors are faded and uneven, perform the printhead position adjustment. The printer will adjust the position of the printhead automatically as it reads the pattern used to adjust the position of the printhead. Before you adjust the position of the printhead, make sure a roll or cut sheets A3 (L) size or wider are loaded in the printer.

Use the following procedure to adjust the position of the printhead.

Note

- When you adjust the printhead, you should use the media of the type (other than film) that you use most frequently.
- If you are using cut sheets, make sure at least one sheet of unused A3 paper (not the blank sides of used paper) or larger are set.

Aligning Printhead Procedure

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the Power button to switch the printer on.

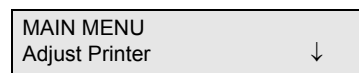


Within a short time, Online or Offline is displayed.

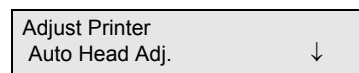
- 2** Press the Online button to display MAIN MENU.



- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Adjust Printer, then press [▼].



- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Auto Head Adj., then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

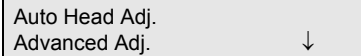
Contents

Index

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Advanced Adj. or Standard Adj., then press [▼].


Advanced Adj. adjusts the gaps between the even and odd numbered nozzles, the color boundaries, and print direction boundaries.

Standard Adj. adjusts only the print direction boundaries.



Auto Head Adj.
Advanced Adj. ↓

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to select Yes, then press OK button.



Advanced Adj.
Yes

As the printhead adjustment pattern prints, the printer reads the pattern and automatically adjusts the settings for position of the printhead.

After the printhead adjustment is finished, Online appears in the printer operation display.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Adjusting Amount of Media Feed



Perform the procedure below to perform **Adjust Band** to adjust the amount of line feed if you see white lines or dark color lines in your printed images. As the band adjustment pattern prints, the printer reads the results of the print and automatically adjusts the settings of the amount of line feed for the media currently loaded in the printer. Before you perform the band adjustment, make sure a roll or cut sheet A3 (L) size or wider is loaded in the printer.

Important

- Before you adjust line feed, you must use the operation panel to select media type for the paper loaded for printing. If the value of the media type selection does not match the paper loaded for printing, you will not achieve good print results and the quality of the printing will be poor.
- Select **Feed Priority > Band Joint** in order to perform **Adjust Band**.

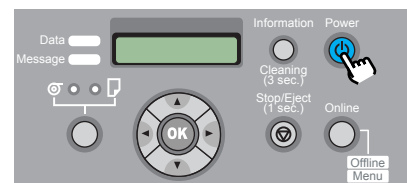
Note

- If you are using cut sheets, make sure at least one sheet of unused A3 paper (not the blank sides of used paper) or larger are set.

- There is no automatic adjustment for highly transparent film. Execute **Fine Tuning** to perform the adjustment with manual entry. (→ P.4-43)

Media Feed Adjustment Procedure

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer**, then press [▼].

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Band**, then press [▼].

Adjust Printer
Adjust Band ↓

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Standard Adj.**, then press [▼].

Adjust Band
Standard Adj. ↓

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.

Auto Adjustment
Yes

As the band adjustment pattern prints, the printer reads the results of the print and automatically adjusts the settings of the amount of line feed for the media currently loaded in the printer.

After the amount of line feed has been adjusted, the printer returns to the **Online** mode.

Adjusting Line Feed Manually

The line feed can be fine adjusted manually to increase or decrease the amount of feed. Follow the procedure below to perform this adjustment manually.

- 1** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 2** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer**, then press [▼].

MAIN MENU
Adjust Printer ↓

- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Band**, then press [▼].

Adjust Printer
Adjust Band ↓

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Fine Tuning**, then press [▼].

Adjust Band
Fine Tuning ↓

Displays the values of the current settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Press the [◀] or [▶] button to select the desired setting value then press the **OK** button.

If you want to widen the gap between the bands, enter a number from 1 to 3.

If you want to narrow the gap between the bands, enter a number from -1 to -3.

Fine Tuning
=0

The selected setting is prefixed with an equals sign (=) to denote the current setting.

6 Press the **Online** button.



The **Online** lamp lights and the printer is ready to print.

Note

- The value for the amount of feed adjustment can be performed during printing. However, if you change the amount of feed during printing, the print result may be distorted by about 3 cm immediately after the change.
- Adjust in the plus (+) direction if white stripes are visible in the output image, or adjust in the minus (-) direction if dense color stripes are visible.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

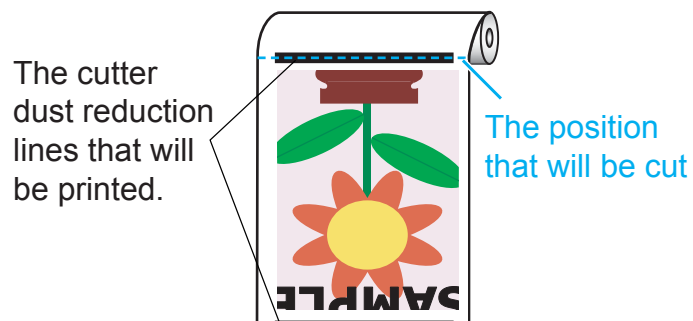
Index

Reducing the Amount of Cutting Dust

When using a media like backlight film that easily creates cutting dust you can perform the setting to reduce the amount of cutter waste that can cause a deterioration in the quality of printing or damage the printhead. The cutter dust reduction function can be set for each media type.

(→ P.1-21)

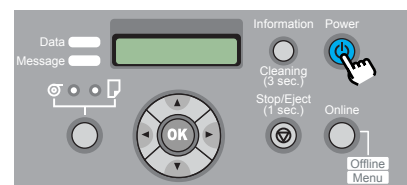
If you set the cutter dust reduction function, black lines will print at the leading edge and trailing edge of the printed sheets.



Important

- Do not use this function for plain paper, thin paper, or any other media that buckles easily. This type of media may not cut properly and cause paper jams.
- Borderless printing cannot be performed with the cutter dust reduction feature is set. In order to perform borderless printing, you must switch the cutter dust reduction function off.

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

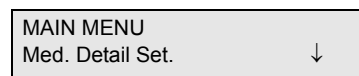


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

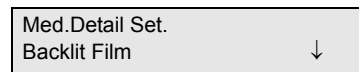
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Med.Detail Set.**, then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select the name of the media type then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

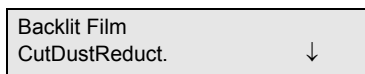
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

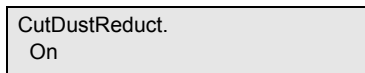
Index

5 Press [◀] or [▶] to display **CutDustReduct.** then press [▼].



6 Press [◀] or [▶] to select a value for the setting then press **OK** button.

To switch the cutter dust reduction function on for the selected media type, select **On** or to release the function for the media type select **Off**.



The selection is prefixed with an equals sign (=) to denote that the cut waste reduction function is selected.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

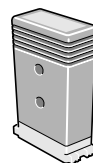
Contents

Index

Changing the Black Ink Type

This printer employs two types of black ink, either Photo Black Ink or Matte Black Ink, to best match the media type and the requirements of the print job. For more details about the types of black ink, please refer to [Chapter 2 “The Suitable Black Ink for Media”](#). (→ [P.2-2](#))

- Photo Black Ink Tank BCI-1431BK
- Matte Black Ink Tank BCI-145IMBK



Follow this procedure to switch the type of black ink.

- ▼ Remove printed and other media from the platen.
- ▼ On the operation panel perform **ChangeBkInkType**.
- ▼ After the processing to drain the ink is finished, remove the black ink tank.
- ▼ Install the black ink that you want to use.
- ▼ Confirm the installed ink tank.
- ▼ Aligning the Printhead

Important

- When you execute **ChangeBkInkType**, the printer consumes about 45 ml of black ink and about 15 ml of the colored inks in total. Before you change the ink tanks, confirm that there is sufficient ink in the tank. It is recommended that you use a new ink tank whenever possible. (→ [P.4-2](#))
- The Photo Black and Matte Black ink tanks cannot be installed at the same time.
- You cannot execute **ChangeBkInkType** once the **MTCart Full Soon** or **Replace MT-Cart** appears. You can execute **ChangeBkInkType** after the maintenance cartridge has been replaced.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Black Ink Tank Exchange Procedure

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

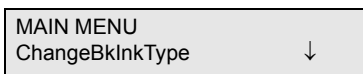


Within a short time, **Online** or **Offline** is displayed.

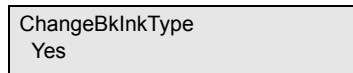
- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **ChangeBkInkType**, then press [▼].



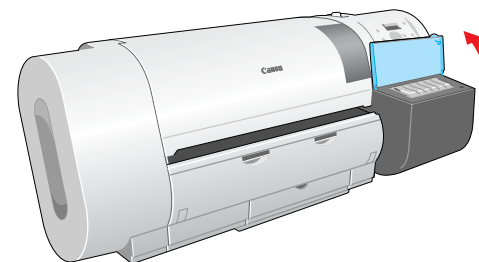
- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK** button.



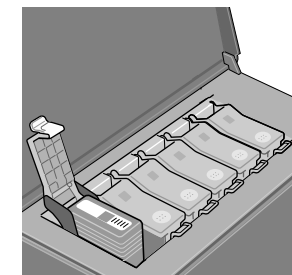
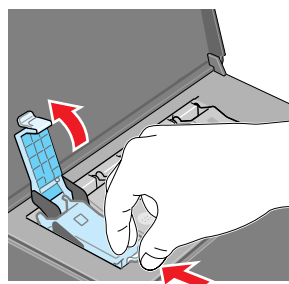
The black ink drains while the **Please Wait...** message is displayed. The draining requires about 1 minute to complete.

As soon as processing is completed, the **Open RightCover** message is displayed.

- 5 Open the right cover.



- 6 Press down on the lever of the black ink tank and open the ink tank cover.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

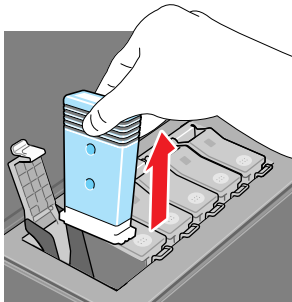
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

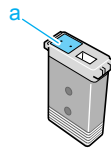
7 Hold the black ink tank by the grips and remove it.



Place each ink tank in a vinyl or plastic bag and seal it.

Important

- If ink remains in a removed ink tank, store the ink tank with the ink supply port (a) pointing up. Ink leaked from ink tanks will stain the work area.



8 With the black ink tank that you are going to use still in its bag, slowly rotate it 7 or 8 times then remove from the bag.

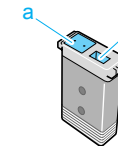


Important

- Always hold an ink tank by its left and right grips (b) while you are handling it.



- Never touch the ink supply port (a) or the terminal (c). This could damage the ink tank, cause poor print quality, or stain the work area.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

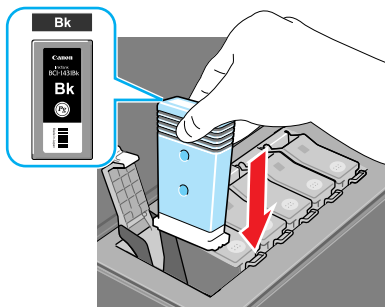
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

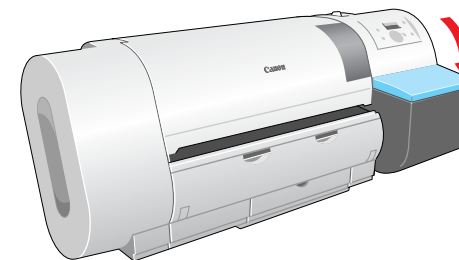
Contents

Index

9 With the ink supply port facing down and the label facing front as shown, insert the black ink tank into its holder.



11 Close the right cover.

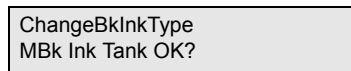


The name of the ink tank type you just set is displayed.

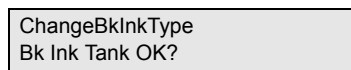
12 Confirm that the ink type is correct then press **OK** button.

If the ink type display is incorrect press **Stop**, open the right cover, and replace the black ink tank.

- For a matte black ink tank:



- For a photo black ink tank:



The operation panel displays **Ink Filling..** while the ink fills. Ink filling requires about 15 minutes.

When the procedure is finished, the printer returns **Online**.

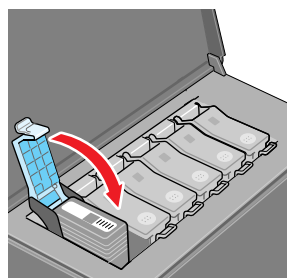
13 Align the printhead.

(→ [P.4-40](#))

Important

- The ink tanks are shaped so the cover will not close if you set the wrong ink tank in a holder. If the ink tank cover does not close, confirm that the color label on the holder matches the color of the ink tank, and make sure that ink tank is facing the proper direction.

10 Close the ink tank cover until you hear it catch.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Before Using the Printer	5-2
Required System Environment	5-2
The Network Environment	5-3
TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)	5-5
Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network	5-5
Connecting the LAN Cable	5-5
Setting the Printer IP Address	5-7
Performing the TCP/IP Protocol Settings	5-15
Setting the Printer for Sharing	5-18
Macintosh Network Settings	5-20
Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network	5-20
Setting a Macintosh	5-21
Setting AppleTalk Protocol	5-25
Install the Printer Driver	5-31
NetWare Settings (Windows)	5-33
Procedures Required for a NetWare Network	5-33
Setting the Printer Frame Type	5-34
Setting Up a NetWare Print Service	5-37
Setting NetWare Protocol	5-40
Setting the Computer for NetWare	5-44
Printing with UNIX	5-45
Using LPD to Print	5-45
Using FTP to Print	5-46
Initializing the Settings	5-47
List of Network Settings	5-48
Software Applications that can be used for Network Settings	5-51

- Chapter 1
Basic Procedures
- Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media
- Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives
- Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer
- Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment
- Chapter 6
Troubleshooting
- Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

→ Before clicking the **Start Print** button

Before Using the Printer

This section describes some points that you should know about checking the compatibility of network environments or the network that you are using before you use the optional network interface expansion board. For more details about the network settings, we recommend that you consult your network administrator.

Required System Environment

This section describes the system environments that are supported by the network interface of the printer. The lists below describe the system environments required to support the network in use.

■ Using a TCP/IP Network for Printing

- Compatible Operating Systems:
 - Windows Server 2003
 - Windows XP
 - Windows 2000
 - Windows NT 4.0
 - Windows Me, Windows 98
 - Mac OS 8.6 or later
 - Mac OS X v10.1 or later
 - Solaris Version 9
 - Red Hat Linux 9
- Compatible Computer
 - IBM PC or IBM compatible PC
 - A Macintosh Series computer equipped with a Power PC processor
 - Sun Microsystems SPARC platform computer

Note

- If you are using Windows NT 4.0, install Service Pack 6 or later.
- If you are using Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later, you can use the Mac OS Zeroconf function to connect. (Also, if you are using Mac OS 8.6, 9.x with the Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver for Macintosh installed, you can also use the Zeroconf function to connect the printer.)

■ Using an AppleTalk Network for Printing

- Compatible Computer
 - A Macintosh Series computer equipped with a Power PC processor.
- Compatible Operating Systems
 - Mac OS 8.6 or later
 - Mac OS X v10.1 or later
- Compatible AppleTalk
 - EtherTalk Phase 2
- Required Memory
 - 24 MB or more for Mac OS 8.6, 32 MB or more for Mac OS 9.x
 - 128 MB or more is required for Mac OS X.

Note

- This printer is not compatible with a Macintosh LocalTalk Network.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Using a NetWare Network for Printing

- Compatible Server
 - Novell NetWare Version 4.2/5.1/6.0
- Compatible Clients
 - Windows XP Professional
 - Windows 2000 Server
 - Windows 2000 Professional
 - Windows NT Server 4.0
 - Windows NT Workstation 4.0
 - Windows Me, Windows 98
- Compatible Computer
 - IBM PC or IBM compatible PC



Note

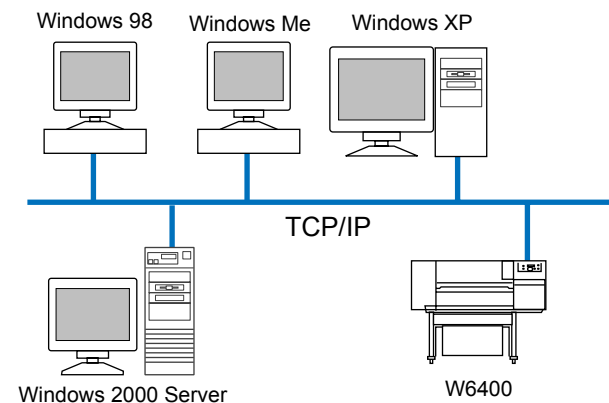
- NetWare Version 6.0 iPrint is not supported.

The Network Environment

Use the diagrams as reference to determine the type of network where the printer is connected, and then follow the required procedure.

● Windows Network Examples

If you are using Windows network, you can use TCP/IP as the protocol. (→ [P.5-5](#))



Note

- When you perform the settings for a TCP/IP network on a Windows computer, each computer can send print jobs directly to the printer connected to the network and have them print. Also, if a print server is set up for Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT, each printer can send print jobs to the print server, the print server can manage these jobs, and then send them directly to the printer on the network. This greatly increases the efficiency of job execution. For more details about print server settings, please refer to “[Setting the Printer for Sharing](#)”. (→ [P.5-18](#))
- The NetBIOS protocol cannot be used with this printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

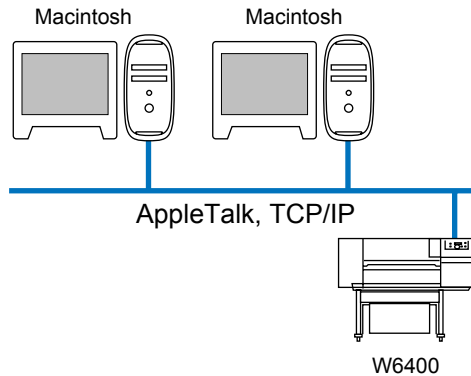
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

● Macintosh Network Examples

For a Macintosh computer, the AppleTalk (EtherTalk) or TCP/IP, or Zeroconf (Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later) protocol is used. (→ [P.5-20](#))

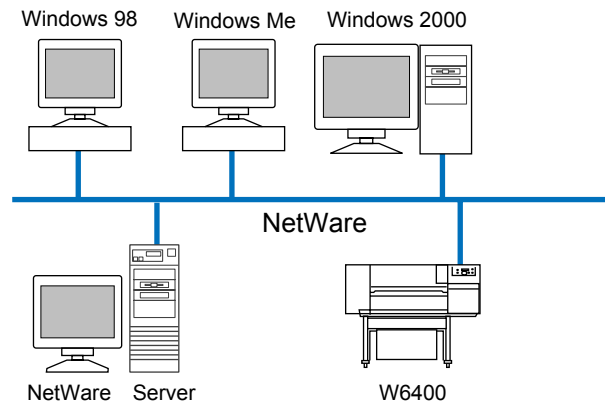


Note

- The TCP/IP and AppleTalk protocols can be used together even in a NetWare server network environment. In such a case, be sure to set which protocol to use.

● NetWare Network Examples

The NetWare protocol is used for printing in the network environment shown in the illustration below. The NetWare client software must be installed on every Server and Client computer. (→ [P.5-33](#))



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)

This chapter describes the setting methods and procedures for connecting the printer to a TCP/IP network.

Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network

Here is a summary of the procedures required to set the printer for use on a TCP/IP network.

The following procedure should be performed by the network system administrator.

1 Installing the network interface board → Quick Start Guide

First, install the optional network interface board

2 [Connecting the LAN Cable](#) → P.5-5

Connect the LAN port to the HUB with the LAN cable.

3 [Setting the Printer IP Address](#) → P.5-7

Set an IP address that will allow the printer to communicate with the computer that you want to use. Use either of the utilities below to perform this setting.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (Canon software application provided with the printer.)
- ARP/PING Command
- Printer operation panel

4 Install the Printer Driver → Quick Start Guide

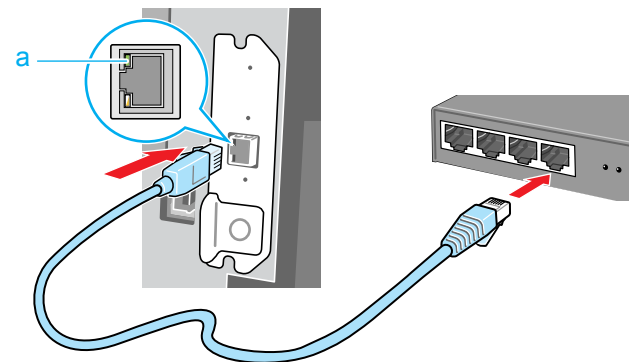
Install the Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver for either Windows or Macintosh (OS X). Follow the procedure on the Quick Start Guide to install the printer driver. There is no printer driver for UNIX.

5 [Performing the TCP/IP Protocol Settings](#) → P.5-15

Performing the TCP/IP protocol settings according to you needs as required. You can use the Web Browser to perform these settings from your computer.

Connecting the LAN Cable

- 1 Use a LAN cable to connect the printer LAN port to the HUB port.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

2 Use a LAN cable to connect the computer LAN port to the HUB port.



Note

- When this printer is connected to and used on a network, switch the printer on then check the LINK lamp (a) to confirm that it lights and remains on. This lamp lights green with a 100-Base-TX connection and lights yellow for a 10-BaseT connection.
- If the LINK lamp does not light, check the following points:
 - Is the HUB switched on?
If the HUB is switched off, switch it on.
 - Is the LAN cable connected correctly?
Confirm that the LAN cable connectors are clicked and locked in place correctly.
 - Is the LAN cable defective?
Connect another LAN cable and visually check the lamp again.
 - Is the communication method correct for the HUB?
If the communication method (mode and speed) set for the printer and the HUB with auto recognition do not match, follow the procedure below to perform the connection settings manually.
 1. Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
 2. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].
 3. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Ethernet Driver** then press [▼].
 4. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Auto Detect** then press [▼].

5. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Off**, then press **OK** button.
6. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Comm. Mode** then press [▼].
7. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Half Duplex** or **Full Duplex** then press **OK** button.
8. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Ethernet Type** then press [▼].
9. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **10 Base-T** or **100 Base-TX** then press **OK** button.
10. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Spanning Tree** then press [▼].
11. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Not Use** or **Use** then press **OK** button.
12. Press [▲] twice to display **Store Setting** then press [▼].
13. Press the **OK** button.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Setting the Printer IP Address

Before setting the printer protocol, you must set the IP address to enable communication between the printer and the computer. Use either of the utilities below to perform this setting. Use whichever is easiest to perform the settings.

● GARO Device Setup Utility (→ P.5-7)

Use this software utility to perform the computer settings if you are using a Windows computer. Perform the subnets mask and default gateway settings with the Remote UI.

● ARP/PING Command (→ P.5-10)

Use this command to perform the printer IP address setting on the command prompt screen. Performing the subnets mask and default gateway settings with the Remote UI.

● Printer Operation Panel (→ P.5-12)

To connect a Macintosh via an AppleTalk connection, perform the settings on the printer operation panel. However, you can print without performing the printer network settings if you use the Zeroconf function (**IP Print (Auto)**) with Max OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later to connect the printer.

Important

- Before setting the IP address, confirm that the printer is switched on and connected to the network.

■ Setting the frame type with GARO Device Setup Utility

If you are using Windows, use the **GARO Device Setup Utility**, the software utility provided with the printer, to perform the printer network settings.

● Installing GARO Device Setup Utility

Important

- If you are using Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, you must log in as a member of the Administrators group.

1 Mount the provided User Software CD-ROM in the computer CD-ROM drive.

Setup Menu window appears.

Note

- If the AutoPlay function is switched off, double-click the **My Computer** icon on the desktop, click the **CD-ROM drive** icon, and then from the **File** menu select **AutoPlay**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

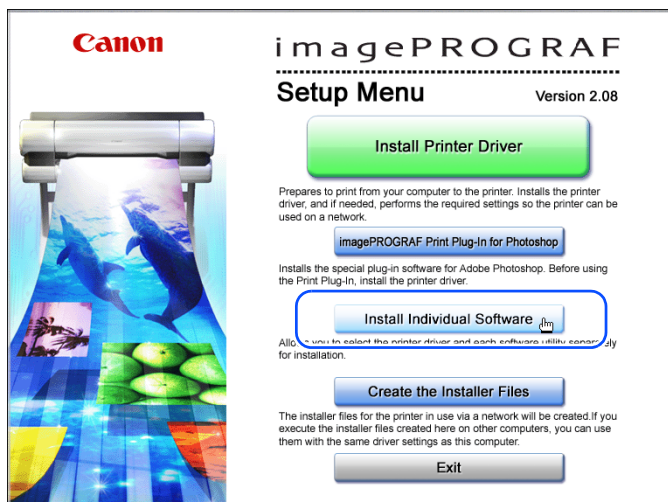
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

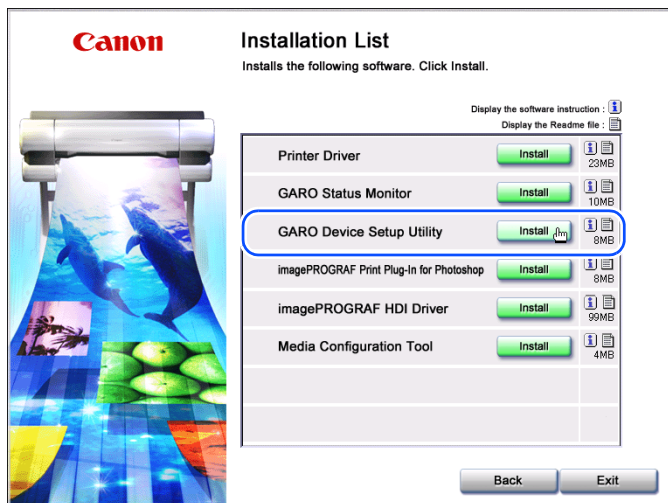
Contents

Index

2 Click the **Install Individual Software** button.



3 Click the **Install** button of the **GARO Device Setup Utility**.

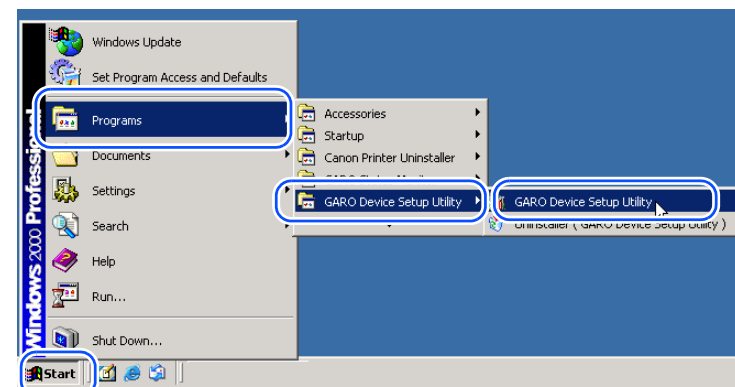


4 Follow the instructions on the screen.

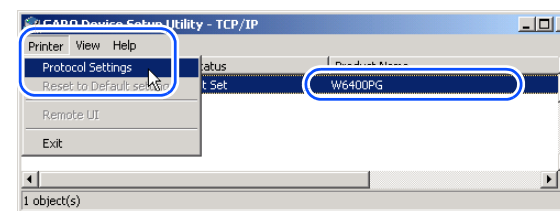
This completes the installation of the GARO Device Setup Utility.

● **Setting Network Information**

1 On the desktop, click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, then select **GARO Device Setup Utility > GARO Device Setup Utility**.



2 Select the name of the printer you want to set from the list of printer names, then select **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

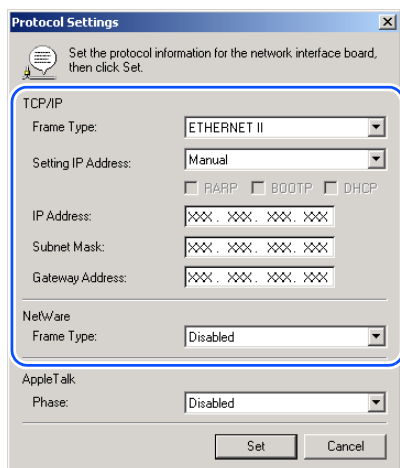
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

3 Enter the **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, and **Gateway Address** assigned to the printer and click the **Set** button.

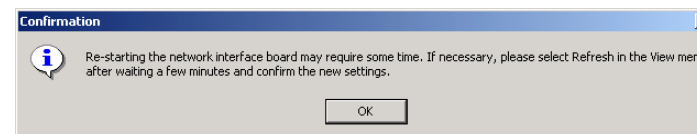
If the IP address is set automatically, select **Automatic** for the **Setting IP Address**, then click the check boxes for **DHCP**, **BOOTP**, or **RARP** for the features you want to use. To specify a fixed IP address, select **Manual** for the **Setting IP Address**.



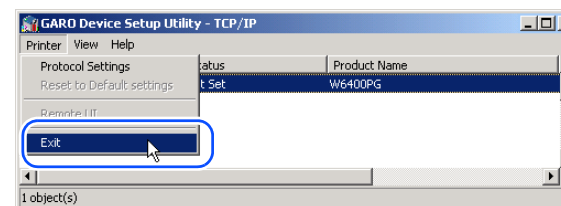
The printer is shipped from the factory with **AppleTalk** and **NetWare** disabled for use. When printing via **AppleTalk**, select **Phase2** for **AppleTalk Phase**.

When printing with NetWare, select the frame type in use for **NetWare Frame Type**.

4 Click the **OK** button when the confirmation message is displayed.



5 When you are finished performing the settings, select **Exit** from the **Printer** menu.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Setting with the ARP/PING Command

To perform the setting with the ARP/PING command, you need the MAC address of the printer. The MAC address can be found printed on the status print or on the seal attached to the expansion board, or on the **Information** menu displayed on the printer operation panel.

● Checking the Printer MAC Address

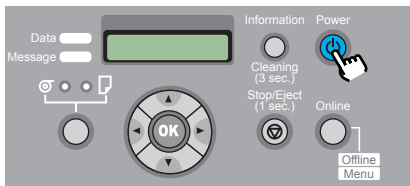
Perform the procedure below to print a **Status Print** so you can check the MAC address. Before printing, set a roll of media larger than A3.



Note

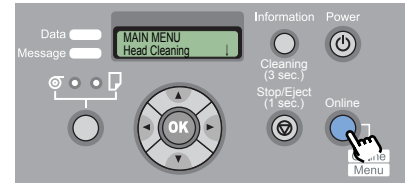
- The MAC address can be found printed on the nozzle check pattern or the printhead adjustment pattern, or on the printer operation panel: **MAIN MENU > Information > MAC Address.**

- 1 If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

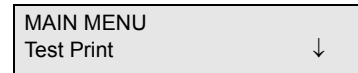


After a few moments, **Online** appears in the display.

- 2 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



- 3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Test Print** then press [▼].



- 4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Status Print**, then press **OK** button.



The information about the printer settings is printed. After the nozzle check pattern has printed **Online** is displayed in the operation panel and the printer is ready to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

The MAC Address is printed in the Status Print at the location indicated in the sample below.

```

Canon imagePROGRAF W6400PG Status Print
S/C:Ver.00.XX S/BOOT:Ver.00.XX
E/C:Ver.00.XX E/Rel:Ver.0001 E/BOOT:Ver.1.XX
BK:80% C:80% M:80% Y:80% PC:80% PM:80% MC:72

Media Type : Plain Paper
Adjust Printer
Head Adjust
Auto Print : On
A1:0 A2:0 A3:0 A4:0 A5:0 A6:0
B1:0 B2:0 B3:0 B4:0 B5:0 B6:0
C2:0 C3:0 C4:0 C5:0 C6:0
D2:0 D3:0 D4:0 D5:0 D6:0
E2:0 E3:0 E4:0
Zone : *
Ethernet Driver
Auto : Off
Type : Full Duplex
Speed : 100BaseTx
Spanning Tree : No
MAC Address : 000085XXXXXX
System Setup
Warning
Buzzer : On
Head Ht. : On
Media : On
Cutter : Enable
Keep Media Size : On
Chk Remain Roll : Off
Nozzle Check : 10pages
Stop Ink Check : Off Off Off Off Off Off
Sleep Timer : 15min.
Length unit : meter
Language : ｶﾀｶﾅ
Information
RAM : 64MB
Ext. Interface : LAN
Error Log 01:E00000 02:E00000 03:E00000 04:E00000 05:E00000
Counter
Cutter : 20

```

● Setting the IP Address

- 1 If you are using a Windows computer, start from the MS-DOS prompt or the command prompt.

If you are using UNIX or Linux, open the Console screen.

- 2 Execute the following commands to add static entries to the arp table.

```
arp -s <IP Address> <MAC Address>
```

IP Address:

Specify the IP address assigned to the printer. Enter the 4-digit numbers (decimal number 0 to 255) using periods (.) as delimiters. Confirm the allocated address with the network system administrator.

MAC Address:

Specify the fixed MAC address of the printer. 2 digits for each column, using hyphens as delimiters.

Entry Sample:

```
arp -s XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX 00-00-85-XX-XX-XX
```

3 Execute the following commands to set the IP address for the printer.

```
ping <IP Address> -l 479
```

IP address:

Specify the same IP address used in [Step 2](#).

Entry Sample:

```
ping XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX -l 479
```

(For Windows)

```
ping -s 479 XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX
```

(For Red Hat Linux)

```
ping -s XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX 479
```

(For Solarius)



Note

- The “l” of the “-l” entry is an alphabetic lower case “l” (el).
- The subnet mask and gateway address are set to “0.0.0.0”.

After completing the above settings, use the Remote UI or the printer operation panel to perform the subnet mask and gateway address settings for your network. (→ [P.5-12](#), [P.5-15](#))

This completes the preparation for printer protocol settings.

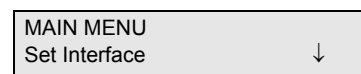
■ Setting with the Printer Operation Panel

The network information can be set up on the printer operation panel. Enter the settings for the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway.

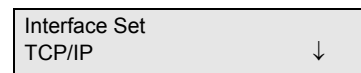
1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].



3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **TCP/IP**, then press [▼].



4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **IP Setting**, then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **IP Address**, then press [▼].

IP Setting IP Address	↓
--------------------------	---

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to change the number setting of the IP address, then press the **OK** button.

IP Address =0.0.0.0

- 7** To enter the IP address allocated for the printer, press [◀] or [▶] to change the number, then press [▼] or the **OK** button.

The selected digit increments by 1 every time you press [▶]. However, at **255** the number rolls up to **0**.

The selected digit decrements by 1 every time you press [◀]. However, at **0** the number rolls up to **255**.

IP Address =XXX.0.0.0

- 9** Press [▲] once then press [◀] or [▶] to select **Subnet Mask** then press [▼].

IP Setting Subnet Mask	↓
---------------------------	---

- 10** Press [◀] or [▶] to change the number setting of the subnet mask, then press **OK** button.

Subnet Mask =0.0.0.0

- 11** Press [◀] or [▶] to set the number of the subnet mask in use on the network, then press **OK** button.

The selected digit increments by 1 every time you press [▶]. However, at **255** the number rolls up to **0**.

The selected digit decrements by 1 every time you press [◀]. However, at **0** the number rolls up to **255**.

Subnet Mask =XXX.0.0.0

- 12** Repeat [Steps 10](#) to [11](#) to enter the subnet mask that the network is using.

Subnet Mask =255.255.255.0

Enter the default gateway.

Note

- If you press and hold the [◀] or [▶] button, the value increases or decreases in steps of 10

- 8** Repeat [Steps 6](#) to [7](#) to enter the IP address assigned to the printer.

IP Address =XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

Enter the subnet mask.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 13** Press [▲] once then press [◀] or [▶] to select **Default G/W** then press [▼].

IP Setting
Default G/W ↓

- 14** Press [◀] or [▶] to change the number setting of the default subnet mask, then press **OK** button.

Default G/W
=0.0.0.0

- 15** To enter the default gateway IP address, press [◀] or [▶] to select the number to change, then press **OK** button.

The selected digit increments by 1 every time you press [▶]. However, at **255** the number rolls up to **0**.

The selected digit decrements by 1 every time you press [◀]. However, at **0** the number rolls up to **255**.

Default G/W
=XXX.0.0.0

- 16** Repeat [Steps 14](#) to [15](#) to enter the default gateway IP address.

Now you are ready to register the IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway setting.

- 17** Press the [▲] button 3 times.

Default G/W
=XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX

Store Setting is displayed.

- 18** Press the **OK** button.

If you want to cancel the setting, press **Stop** button for at least 1 second.

Store Setting
OK?

The printer restarts after **Storing** appears on the display.

When you are finished with the settings, the printer returns **Online**.

If an error occurs, check the settings then set them again.

Important

- If you need to change the IP address, subnet mask, or default gateway, you must perform [Step 18](#) to register the setting. If the setting is not registered, the entered value will not be enabled.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Performing the TCP/IP Protocol Settings

Remote UI, the software application built into the network interface of this printer, allows you to use a Web browser on your computer to monitor the status of the printer and perform the network information settings for the printer.

■ Setting up with a Web Browser (Remote UI)

The procedure below describes how to use Remote UI to perform the network information settings.

Important

- For the Web Browser, use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, or use Internet Explorer 5.01 or later. The Safari web browser for the Macintosh is not compatible.
- The connection cannot be set up through a proxy server. If the network environment employs a proxy server, in the Web Browser proxy server settings add the IP address of the printer to the **Exceptions** (addresses not used by the proxy). (The settings may differ depending on the environment.)
- In the Web Browser perform the settings so JavaScript and cookies can be used.
- If more than one remote UI is being used, then the most recent settings remain enabled. Starting and using only one Remote UI at a time is recommended. Starting and using only one Remote UI at a time is recommended.

Note

- When the Remote UI is running with the printer name, make sure that the DNS settings for the DNS environment and board have been set up correctly.

- 1 Start the Web Browser, enter the following URL for the **Location** or the **Address**, then press the **Enter** key.

`http://<Printer IP Address or name>/`

Entry Sample : `http://xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx/`

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

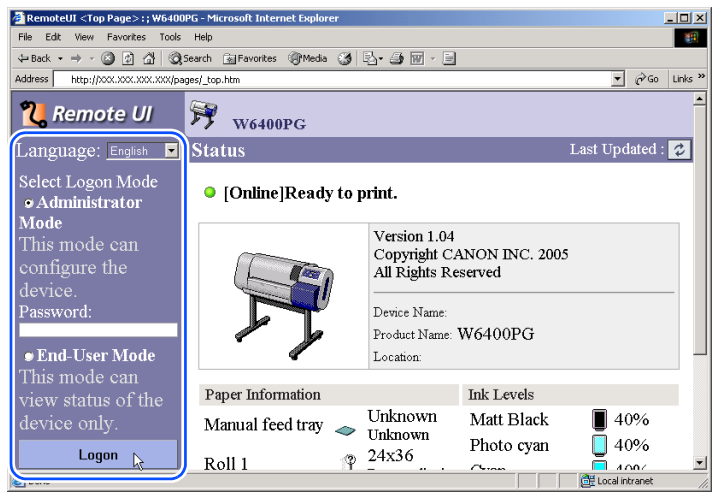
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

2 Click and select **Administrator Mode** then click the **Logon** button.

English is set as the default display language for the Remote UI mode. Select **Administrator Mode**, then click the **Logon** button.

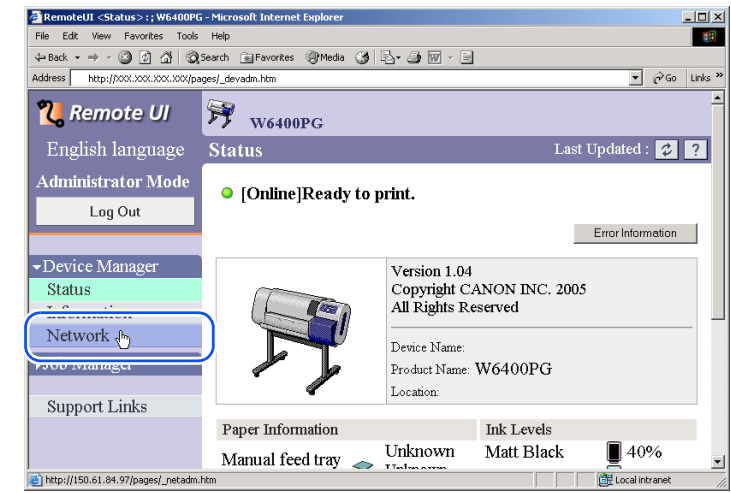


The Remote UI starts.

Note

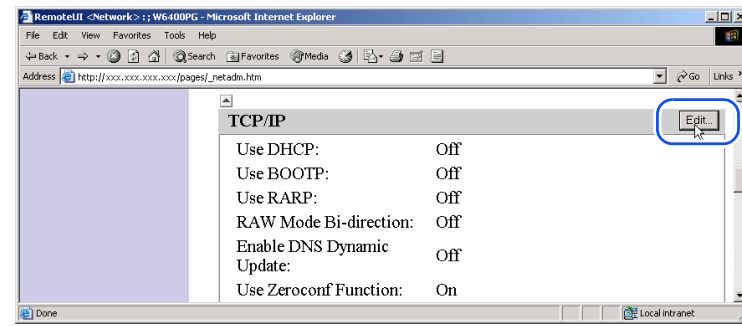
- If a password has been set for the printer, enter the password and then click the **Logon** button. If no password has been set, then no password entry is required.

3 Select **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu on the left.



The **Network** page appears.

4 Click the **Edit...** button to the right of **TCP/IP** protocol.



The **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Settings** page opens.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

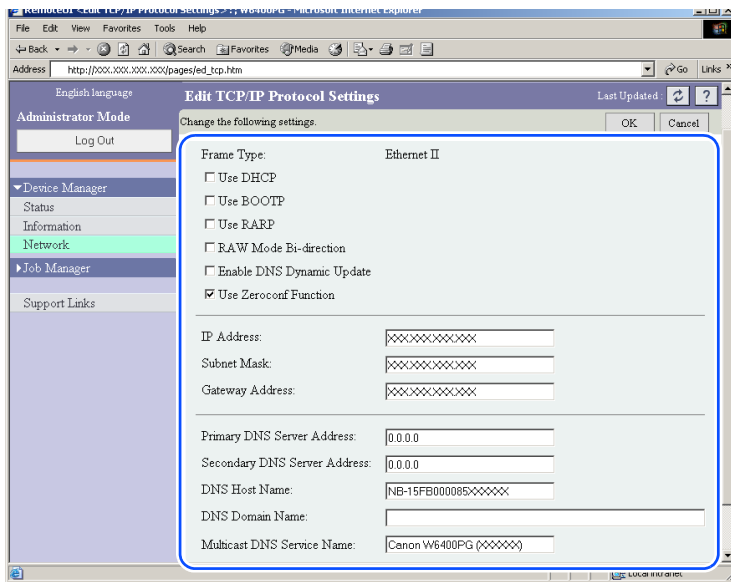
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

5 Perform the settings for each item.



If the IP address is to be acquired automatically, click on the check box for the method to be used: **Use DHCP**, **Use BOOTP**, or **Use RARP**. Remove all three of the checkmarks if you specify the IP address.

Note

- With DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP used to set the IP address setting when the printer starts up, or when it is reset, a query determines whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP can be used, then the first setting method that can be recognized and used to assign the IP address. If the check box for **Use DHCP**, **Use BOOTP**, or **Use RARP** is clicked off, the check is not performed with that function.
If any of the items cannot be used, then the setting for **IP Address** is assigned as the IP address.
- The check to determine whether DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP can be used requires about 1 or 2 minutes to execute. Clicking off the check boxes for a method that cannot be used is recommended.
- When DHCP, BOOTP, or RARP is used to assign the IP address, the server in the network that uses this protocol must be running.
- If you are using a DNS server, click the **Enable DNS Dynamic Update** check box on, and then enter the **Primary DNS Server Address**, **Secondary DNS Server Address**, **DNS Host Name**, and **DNS Domain Name**.
- Enter the text or hyphen (-) for the name of the host in the **DNS Host Name** box (Limit: 63 characters). However, you cannot enter a number or hyphen at the beginning of the name or enter a hyphen at the end of the name.
- Enter characters, hyphens, or periods for the **DNS Domain Name** (Limit: 64 characters). However, you cannot enter a number, hyphen, or period at the beginning of the name or enter a hyphen or period at the end of the name.

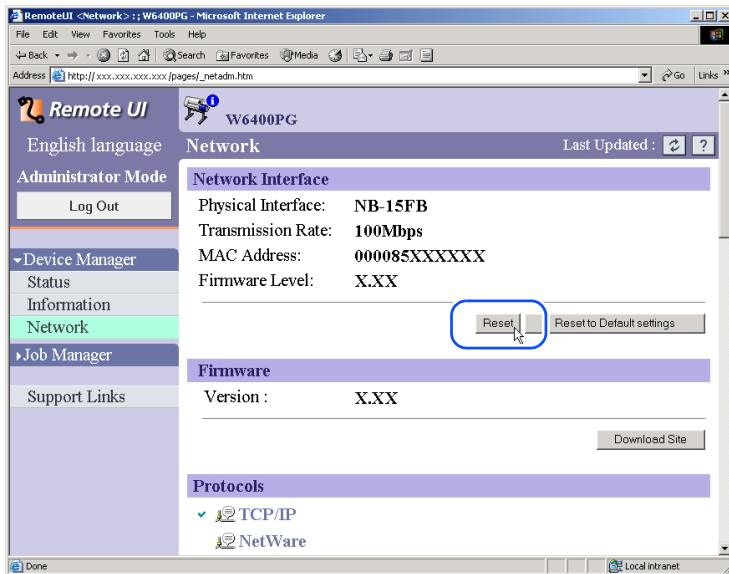
Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

6 Click the **OK** button.

7 When you return to **Network** under **Device Manager**, press the **Reset** button.



The printer network interface restarts and enables the settings.

Setting the Printer for Sharing

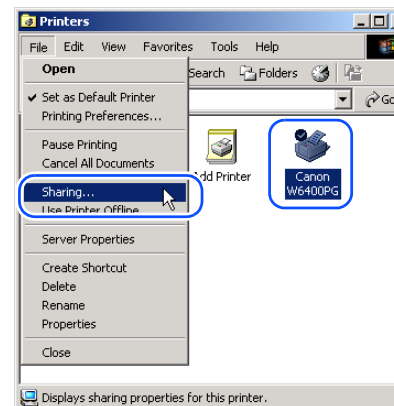
Performing the print server settings in the following procedure for a network set up with Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, greatly improves the efficiency of managing the network printer. After you set up the print server, print jobs are managed by the print server. Also, if you install alternate drivers for the print server beforehand, each computer can install the printer driver via the network.

Important

- The printer share settings should be performed by the network system administrator. These settings cannot be done on a Windows 98 server.

1 Open the **Sharing** sheet of the **Printer Properties** dialog box.

- ▼ Click the **Start** button then select **Settings > Printers**.
- ▼ Click the icon of the printer to use, then from the **File** menu select **Sharing**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

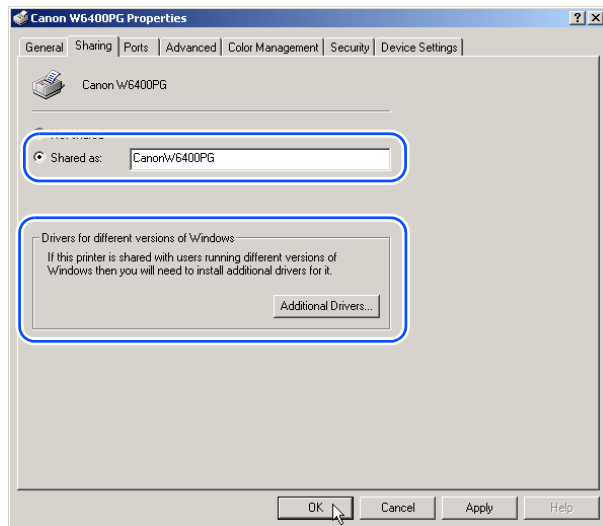
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

2 Perform the settings for printer sharing.

- ▼ Select **Shared as** then enter the desired name of the printer for sharing.
- ▼ Click the **Additional Drivers...** button (click the **Alternate Drivers** button in Windows NT 4.0) and select the printer driver to install.
- ▼ Press the **OK** button. A screen appears so you can select the location of the printer driver files when you install additional (alternative) drivers, so mount the User Software CD-ROM provided for this printer in the CD-ROM drive and select the folder.



To install the printer driver on other computers, when you select **Network Printer** on the Printer Wizard screen for the selection of the destination for the printer connection, be sure to select the printer set up for sharing by the print server.

Note

- If the printer is shared where IIS is installed on Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, or Windows 2000, install **DSE (Device Status Extension)** stored on the provided User Software CD-ROM so you can use the Web Browser on the client computer to manage information displays and print jobs. For more details about how to install **DSE**, refer to the Readme.txt in the **DSE** file located in the **DSE** folder on the User Software CD-ROM.

Important

- If you are using Windows NT 4.0 you will need Service Pack 6 or later for Windows NT installed on the computer in order to use the alternate drivers function.

This completes the settings for printer sharing.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Macintosh Network Settings

This section describes how to connect to a network using AppleTalk, IP Print, Canon IP (GARO) and Zeroconf and how to perform the settings so the printer can be used.

Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network

Here is a summary of the procedures required to set the printer for use on a Macintosh network.

The following procedure should be performed by the network system administrator.

1 Installing the network interface board → Quick Start Guide

First, install the optional network interface board.

2 [Connecting the LAN Cable](#) → P.5-5

Connect the LAN port to the HUB with the LAN cable.

3 [Setting a Macintosh](#) → P.5-21

- Confirm the network settings for the Macintosh.

4 [Setting AppleTalk Protocol](#) → P.5-25

Enable the AppleTalk protocol to connect the printer via AppleTalk. Set the IP address on the printer operation panel then use the Web browser to set the protocol for the printer name and zone settings and IP Print or Canon IP (GARO) connection.

- Web Browser (Remote UI)
- Printer operation panel

5 [Install the Printer Driver](#) → P.5-31

Follow the procedure in the Quick Start Guide to install Canon imagePROGRAF printer driver on the Macintosh.



Note

- Here we will describe as an example connection to a Macintosh computer with its built-in, standard Ethernet port. If you are installing a expansion network interface board or a wireless LAN, be sure to select the name of that port.
- If you are using Mac OS 8.6/9x, you can use the printer on an **IP Print** network. IP Print uses the TCP/IP protocol. If the TCP/IP settings are enabled with **IP Print (Auto)** then the printer can be used by simply connecting it to the LAN. If the printer is connected with an **IP Printer**, first register the **IP Address (Chooser > Registering IP Address)** then select the **IP Printer** and the printer name.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- If you are using Mac OS Ver. 10.1 or later, you can use the printer on a Canon IP (GARO) network. Canon IP (GARO) uses the TCP/IP protocol. The printer can be used as soon as the TCP/IP settings are enabled between the Macintosh computer and the printer and the printer IP address has been defined.
- If you are using Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later, you can use the Zeroconf function to connect. Zeroconf uses the TCP/IP protocol. As soon the TCP/IP settings are enabled for the Macintosh computer, the printer can be used by simply connecting it to the LAN. **Zeroconf** (the abbreviation for **Zero Configuration**) is network technology that requires neither an IP address nor a DNS service name.

Setting a Macintosh

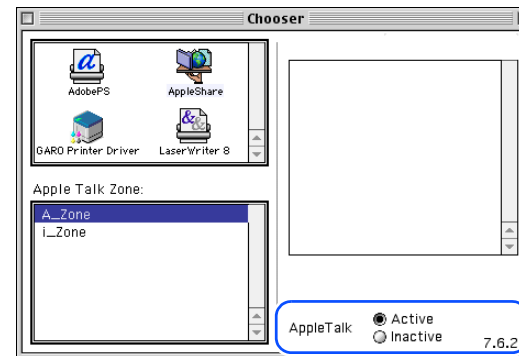
■ Setting the AppleTalk Network Functions

- For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

Use **Chooser** and the **AppleTalk** item of **Control Panel** to confirm the Macintosh network settings.

1 Confirm that AppleTalk can be used.

- ▼ From the **Apple** menu select **Chooser**.
- ▼ Confirm that **Active** is selected for **AppleTalk**. If **Inactive** is selected, select **Active**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

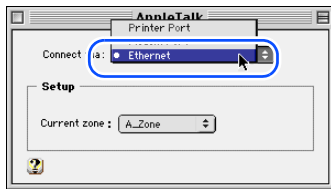
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

2 Confirm that **Ethernet** is selected for the **AppleTalk** connection.

- ▼ Start **AppleTalk** on **Control Panel**.
- ▼ Select **Ethernet**.



- ▼ Close **AppleTalk** to save the setting.

This completes the AppleTalk network settings for a Macintosh.

Important

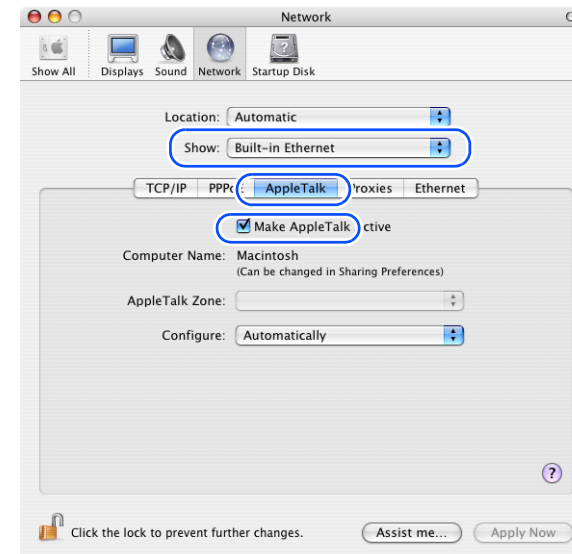
- Be sure to select the **Printer Port** if Ethernet is connected via LocalTalk.

● For Mac OS X

Confirm the AppleTalk settings with **Network** of **System Preferences**.

- 1 Open **Network** under **System Preferences**.
- 2 At the **Show** setting select **Built-in Ethernet**.
- 3 Select the **AppleTalk** sheet and confirm that **Make AppleTalk Active** is selected.

If this item is not checked, select it and then click the **Apply Now** button.



- 4 Close **Network** to save the settings.

This completes the AppleTalk network settings for a Macintosh.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ TCP/IP Network Function Settings

Confirm the operating system TCP/IP function settings when using the Remote UI and IP Print connection, Canon IP (GARO) connection, or Zeroconf function connection.

● For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

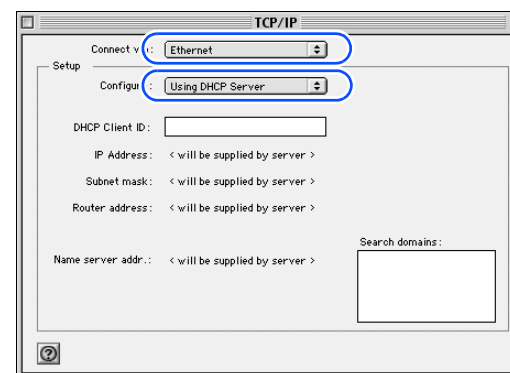
Use **Chooser** and the **TCP/IP** on the **Control Panel** confirm the TCP/IP network settings.

Important

- If a fixed IP address has already been allocated to your Macintosh computer, please use that assigned setting. No setting is required. For more details about network settings, please contact your network system administrator.
- If the computer is connected to the printer with IP Print (Auto), then the computer and the printer must be connected to the same network as the router. The computer cannot be connected through a router to a printer on another network. For more details about network settings, please contact your network system administrator.
- If the DHCP server cannot be recognized when **Using DHCP Server** is selected, then 169.254.xxx.xxx is set as the Link Local Address.

1 Confirm that TCP/IP is selected for the Ethernet connection.

- ▼ Start **TCP/IP** on **Control Panel**.
- ▼ For the **Connect via** select **Ethernet**.



- ▼ Set **Using DHCP Server** for **Configure**.
- ▼ Close **TCP/IP** to save the setting.

This completes the TCP/IP network settings for a Macintosh.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- For Mac OS X
Confirm the TCP/IP settings at **Network** under **System Preferences**.

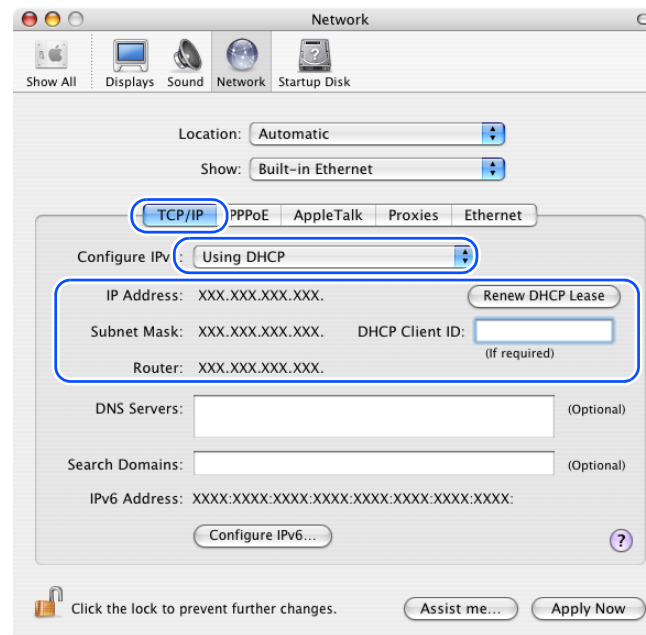
Important

- If the computer is connected to the printer with Zeroconf, then the computer and the printer must be connected to the same network as the router. The computer cannot be connected with the Zeroconf function through the router to a printer on another network. For more details about network settings, please contact your network system administrator.
- If the DHCP server cannot be recognized when **Using DHCP** is selected, then 169.254.xxx.xxx is set as the Link Local Address.

1 Open **Network** under **System Preferences**.

2 At the **Show** setting select **Built-in Ethernet**.

3 Select the **TCP/IP** panel and confirm the enabled IP address, subnet mask, and router settings.



4 Close **Network** to save the settings.

This completes the TCP/IP network settings for a Macintosh.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Setting AppleTalk Protocol

The AppleTalk protocol of this printer is set to disable before the printer is shipped. Enable the AppleTalk protocol to connect the printer via AppleTalk. The printer protocol settings can be set with either a Web browser (Remote UI) or the printer operation panel. This setting is not required if connected with **IP Print**, **Canon IP (GARO)**, or **Zeroconf**.

● Remote UI (→ [P.5-25](#))

On a Macintosh computer where the TCP/IP setting is completed, you can use a Web browser to perform the AppleTalk settings. To perform the settings, first enter the IP address with the printer operation panel, then use the Web browser to set the protocol. (→ [P.5-25](#))

● Printer operation panel (→ [P.5-30](#))

You can perform the AppleTalk settings on the printer operation panel.

Important

- Before AppleTalk settings, confirm that the printer is switched on and connected to the network.

■ Setting the Protocol with Web Browser (Remote UI)

Important

- For the Web Browser, use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, or use Internet Explorer 5.01 or later. The Safari web browser for the Macintosh is not compatible.
- The connection cannot be set up through a proxy server. If the network environment employs a proxy server, in the Web Browser proxy server settings add the IP address of the printer to the **Exceptions** (addresses not used by the proxy). (The settings may differ depending on the environment.)
- In the Web Browser perform the settings so JavaScript and cookies can be used.
- If more than one remote UI is being used, then the most recent settings remain enabled. Starting and using only one Remote UI at a time is recommended.

Note

- When the Remote UI is running with the printer name, make sure that the DNS settings for the DNS environment and board have been set up correctly.
- Follow the procedure below to start Remote UI on a system using Mac OS X Ver. 10.2.5 or later and the Zeroconf function to connect the printer.
 1. Open the **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)**.
 2. Select the name of this printer from the print list and click the **Set** button.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

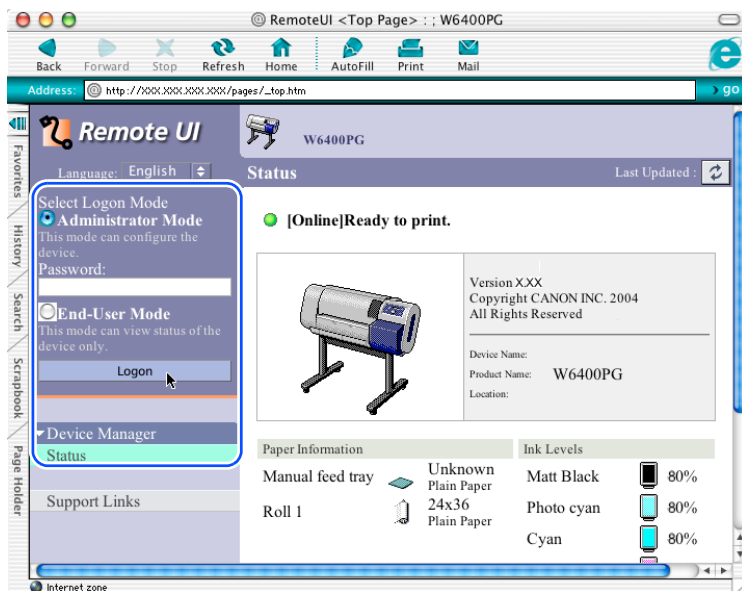
Index

1 Start the Web Browser, enter the following **URL** for the **Location** or the **Address**, then press the **Enter** key.

http://<Printer IP Address or name>/
Entry Sample : http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/

2 Select **Administrator Mode** then click the **Logon** button.

English is set as the default display language for the Remote UI mode. Select **Administrator Mode**, then click the **Logon** button.

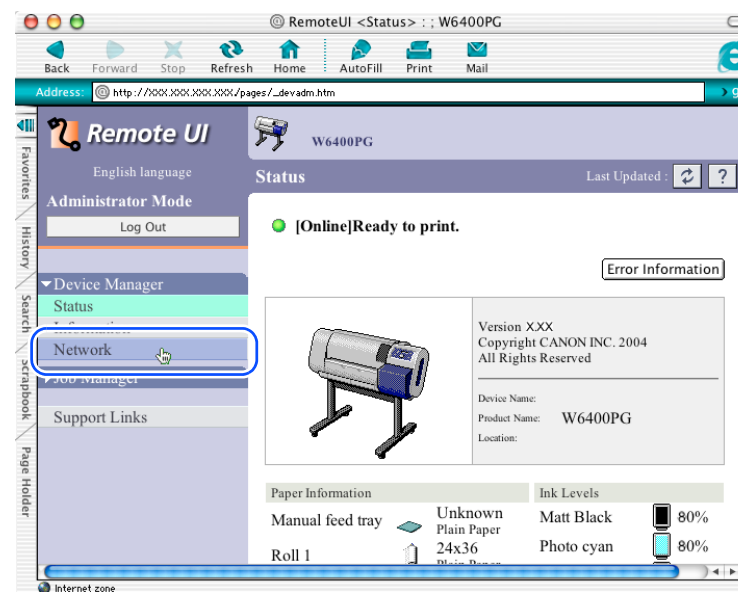


The Remote UI starts.

Note

- If a password has been set for the printer, enter the password and then click the **Logon** button. If no password has been set, then no password entry is required.

3 Select **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu on the left.



The **Network** page appears.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

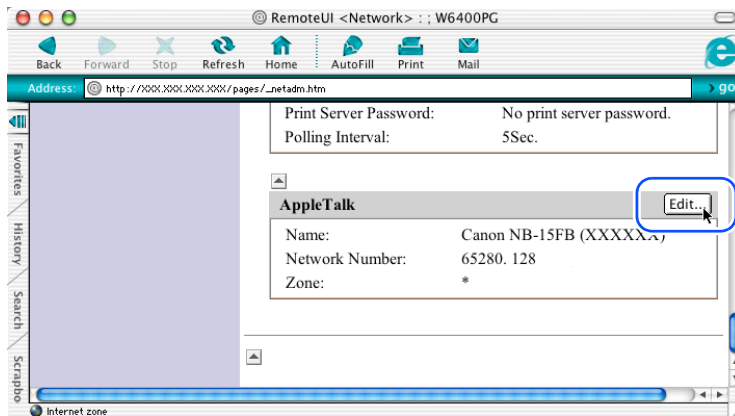
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

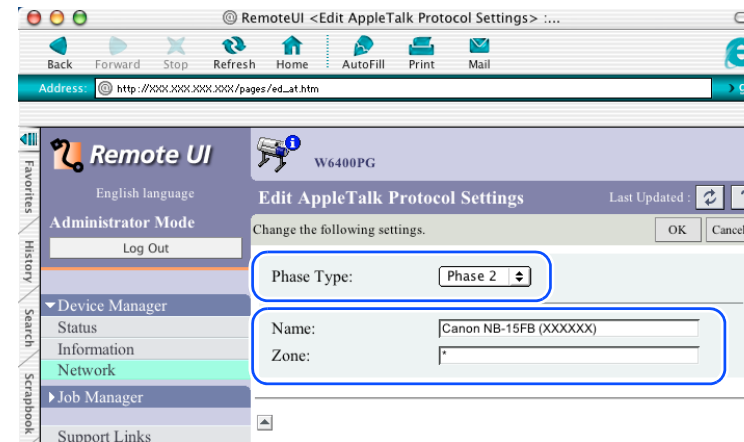
- 4** To perform the AppleTalk protocol settings, click the **Edit...** button to the right of **AppleTalk**.



The **Edit AppleTalk Protocol Settings** page is displayed.

If connected with the **IP Print (Auto)** (Mac OS 8.6/9x) function or Zeroconf Mac OS X function, go to the [Step 9](#).

- 5** For **Phase Type**, select **Phase 2**.



Note

- If **Disabled** is selected, the printer will not be recognized on the AppleTalk network.

- 6** For **Name** enter the name of the printer on the network.

Enter the printer name displayed in Chooser (Mac OS 8.6/9.x) or the name displayed in Setup Utility (Print Center) (Mac OS X).

Important

- If more than one printer is in the same zone, be sure to assign a unique name for each printer.

Note

- The initial (default) network interface name is Canon NB 15FB (xxxxxx). Where xxxxxx is the 6-digit MAC address of the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- To change **Name**, enter a 15-character name. However, these symbols and characters are not permitted: @ * : =

7 When a zone is set on the network, enter the name of zone where the printer belongs.

If no zone is set, then leave the asterisk (*) entry as it is.

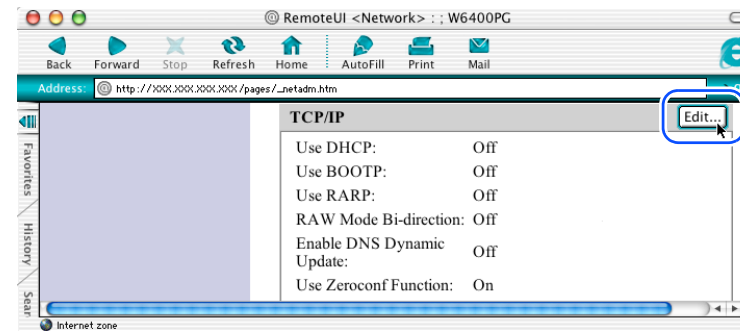
Important

- The zone name must be the name of a zone that is already entered. If you enter the name of a zone that is not yet set, the recognition of the printer by the Macintosh will be lost. For more details about zone names, please contact your network system administrator.

8 Click the **OK** button.

If you are using AppleTalk only, go to [Step 13](#).

9 If you are using the Zeroconf function for the printer connection, click the **Edit...** button to the right of **TCP/IP**.



The **Edit TCP/IP Protocol Setting** page opens.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

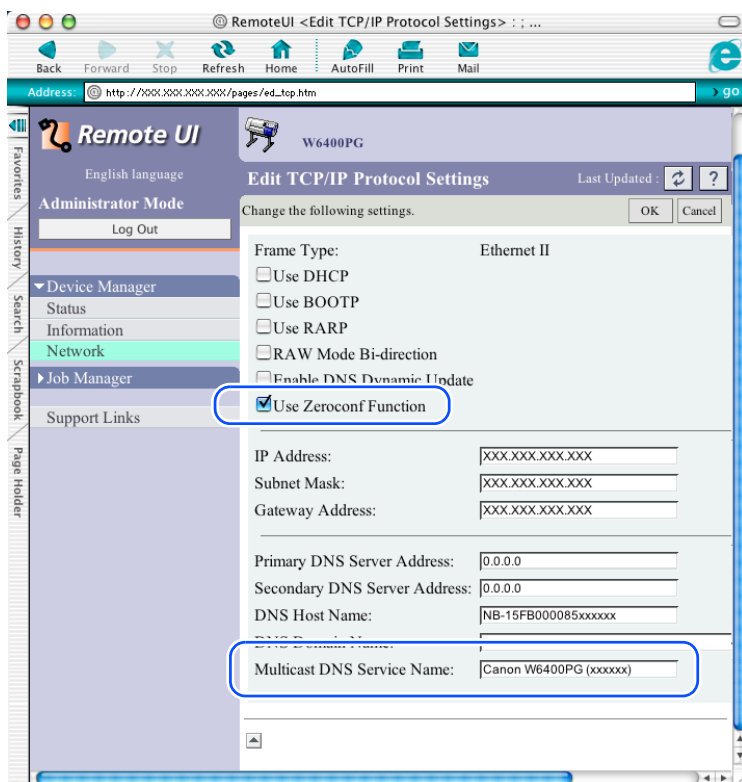
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

10 Click the **Use Zeroconf Function** check box on.



11 Enter the name of the printer on the network into the **Multicast DNS Service Name** box.

Enter the printer name displayed in Chooser (Mac OS 8.6/9.x) or the name displayed in Print Setup Utility (Print Center) (Mac OS X).

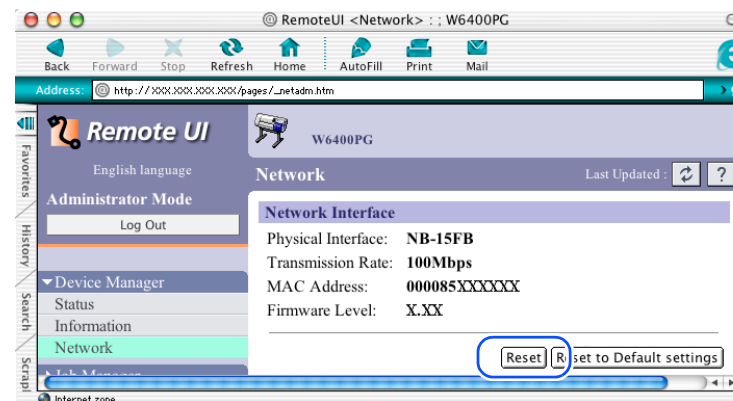


Note

- You can change the Multicast DNS Service name with up to 63 characters (including hyphens, spaces).

12 Click the **OK** button.

13 When you return to the **Network** screen of **Device Manager**, click the **Reset** button.



The printer network interface restarts and enables the settings.

This completes the protocol settings for the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

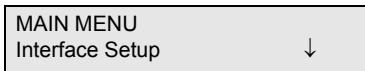
■ Setting with the Printer Operation Panel

You can use the printer operation panel to select AppleTalk protocol.

1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].



3 Use [◀] or [▶] to select **AppleTalk** then press [▼].



4 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **On**, then press **OK** button.



5 Press the [▲] button.



6 Press the **OK** button.

If you want to cancel the setting, press **Stop** button for at least 1 second.



The printer restarts after **Storing** appears on the display.

When completed, the printer returns to the **Online** or **Offline** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Install the Printer Driver

After completing the printer protocol settings, install the printer driver on every Macintosh that will be used for printing and perform the print destination settings.

■ Installing the Printer Driver

In order for the printer to operate, a printer driver compatible with the printer must be installed. Install the Printer Driver (→ Quick Start Guide)

■ Selecting a Printer

● For Mac OS 8.6/9.x

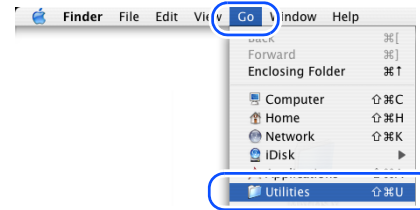
Selecting the printer with the **Chooser** completes the settings. The **Destination** can select **AppleTalk**, **IP Print**, or **IP Print (Auto)**. (→ Quick Start Guide)

● For Mac OS X

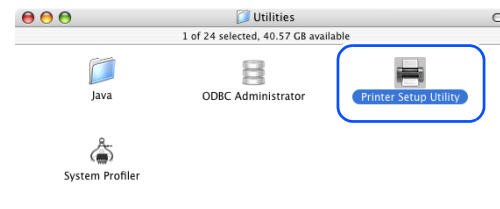
For Mac OS X, open the printer setup utility (Print Center), and then add the name of the printer under **Add Printer**. For the **Destination** select **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP (GARO)** or **Zeroconf**.

1 Make sure that the printer is on.

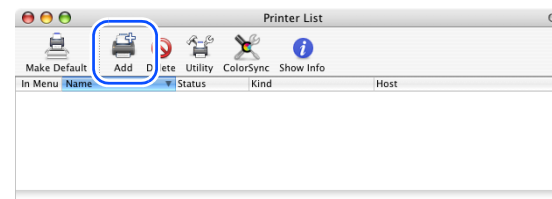
2 After the Macintosh has restarted, open **Finder** and select **Utilities** or **Applications** from the **Go** menu.



3 Open the **Utilities** folder then open **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)**.



4 If the name of the printer is not in the **Printer List**, click the **Add** icon.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

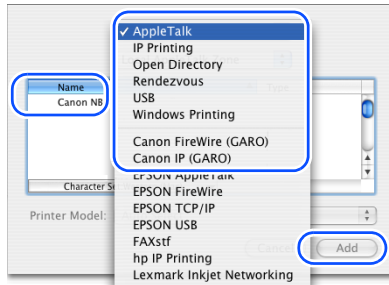
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 5** From the connection destination menu, select **AppleTalk**, **Canon IP (GARO)**, or **Zeroconf** for the network connection, click the name of the printer in the displayed list, then click the **Add** button.



This completes the selection of the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

NetWare Settings (Windows)

The chapter describes the setting methods and procedures for connecting the printer to a NetWare network.

Procedures Required for a NetWare Network

Here is a summary of the procedures required to set the printer for use on a NetWare network.

The following procedure should be performed by the network system administrator.

1 Installing the Network Interface Board → Quick Start Guide

First, install the optional network interface board.

2 [Connecting the LAN Cable](#) → P.5-5

Connect the LAN port to the HUB with the LAN cable.

3 [Setting the Printer Frame Type](#) → P.5-34

Perform the printer frame type setting. Use the software below to setup communication between your computer and the printer.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (Canon utility provided with the printer)
- Printer Operation Panel

4 [Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#) → P.5-37

Perform the NetWare printer service settings. Use one of the utilities below to perform the settings on the computer.

- NWADMIN or PCONSOLE (Novell software application provided with NetWare)

5 [Setting NetWare Protocol](#) → P.5-40

Perform the printer protocol settings. You can use a Web Browser from a computer on the network to perform the network settings.

- Web Browser (Remote UI)

6 [Setting the Computer for NetWare](#) → P.5-44

Perform these settings on every computer to be used with the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Setting the Printer Frame Type

Before setting the printer protocol, you must set the frame type to enable communication between the printer and the computer. Use the utility below to perform this setting.

- GARO Device Setup Utility (→ [P.5-34](#))
- Printer operation panel (→ [P.5-35](#))

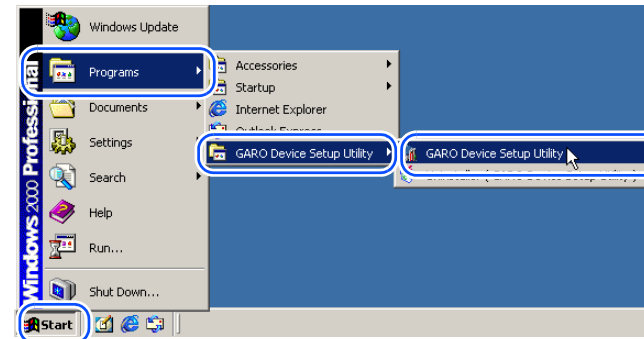
Important

- In order to use GARO Device Setup Utility, it must be installed on your computer. Install GARO Device Setup Utility on your computer. (→ [P.5-34](#))
- Before setting the printer frame type, confirm that the printer is switched on and connected to the network.

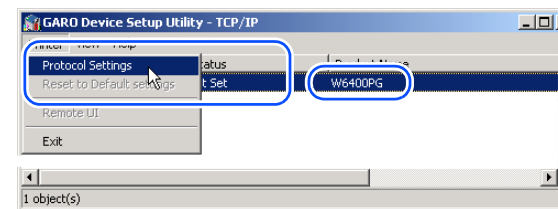
■ Setting the frame type with GARO Device Setup Utility

If you are using Windows, use the **GARO Device Setup Utility**, the software utility provided with the printer, to perform the printer network settings.

- 1 On the desktop, click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, then select **GARO Device Setup Utility** > **GARO Device Setup Utility**.



- 2 Select from the list the name of the printer you want to set, then select **Protocol Settings** from the **Printer** menu.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

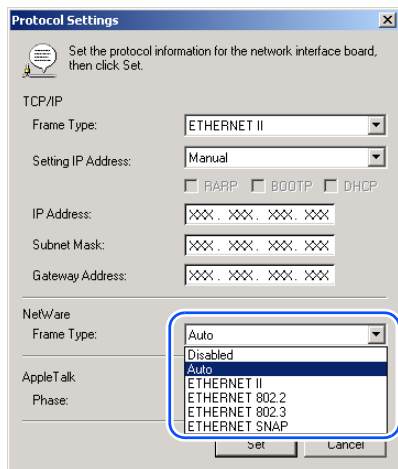
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

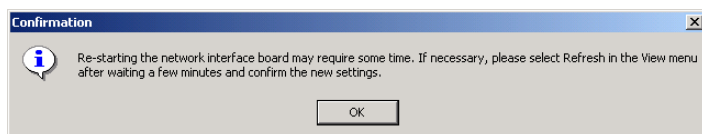
3 Select the type of frame you are using for **NetWare Frame Type**, select **ETHERNET II** for **TCP/IP Frame Type**, enter the assigned settings for **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask** and **Gateway Address**, then click the **Set** button.



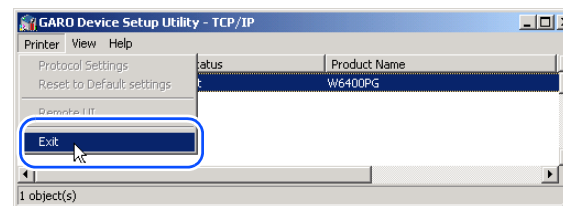
Note

- The IP address setting is required here to allow the printer protocol setting to be performed with the Web browser (Remote UI).

4 Click the **OK** button when the confirmation message is displayed.



5 When you are finished performing the settings, select **Exit** from the **Printer** menu.



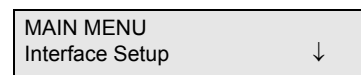
■ **Setting with the Printer Operation Panel**

The NetWare network information can be set on the printer operation panel.

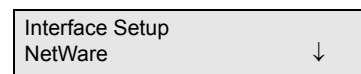
1 Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.



2 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Interface Setup** then press [▼].



3 Press [◀] or [▶] to select **NetWare**, then press [▼].



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Netware**, then press [▼].

NetWare
NetWare

- 5** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **On**, then press **OK** button.

NetWare
On

After the equals mark (=) appears on the left, the display returns to the NetWare menu.

- 6** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Frame Type**, then press [▼].

NetWare
Frame Type

- 7** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the setting for the frame type to use then press **OK** button.

The available frame type selections are **Auto Detect**, **Ethernet 2**, **Ethernet 802.2**, **Ethernet 802.3** and **Ethernet SNAP**.

Frame Type
Ethernet 802.3

After the equals mark (=) appears on the left, the display returns to the NetWare menu.

- 8** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Print Service**, then press [▼].

NetWare
Print Service

- 9** Press [◀] or [▶] to select the print service then press [▼].

The available selections for Print Service are **BindaryPserver**, **RPrinter**, **NDSPserver**, and **NPrinter**.

Print Service
RPrinter

After the equals mark (=) appears on the left, the display returns to the NetWare menu.

- 10** Press the [▲] button twice.

NetWare
Print Service

- 11** Press the **OK** button.

If you want to cancel the setting, press **Stop** button for at least 1 second.

Store Setting
OK?

The printer restarts after **Storing** appears on the display.

When completed, the printer returns to the **Online** or **Offline** mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Setting Up a NetWare Print Service

A print service for the print server, queue, and so on, must be set up before you can use a NetWare network to print. Use one of the following software applications to perform the print service settings from your computer. Use whichever is easiest to perform the settings.

- NWADMIN or PCONSOLE (Novell software applications provided with NetWare)

Important

- If you perform the print service settings with NWADMIN, Novell Client (the Novell NetWare client) must be installed as the client software application.
- The procedure described here is for the NetWare print service settings. The procedure may be different in the environment that you are using.

■ Types of Print Services

Before performing the print service settings, be sure to read the description below then select the printer service type.

Note

- You can use NDPS as the print service with NetWare 5.1/6.0. When you use NDPS, use the Novell printer gateway provided by NetWare as the gateway. The setup procedure for NDPS is not described in this guide, so for more details refer to the NetWare instructions.

- NDS (Novell Directory Service) and Bindery
Either NDS or Bindery is supported. Select the mode that is best suited for your network environment.
- Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode
Both Queue Server Mode and Remote Printer Mode are supported.
- Queue Server Mode
When Queue Server Mode is used, all of the print server functions are provided so no other hardware for the print service is required. The printer and computer use the NDS print server in the NDS Queue Mode (NDS PServer). The printer and computer use the Bindery print server in the Bindery Queue Mode (Bindery PServer).
Also, a NetWare user license is required for each network interface used in the Queue Server Mode.
- Remote Printer Mode
If you use the Remote Printer Mode, the NetWare print server exercises control. For this reason, the NetWare print service is required. Use the NDS print server in NDS Remote Printer Mode (NPrinter) to print, and use the Bindery print server in the Bindery Print Mode (RPrinter) to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

■ Setting Up the Print Server With NWADMIN, PCONSOLE

- If You Are Using NDS Queue Server Mode or Remote Printer Mode

1 Log into NetWare as the System Administrator, or as a user with equivalent access rights, then start NWADMIN.

2 Execute the Quick Setup.

- ▼ Select **Print Services Quick Setup** from the **Tools** menu.
- ▼ Enter a **Print Server Name** of your choice. If you want to use an existing server, click the button to the right of the name to select it from the list.
- ▼ For the printer **Name** enter the desired name.
- ▼ If you intend to use Queue Server Mode, select **Other/Unknown** for the **Type**. If you intend to use the Remote Printer Mode, select **Parallel** for **Type**, click the **Communicate** button then select **LPT1** for **Port** and **Manual Load** for **Connection Type**.
- ▼ For the print queue **Name** enter the desired name.
- ▼ For **Volume** enter the volume object to create the queue (the object that appears as the physical volume on the network). Click the button on the right to select from the list.
- ▼ Perform any other settings that are required, then click the **OK** button.



Note

- You are going to need the name of the print server to perform the printer protocol settings so be sure to note the printer name.
- When you perform the Quick Setup, “0” is assigned to the printer as its number. If you intend to use the Queue Server Mode, do not change the printer number.

3 Set the password.

- ▼ Select the print server created in [Step 2](#), then right-click **Details**.
- ▼ Click the **Change Password** button to open the password entry screen, then enter the desired password.
- ▼ Click the **OK** button to close the password entry screen.
- ▼ Click the **OK** or **Cancel** button to close the **Details** screen.

4 Follow the procedure below to start the print server when you use the Remote Printer Mode.

- ▼ To use the NetWare file server as the print server, on the file server enter **LOAD PSERVER.NLM** then press the **Enter** key.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index



Note

- The step to use the NetWare file server as the print server, is not required if you intend to use the Queue Server Mode.

This completes the NetWare print service settings. Next, perform the printer protocol settings. (→ [P.5-40](#))

- If You Are Using the Bindery Queue Server Mode or Remote Printer Mode

1 Log into NetWare as the Supervisor, then start PCONSOLE.

2 Switch to the Bindery Mode.

3 If the print server has not been created, perform the following procedure to create the print server.

- ▼ From **Available Options** select **Quick Setup** then press the **Enter** key.
- ▼ Enter the name of the print server to create, the name of the new printer, and name of the queue.



Note

- You are going to need the name of the print server to perform the printer protocol settings so be sure to note the printer name.

4 Set the printer type.

- ▼ If you intend to use Queue Server Mode, select **Other/Unknown** for the **Type**. If you intend to use the Remote Printer Mode, under **Printer Type** select **Parallel** then set **Manual Load** for the **Location**.
- ▼ Press the **ESC** key.
- ▼ When the confirmation message appears, click **Yes** then press the **Enter** key.

5 Set the password.

- ▼ From **Available Options** select **Print Servers**, then press the **Enter** key.
- ▼ Select the print server created in [Step 2](#), then press the **Enter** key.
- ▼ Select **Password**, then press the **Enter** key. When the password entry screen opens, enter the desired password, then press the **Enter** key.

6 Press **ESC** several times to display the confirmation to close **PCONSOLE**, then click **Yes** to close **PCONSOLE**.

This completes the NetWare print service settings. Next, perform the printer protocol settings. (→ [P.5-40](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Setting NetWare Protocol

The printer protocol settings can be set with a Web browser (Remote UI) from your computer. Set the IP address before you perform these settings. (→ P.5-7)

■ Setting the Protocol with Web Browser (Remote UI)

Important

- For the Web Browser, use Netscape Navigator/Communicator 6.0 or later, or use Internet Explorer 5.01 or later.
- The connection cannot be set up through a proxy server. If the network environment employs a proxy server, in the Web Browser proxy server settings add the IP address of the printer to the **Exceptions** (addresses not used by the proxy). (The settings may differ, depending on the network environment.)
- In the Web Browser perform the settings so JavaScript and cookies can be used.
- If more than one remote UI is being used, then the most recently used settings remain enabled. Starting and using only one Remote UI at a time is recommended.

Note

- When the Remote UI is running with the printer name, make sure that the DNS settings for the DNS environment and board have been set up correctly.
- When print history is displayed with RPrinter/NPrinter with the Remote UI running, the **Document Name** and **User information** cannot be acquired. For this reason the **Document Name** is set to **Unknown** the **User** is set to **RPRINTER/NPRINTER** (only these settings are displayed).

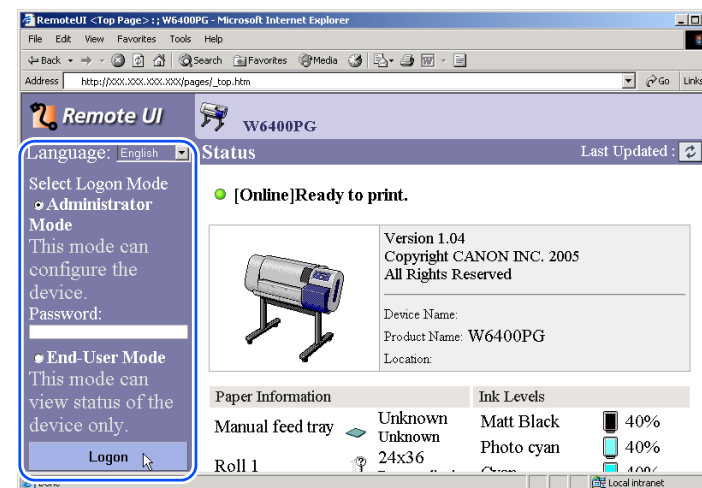
- 1 Start the Web Browser, enter the following **URL** for the **Location** or the **Address**, then press the **Enter** key.

`http://<Printer IP Address or name>/`

Entry Sample : `http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/`

- 2 Click and select **Administrator Mode** then click the **OK** button.

English is set as the default display language for the Remote UI mode. Select **Administrator Mode**, then click the **Logon** button.



The Remote UI starts.

Note

- If a password has been set for the printer, enter the password and then click the **Logon** button. If no password has been set, then no password entry is required.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

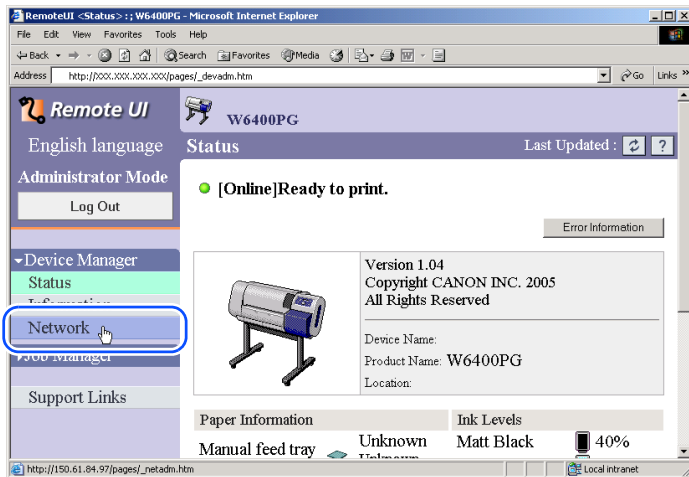
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

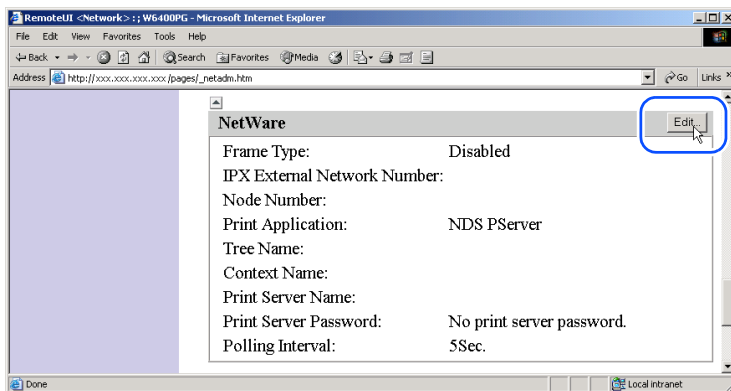
Index

- 3** Select **Network** in the **Device Manager** menu on the left.



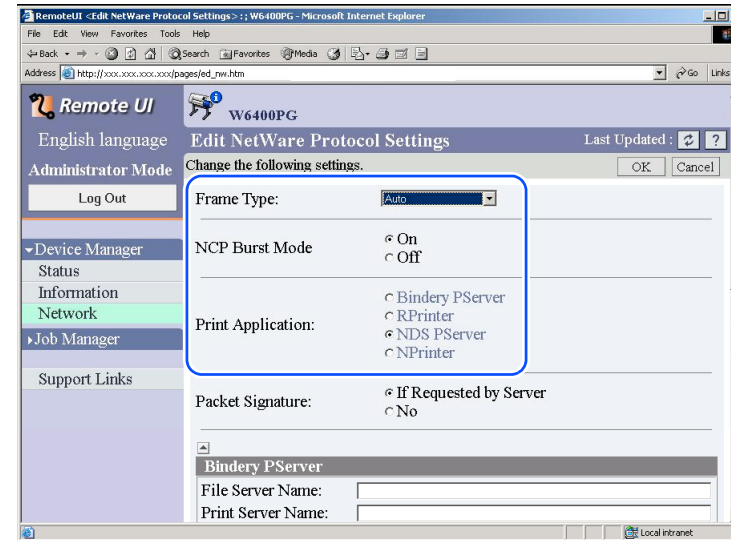
The **Network** page appears.

- 4** Click the **Edit...** button to the right of **NetWare**.



The **Edit IPX/SPX Protocol Settings** page appears.

- 5** Check the **Frame Type** box and make sure the setting is correct for your **NetWare** network.



- 6** If you intend to use the burst mode, select **On** for **NCP Burst Mode**.



Note

- The burst mode is used in the queue server mode to transfer data rapidly at very high speed during printing.
- Normally, leave the setting on.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

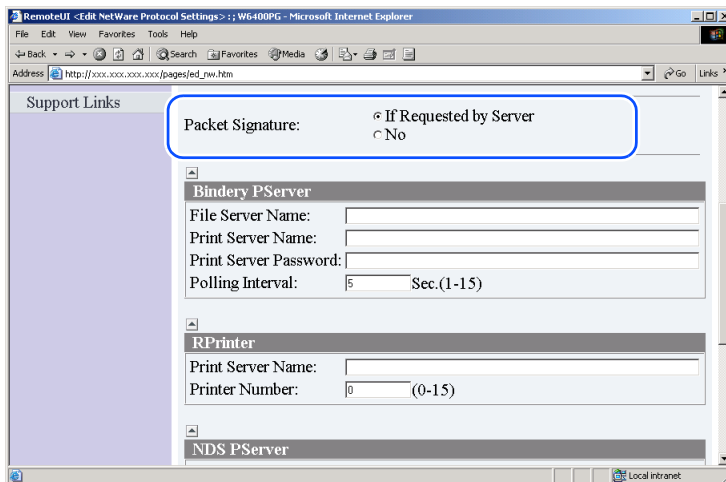
7 For **Print Application** select the service to use.



Note

- Here we will show only one service selected and enabled. More than one service cannot be enabled at the same time.

8 When using the packet signature settings, for **Packet Signature** be sure to select **If Requested by Server**.



9 Perform the following settings as required for the selected service.

- Bindery PServer Selected: Queue Server Mode (Using a Bindery Print Server)
 - ▼ Enter the file server name into **File Server Name**.
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).
 - ▼ For **Print Server Password**, enter the print server password created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).
 - ▼ Set the **Polling Interval**. Set the time interval for the printer to confirm the NetWare print queue.
- RPrinter Selected: Remote Printer Mode (using a Bindery Print Server)
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the advertised name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).
 - ▼ For **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number that you entered in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

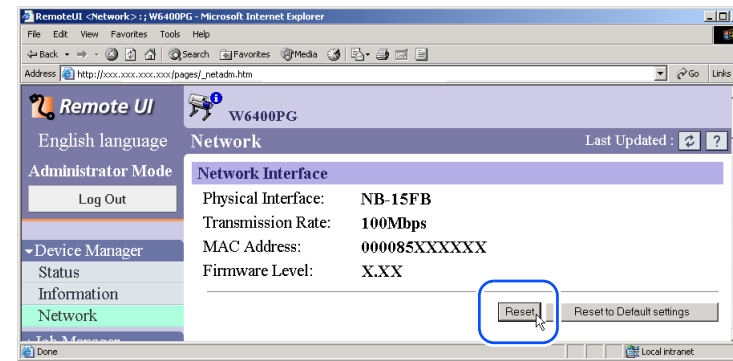
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

- NDS PServer Selected: Queue Server Mode (Using an NDS Print Server)
 - ▼ Enter the **Tree Name** and **Context Name** for the tree and context name of the print server. Enter a context name of less than 255 characters.
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).
 - ▼ For **Print Server Password**, enter the print server password created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).
 - ▼ Set the **Polling Interval**. Set the time interval for the printer to confirm the NetWare print queue.
- NPrinter Selected: Remote Printer Mode (using an NDS Print Server)
 - ▼ For **Print Server Name**, enter the advertised name of the print server created in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37). The advertised name and common name of the printer is set the same.
 - ▼ For **Printer Number**, enter the same printer number that you entered in “[Setting Up a NetWare Print Service](#)” (→ P.5-37).

11 When you return to **Network** under **Device Manager**, press the **Reset** button.



The printer network interface restarts and enables the settings.

This completes the NetWare protocol settings.

10 Click the **OK** button.

Setting the Computer for NetWare

Perform these settings for each computer after you have selected the NetWare print service and protocol.

■ Connecting to a NetWare Network

Install NetWare client software on all the computers that will be used to print, then log in to the NetWare server or tree. For more details about connection methods, refer to the NetWare or operating system instructions.

■ Installing the Printer Driver

The printer driver is required for printing. Install the printer driver under the direction of the network system administrator.

When you install the printer driver, be sure to select **Network Printer** and select the print queue that you created with the NetWare print service settings.

■ Setting the Printer Port

Press the **Start** button then select **Settings > Printers > Printer icon > File > Properties**. Display either the **Details** or **Port** sheet and specify the print queue you created with the NetWare print service settings as the setting for the print destination. (→ [P.5-37](#))

Note

- This procedure is not required if you set the connection destination for the printer during the installation of the printer driver.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing with UNIX

Using LPD to Print

This section describes printing with LPD.

- 1 Log into the root of the work station.
- 2 Set up the spooling system.
 - Example Using Solaris 9:
 - ▼ Start the Admintool utility.
 - ▼ Select **Browse > Printers**.
 - ▼ Select **Edit > Add > Access to Printer**.
 - ▼ Following the format restrictions, enter the **Printer Name** and **Print Server** name.
 - ▼ Press the **OK** button.
 - Example Using Red Hat Linux
 - ▼ Start the Printer Configuration utility on the control panel.
 - ▼ Select **Add > Other UNIX (lpd) queue > OK**.
 - ▼ For the **Printer Name**, **Remote Host**, **Remote Queue** enter the desired print queue name, printer IP address or name, and **lp**.

- ▼ If a filter is to be used, select the filter.

If there is no filter for the printer, you can temporarily select any filter, shut down the Printer Configuration Utility, and then change the `postscript.cfg` file in the spool directory so it matches your printer. For more details, please refer to the Ghostscript descriptions.



Note

- The Admintool Utility is provided with the operating system. For more details about how to use this utility, please refer to the operating system instructions.
- The setting procedure above is an example. The procedure may be different in the environment that you are using.
- This completes the printing settings.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Using FTP to Print

- 1** Start at the MS-DOS prompt or command line.

If you are using UNIX, open the Console screen.

- 2** Execute the following commands.

```
ftp <Printer IP Address>
```

- 3** Enter any user name.

Just press the **Enter** key without entering a password.

You can perform the procedure below.

- To print a file:

```
put <filename to print>
```



Note

- Print the file in binary mode.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Initializing the Settings

Follow the procedure below to use the Web browser (Remote UI) to restore all the network settings to the default values set before shipping the printer from the factory.

Note

- In addition to using the Web browser to restore the initial settings, you can also use GARO Device Setup Utility or the printer operation panel to restore the network default settings.

- 1** Start the Web Browser, enter the following **URL** for the **Location** or the **Address**, then press the **Enter** key.

`http://<Printer IP Address or name>/`

Entry Sample : `http://XXX.XXX.XXX.XXX/`

- 2** Click and select **Administrator Mode** then click the **Logon** button.

English is set as the default display language for the **Remote UI** mode. Select **Administrator Mode**, then click the **Logon** button.

The Remote UI starts.

Note

- If a password has been set for the printer, enter the password and then click the **OK** button. If no password has been set, then no password entry is required.

- 3** From the **Device Manager** menu on the left, select **Network**.

- 4** Click the **Reset to Default settings** button.

- 5** Confirm the message then click the **OK** button.

All the network information is restored to the factory default settings.

Note

- When you initialize all the network settings, the printer IP address is also restored to its factory default (0.0.0.0) so the Remote UI screen cannot be displayed in the browser again. Use the GARO Device Setup Utility or the printer operation panel when you need to perform the network settings again.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

List of Network Settings

If you are using a Web Browser (Remote UI), you can change the settings of the network interface. The settings that can be changed are listed in the tables below.

■ General Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Device Name	Device name (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Location	Device location (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Administrator	Device Administrator Name (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Phone	Telephone number of Administrator for the device (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Comment (E-mail)	Comments of the Device Administrator (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Administrator Password	Device password (Range: 0 to 15 chars.)	Blank

■ TCP/IP Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Use DHCP	The setting in the IP address that determines whether DHCP is used	OFF
Use BOOTP	The setting in the IP address that determines whether BOOTP is used	OFF
Use RARP	The setting in the IP address that determines whether RARP is used	OFF
RAW Mode Bi-direction	Determines whether bi-directional communication is used for RAW mode.	OFF
DNS Dynamic Update	Determines whether DNS Server Registration Update is Automatic.	OFF
Use Zeroconf function	Determines whether Zeroconf function is used.	ON
IP Address	The IP address of the printer	0.0.0.0
Subnet mask	The subnet mask of the printer.	0.0.0.0
Gateway Address	The gateway address of the printer.	0.0.0.0
Primary DNS Server Address	IP Address of primary DNS server	0.0.0.0

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Item	Content	Initial Value
Secondary DNS Server Address	Secondary DNS Server IP Address.	0.0.0.0
DNS Host Name	Printer Host Name (Range: 1 to 63 chars.)	NB-15FB xxxxxxxx xxx
DNS Domain Name	Printer Domain Name (Range: 0 to 64 chars.)	Blank
Multicast DNS Service Name	Printer Multicast DNS Service Name (Range: 1 to 63 chars.)	Canon W6400P G (xxxxxx)

■ AppleTalk Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Phase Type	The name of the phase type in use (determines whether AppleTalk is used.)	Disabled
Name	The names of the printers displayed in the Chooser and Printer Center lists (Name length: 1 to 31 chars.)	Canon NB-15FB (xxxxxx)
Zone	The name of the printer zone (Name length: 1 to 31 chars.)	*

■ NetWare Settings

Item	Content	Initial Value
Frame Type	The frame type used by NetWare.	Disabled
NCP Burst Mode	Determines whether the NCP burst mode is used. (Normally, leave this setting on.)	ON
Print Application	The print service to use. (Only one print service can be selected and enabled.)	NDS PServer
Packet Signature	Determines whether the packet sign is used (normally leave set to If Requested by Server)	If Requested by Server
Bindery PServer		
File Server Name	Name of the NetWare file server of the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 47 chars.)	Blank
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 47 chars.)	Blank
Printer Server Password	The password required by the print server setting. (0 to 20 chars.)	Blank
Polling Interval	The time interval between job confirmations. (Range: 1 to 15 sec.)	5

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Item	Content	Initial Value
RPrinter		
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 47 chars.)	Blank
Printer Number	The number used for the printer connection to the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 15)	0
NDS PServer		
Tree Name	The name of the NDS tree of the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 32 chars.)	Blank
Context Name	The name of the context of the NetWare Print server. (Range: 0 to 255 chars.)	Blank
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 64 chars.)	Blank
Printer Server Password	The password required by the print server setting. (0 to 20 chars.)	Blank
Polling Interval	The time interval between job confirmations. (Range: 1 to 255 sec.)	5
NPrinter		
Print Server Name	The name of the NetWare print server in use. (Range: 0 to 64 chars.)	Blank
Printer Number	The number used for the printer connection to the NetWare print server. (Range: 0 to 254)	0

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Software Applications that can be used for Network Settings

Use the following listed software to perform the network settings.

Type of Setting	GARO Device Setup Utility	Web Browser (Remote UI)	ARP/PING command	Printer operation panel
Setting IP Addresses (→ P.5-7)	○	○	○	○
Set TCP/IP protocol (→ P.5-15)	△*1	○	×	△*1
Setting AppleTalk protocol (→ P.5-25)	△*2	○	×	△*2
Setting the NetWare printer service (→ P.5-37)	×	○	×	×
Setting the NetWare protocol (→ P.5-40)	△*3	○	×	△*3

*1. Only these settings are allowed: IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, DHCP, BOOTP, RAPP, frame type, phase settings.

*2. Only phase settings are possible.

*3. Only frame type are possible.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 6 Troubleshooting

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Responding to Error Messages	6-2
Operation Panel Message List	6-3
Media Messages	6-4
Ink Messages	6-11
Other Messages	6-14
When You Cannot Print	6-18
Printing Will Not Start	6-18
Printing Halts During Print Job	6-21
Cannot Print on Network	6-22
Unexpected Printing Results	6-27
Poor Quality	6-28
Abnormal Content	6-31
Other Problems	6-34
Handling Jams	6-35
Removing a Roll Media Jam	6-35
Removing a Cut Sheet Jam	6-38
Updating the Firmware	6-41
Obtaining the Firmware Update	6-41
Confirming the Firmware Version	6-41
Reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 Driver	6-42
Uninstalling Software Applications	6-43
Deleting the Printer Driver	6-43
Deleting the GARO Status Monitor	6-44
Deleting the GARO Device Setup Utility	6-44

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

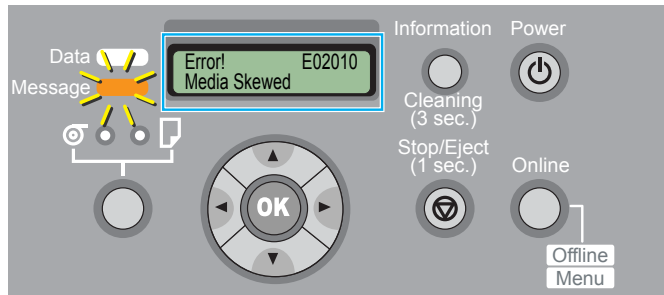
Contents

Index

Responding to Error Messages

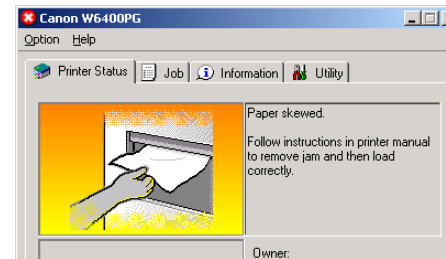
When the printer requires attention, messages are displayed on the operation panel and in the GARO Status Monitor (Windows) or GARO Printmonitor (Macintosh).

• Operation Panel



Follow the procedures on the following pages to confirm and solve problems indicated by the messages.

• GARO Status Monitor (Windows)



Read the displayed message and perform the appropriate procedure.

Note

- The printer status cannot be displayed with a USB connection to Mac OS X.
- If the GARO Status Monitor is not installed on Windows, look at the message on the printer operation panel.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Operation Panel Message List

Media Messages
Load Roll Media
Remove Roll Media
End of Roll
RIIMed.Shortage Replace RIIMed.
Load Cut Sheet
Remove Cut Sheet
Eject Cut Sheet
Incorrect Media
Med.SizeNoMatch
No Borderless
Illegal Med Pos
NoBordlessData
Size undetected
Media Skewed
Media Too Large
Media Too Small
Media Jam
Cut Failed
Drying..
Feed Limit..
Cut by Stop key

Ink Messages
Check Ink Level
Rep. Ink Tank
No Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank
Check Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank
Not Enough Ink
Ink level?
Remove Ink Tank
Chk Bk Ink Type
MTCart Full Soon
Replace MT-Cart
No MT-Cartridge
Check MT-Cart.

Other Messages
Close xxx Cover (xxx name of the cover)
Reset Lever
Check Head Hght L/M/H → L/M/H
Turn Power Off!!
No Printhead
Printhead Error!
Check Printhead
Scale Read Error
Mist Full Soon
Mist Count Error
Adj. Failed
Incorrect Value
ERROR nnnnnn (n = Numbers)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

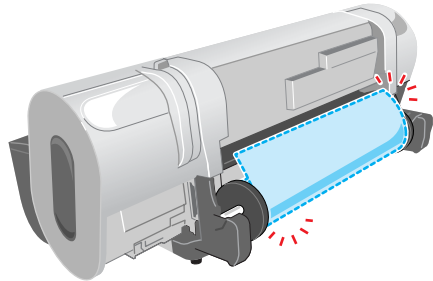
Contents

Index

Media Messages

Load Roll Media

Problem1: The printer is waiting for you to load the roll media.



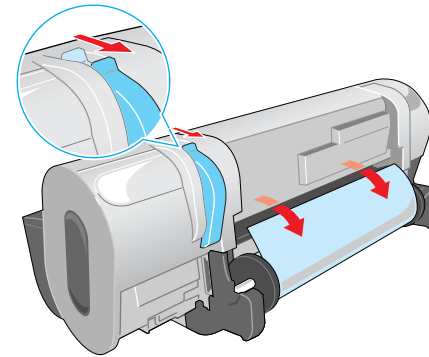
Solution1: Follow the procedure below set the **Media Type** and **Media Size** settings the same as those for the roll media. (→ [P.2-26](#))

1. Load a roll with media that is the same type and size as the printer settings.
2. Select the media type.
3. Select length if the media remaining detection feature for roll media is on.
4. Press the **OK** button.

Solution2: Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Remove Roll Media

Problem1: The printer is waiting for you to remove the ejected roll media.



Solution1: Perform the procedure below to remove the roll.

1. Open the upper cover.
2. Push the release lever to the rear and remove the roll.
3. Pull the release lever toward you to close it.
4. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

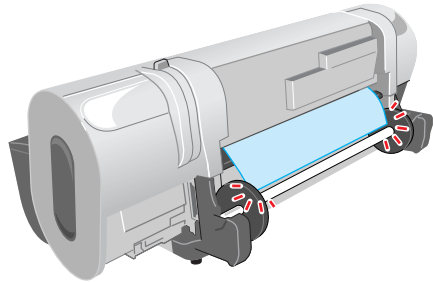
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

End of Roll

Problem1: The roll media has run out.

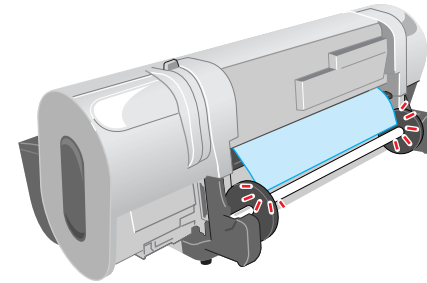


Solution1: Perform the procedure below to load the same size and type of roll media in use. (→ [P.2-26](#))

1. Load the size and type of roll in use.
2. Select the media type.
3. Select length if the media remaining detection feature for roll media is on.
4. Press the **OK** button.

RIIMed.Shortage Replace RIIMed.

Problem1: The length of the media required for the received print job is longer than the amount of media remaining on the roll.



Solution1: Follow the procedure below to load a new roll in the printer. (→ [P.2-26](#))

1. Load a new roll of the size and type to be used.
2. Select the **Media Type**.
3. If the roll remaining media function is on, select the length of the media.
4. Press the **OK** button.

Solution2: Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for more than 1 second to stop printing.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

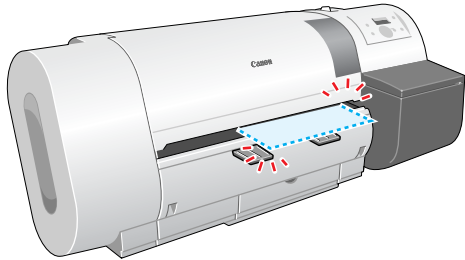
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Load Cut Sheet

Problem1: The printer is waiting for a cut sheet to be loaded.



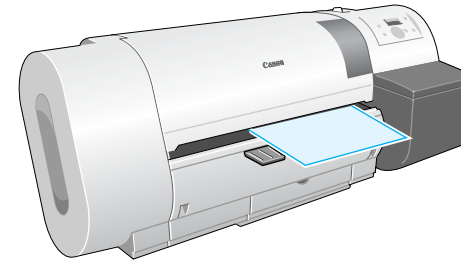
Solution1: Follow the procedure below to set the media type and media size settings the same as those for the cut sheet. (→ [P.2-35](#))

1. Load a cut sheet that is the same type and size as the printer settings.
2. Select the media type.
3. Press the **OK** button.

Solution2: Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Remove Cut Sheet

Problem1: The printer waits for you to remove the ejected sheet.



Solution1: Perform the procedure below to remove the cut sheet. (→ [P.2-39](#))

1. Open the upper cover.
2. Push the release lever to the rear and remove the cut sheet.
3. Pull the release lever to close it.
4. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

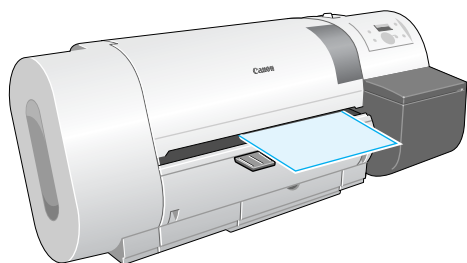
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Eject Cut Sheet

Problem1: The printer received print data for the roll media while a cut sheet was loaded.



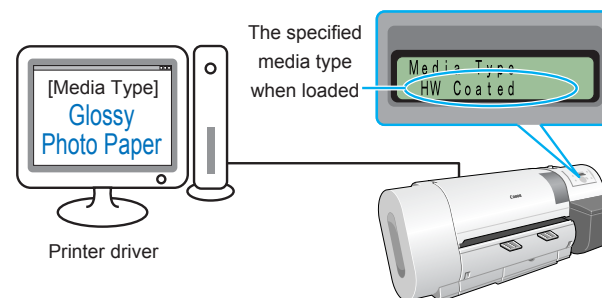
Solution1: Perform the procedure below to remove the cut sheet. (→ P.2-39)

1. Open the upper cover.
2. Push the release lever to the rear and remove the cut sheet.
3. Pull the release lever to close it.
4. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.
5. Load the roll.

Solution2: Hold down the [▲] / [▼] button for at least 1 second to stop printing.

Incorrect Media

Problem1: The media type specified for printing does not match the setting for the media in the feed source.



Solution1: Perform the procedure below to correct the media type setting on the printer.

1. Confirm the type of media loaded for the print job.
2. Enter the confirmed media type on the printer operation panel. (→ P.2-32)

Solution2: Perform the procedure below to correct the Media Type setting on the printer.

1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. Use the printer driver to select the media type so the value matches the loaded media type, then re-start the print job.

Med.SizeNoMatch

Problem1: A roll of a width that cannot be used with borderless printing is loaded in the printer.

Solution1: Load a roll media of a width that can be used with borderless printing. (→ P.2-26)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

No Borderless

Problem1: The data received cannot be used for borderless printing.

Solution1: Follow the procedure below to correct the **Media Type** setting on the printer.

1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for 1 second or longer to stop printing.
2. Use the printer driver to confirm size of the print data and enlargement/reduction settings, then perform printing.

Problem2: The skew detection function is off.

Solution1: For the selected print media, select **Standard** or **Loose** for **Set Skew Check Lv.**, then load the media.

Illegal Med Pos

Problem1: The position of the loaded media is incorrect.

Solution1: Load 10", 14", 16", JIS B2, or ARCH24 roll paper.

Solution2: Re-set the roll paper correctly on the roll holder. (→ [P.2-26](#))

Problem2: The width of the media in the data received for printing cannot be used with borderless printing.

Solution1: Follow the procedure below to correct the setting so the printer can print on a media that can be used for borderless printing.

1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. In the printer driver change the setting for **Roll Paper Width** to a size that can be used with borderless printing, then print again.

NoBordlessData

Problem1: The data received cannot be used for borderless printing.

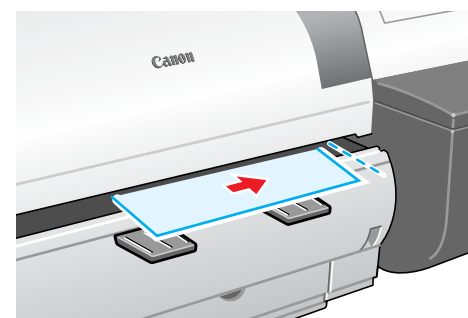
Solution1: Press the **Online** button to continue borderless printing.

Solution2: Do the procedure below to correct the selection for the media type.

1. Hold down the **Stop/Eject** button for at least 1 second to stop printing.
2. Use the printer driver to confirm size of the print data and enlargement/reduction settings, then perform the print.

Size undetected

Problem1: The media has shifted out of the correct load position, or the media is curled.



Solution1: Set the media correctly. (→ [P.2-26](#), [P.2-35](#))

Problem2: The printer interior is dusty or dirty.

Solution1: Open the upper cover and clean inside the printer. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

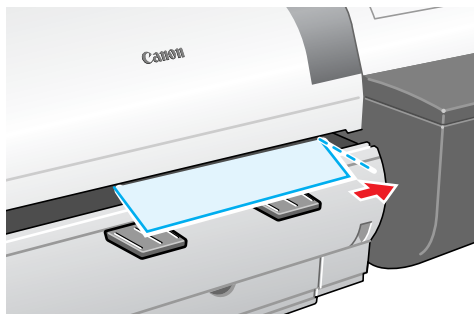
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Media Skewed

Problem1: The loaded media is skewed.



Solution1: Perform the procedure below if roll media is in use. (→ [P.2-26](#))

1. Open the upper cover.
2. Press the release lever to the rear to open.
3. Align the right edge of the roll media with the line aligned with the right edge of the roll, then pull the release lever to the front to close.
4. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.
5. Select the media type and press the **OK** button.

Solution2: Perform the procedure below if you are using cut sheets. (→ [P.2-35](#))

1. Open the upper cover.
2. Press the release lever to the rear to open.
3. Align the right edge of the cut sheet with the right side, align the leading edge of the sheet inside the printer, then pull the release lever toward you to close.
4. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.

Media Too Large

Problem1: The loaded media is larger than any media size allowed for loading in the printer.

Solution1: Set the correct size media then try again.
(→ [P.2-26](#), [P.2-35](#))

Media Too Small

Problem1: The loaded media is smaller than any media size allowed for loading in the printer.

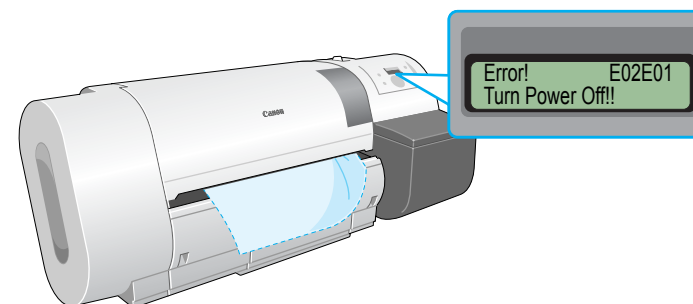
Solution1: Set the correct size media then try again.
(→ [P.2-26](#), [P.2-35](#))

Problem2: Media size smaller than the required size was set for printing the print pattern or the nozzle check pattern.

Solution1: Load A3 size media or larger for printing.

Media Jam

Problem1: Media has jammed in the printer.



Solution1: Perform the procedure below to remove the jammed sheet. (→ [P.6-35](#))

1. Switch the printer off.
2. Remove the jammed sheet.
3. Switch the printer on.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Cut Failed

Problem1: Leading edge of the roll media not detected after cutting.

Solution1: Perform the procedure below to remove the jammed sheet. (→ P.2-33)

1. Open the upper cover.
2. Use a cutter to cut the sheet manually and remove the sheet.
3. Re-load the roll.
4. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.

Drying..

Problem1: The printer is waiting for the ink to dry on the printout.

Solution1: Wait until the printed sheet ejects automatically.

Feed Limit..

Problem1: You pressed [▲] button on the operation panel to feed more media than allowed.

Solution1: Release the [▲] button to stop feeding the media.

Cut by Stop key

Problem1: The loaded media cannot be cut automatically.

Solution1: The printer stops after the print job ends to protect the printing surface. Support the printout with your hand to prevent it from falling into the output stacker, and then press the **Stop/Eject** button to cut the printout.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

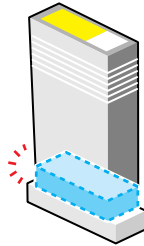
Contents

Index

Ink Messages

Check Ink Level

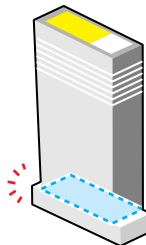
Problem1: Ink in ink tank is running low.



Solution1: Obtain a new ink tank. If a long print job is in progress, or if you need to print a job of many sheets, you should replace the ink tank with a new one.

Rep. Ink Tank

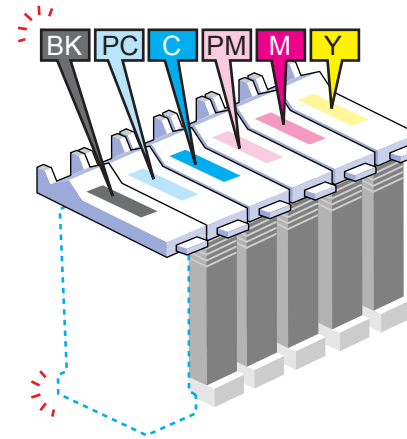
Problem1: Ink in an ink tank has run out.



Solution1: Open the right cover and install a new ink tank for the color that is flashing on the printer operation panel. (→ [P.4-2](#))

No Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank

Problem1: The ink tank of the displayed color is not installed.



Solution1: Install correctly the ink tank named in the message. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Problem2: A problem has occurred with the ink tank indicated on the display.

Solution1: Replace the ink tank with a new one. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

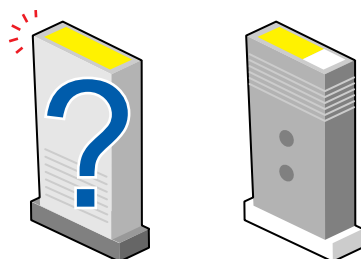
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Check Bk/PC/C/PM/M/Y Ink Tank

Problem1: The installed ink tank named in the display by the color of its holder cannot be used.



Solution1: Make sure that the ink tank indicated on the display is installed correctly. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Important

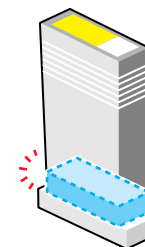
- If the ink does not eject properly as a result of installing the wrong ink tank, or if the images are very poor quality, and the Bk tank was mistakenly installed, perform the **ChangeBkInkType** operation (→ [P.4-48](#)). If you mistakenly installed any other ink cartridge, perform the **Move Printer** operation, and then install new ink tanks. (→ [P.4-32](#))

Problem2: A problem has occurred with the ink tank indicated on the display.

Solution1: Replace the ink tank with a new one. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Not Enough Ink

Problem1: Ink in the tank is low and there is not enough ink for Head Cleaning B, or any other job that requires a large amount of ink.



Solution1: Replace the ink tank where the ink level is low. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Ink level?

Problem1: The ink level detection function is set to off.

Solution1: This message is displayed every time a print job is executed and the printer goes offline. Press the **Online** button to continue printing.

Solution2: To retrieve the ink level display, replace with the ink tanks specified for use with this printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Remove Ink Tank

Problem1: While the **Move Printer** message is displayed, the right cover is closed without removing the ink tanks.

Solution1: Remove the ink tank.

Chk Bk Ink Type

Problem1: The black ink type does not match the loaded media.

Solution1: Check the black ink setting in the printer driver and make sure that it is correct.

Solution2: In the printer driver check the media selection setting to determine whether the selected media type is a type that cannot be used with the current black ink type. (→ [P.2-2](#))

MTCart Full Soon

Problem1: The maintenance cartridge is almost full.

Solution1: The current print job can continue. Obtain a new MT cartridge.

Replace MT-Cart

Problem1: The maintenance cartridge is full.

Solution1: Replace the maintenance cartridge after stopping the print job. (→ [P.4-16](#))

No MT-Cartridge

Problem1: A maintenance cartridge is not installed.

Solution1: Install a maintenance cartridge. (→ [P.4-16](#))

Check MT-Cart.

Problem1: The maintenance cartridge installed is either used (full) or is a maintenance cartridge that cannot be used with this printer.

Solution1: Install a new maintenance cartridge intended for use with this printer. (→ [P.4-16](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

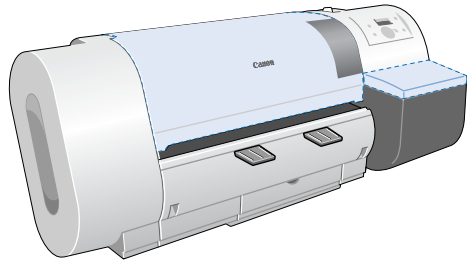
Contents

Index

Other Messages

Close xxx Cover (xxx name of the cover)

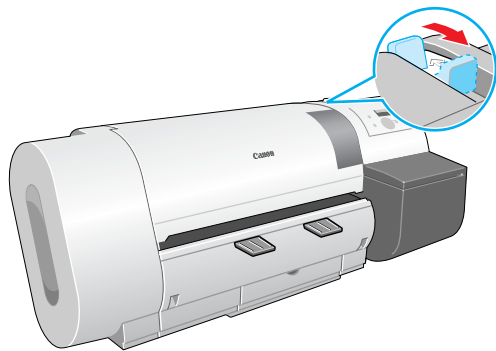
Problem1: The named cover is open.



Solution1: Close the cover named in display on the operation panel.

Reset Lever

Problem1: Open the release lever.



Solution1: Pull the release lever toward you to close it.

Check Head Hght L/M/H → L/M/H

Problem1: The current height of the printhead (displayed at the left end of the bottom display line) is not the appropriate height (displayed at the right end of the bottom display line) for printing on the type of media loaded for the print job.

Solution1: Confirm the height (H/M/L) named at the right end of the bottom display line, then perform procedure below to adjust the height of the print head.

1. Press the **Online** button to set the printer offline.
2. Hold down [◀] or [▶] for more than 1 sec. to move the carriage to the center.
3. Open the upper cover.
4. Set the printhead height adjustment lever to the correct position for the media.
5. Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

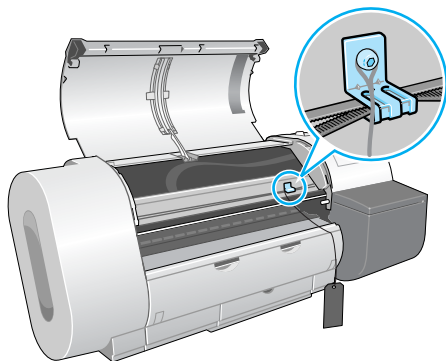
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

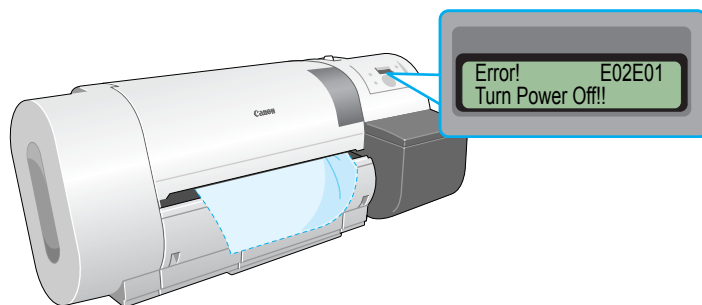
Turn Power Off!!

Problem1: The tape inside the upper cover or the belt stopper has not been removed.



Solution1: Switch the printer off, open the upper cover, remove the tape and belt stopper, then press the **Power** button. (→ Quick Start Guide)

Problem2: Media has jammed in the printer.



Solution1: Switch the printer off and remove the jammed sheet, reset the media, then switch the printer on again. (→ P.6-35)

Problem3: A problem occurred in the printer.

Solution1: Switch the printer off, wait for over 3 seconds, then switch the printer on again.

Solution2: If the message appears again after performing the procedure above, read the content of the message and write down the first line, switch the printer off, then contact a Canon service center.

No Printhead

Problem1: The printhead is not installed.

Solution1: Install the printhead correctly. (→ P.4-24)

Printhead Error!

Problem1: A problem has occurred with the printhead.

Solution1: Switch the printer off, wait for over 3 seconds, then switch the printer on again.

Solution2: If the message appears again after performing the procedure above, read the content of the message and write down the first line, switch the printer off, then contact a Canon service center.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Check Printhead

Problem1: A printhead that cannot be used with the printer is installed.

Solution1: Install the printhead for this printer. (→ [P.4-24](#))

Problem2: Printhead abnormal.

Solution1: Open the upper cover. If the carriage is out, replace the printhead. (→ [P.4-23](#))

Solution2: If the carriage is in, close the upper cover, press the **Online** button, select **Replace P.head** then replace the printhead. (→ [P.4-23](#))

Problem3: If you see this message when the print job starts, the condition of the printhead is poor and cannot eject ink properly.

Solution1: Press the Stop/Eject button to stop the print job, perform Head Cleaning B, then start the print job again. (→ [P.4-38](#))
If this does not solve the problem, replace the printhead. (→ [P.4-24](#))

Solution2: Although you can perform the print job if you press the Online button, the print quality may become poor.

Problem4: Ink is not filled in the printhead properly.

Solution1: Remove all ink tanks and reinsert them properly. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Scale Read Error

Problem1: A problem has occurred with the carriage.

Solution1: Open the upper cover and make sure a foreign object has not fallen into the printer.

Solution2: Switch the printer off, wait for over 3 seconds, then switch the printer on again.

Solution3: If the message appears again after performing the procedure above, read the content of the message and write down the first line, switch the printer off, then contact a Canon service center.

Mist Full Soon

Problem1: The printer mist processing is full.

Solution1: Printing can continue. While performing a long print job or borderless printing, you can pause a print job so you can contact a Canon service center.

Mist Count Error

Problem1: The printer has reached the limit for ink mist processing.

Solution1: Read the message in the display and jot down the content of the message, switch the printer off, then contact a Canon service center.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Adj. Failed

Problem1: Printhead nozzles are clogged.

Solution1: Reload the media and then print the nozzle check pattern to check the condition of the nozzles. (→ [P.4-36](#)) If the printhead is not operating properly, perform **Head Cleaning**. (→ [P.4-38](#))

Problem2: The high-transparency film for which the printhead or amount of line feed cannot be adjusted is loaded. (→ [P.4-40](#), [P.4-42](#))

Solution1: When you adjust the printhead (**Auto Head Adj.**), you should use the media of the type (other than film) that you use most frequently. (→ [P.4-40](#))

Solution2: To adjust the amount of line feed (**Adjust Band**), perform the procedure for “Adjusting Line Feed Manually”. (→ [P.4-43](#))

Incorrect Value

Problem1: The IP address, subnet mask setting, or the default gateway setting is not correct.

Solution1: Set the correct settings for the IP address, subnet mask and default gateway. For more details about the values of the printer network information settings, contact your system administrator. ([P.5-5](#))

ERROR nnnnnn (n = Numbers)

Problem1: Error in the print data.

Solution1: If the job does not print correctly, check the settings then restart the print job.

Solution2: Switch the printer off, wait for over 3 seconds, then switch the printer on again.

Solution3: If the message appears again after performing the procedure above, write down the number of the error displayed in the first line, switch the printer off, then contact a Canon service center.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

When You Cannot Print

Check the following items when the printer does not operate and will not print.

Printing Will Not Start
No error message is displayed
Error Message Displayed
Ink initialization operation starts unexpectedly

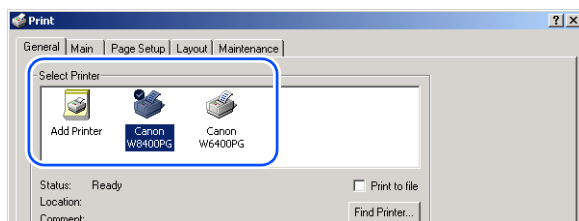
Printing Halts During Print Job
Error Message Displayed
Ejected Paper Is Blank

Cannot Print on Network
Cannot Print from a TCP/IP Network
Cannot Print on AppleTalk Network
Cannot print from the NetWare network.
The printer is not recognized, even with IP Print (Auto) selected with Mac OS 8.6.

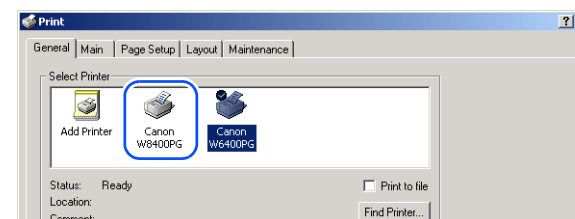
Printing Will Not Start

No error message is displayed

Problem1: The printer has not been selected as the destination for the print job output.



Solution1: If you are using Windows, select the name of the printer for **Printer** in the Print dialog box and then try to print again.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

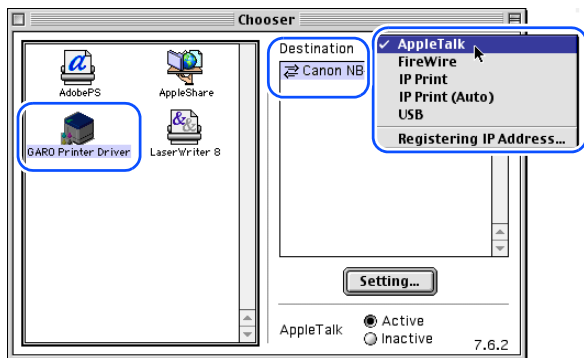
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

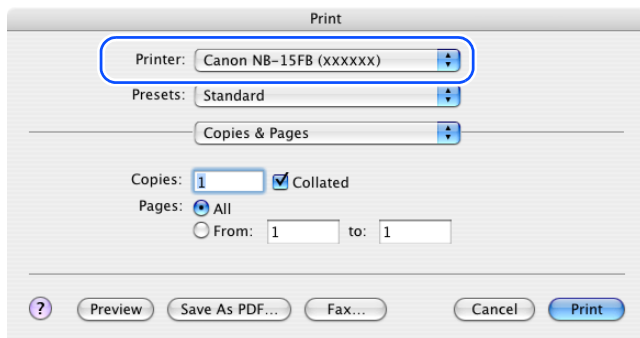
Contents

Index

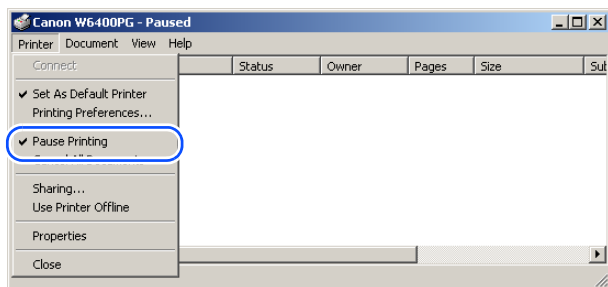
Solution2: If you are using Mac OS 8/9, make sure that the correct name of the printer is selected with the **Chooser**, then try again.



Solution3: For Mac OS X, select the name of the printer for **Printer** in the Print dialog box and then try to print again.

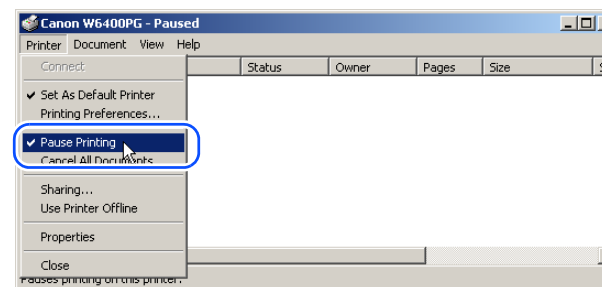


Problem2: The print queue has halted.



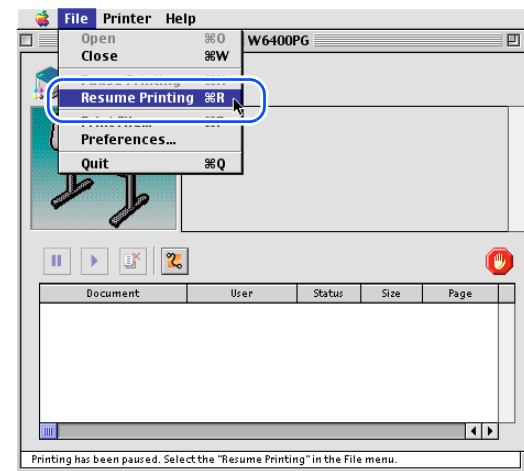
Solution1: Windows:

1. Select the icon for the printer in the **Printer** folder.
2. From the **File** menu select **Pause Printing** to release this setting.



Solution2: Mac OS 8/9:

1. Open GARO Printmonitor.
2. From the **File** menu select **Resume Printing** to release the print pause.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

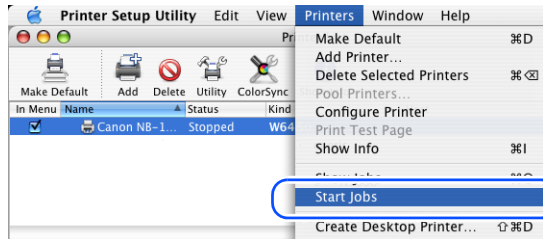
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Solution3: Mac OS X:

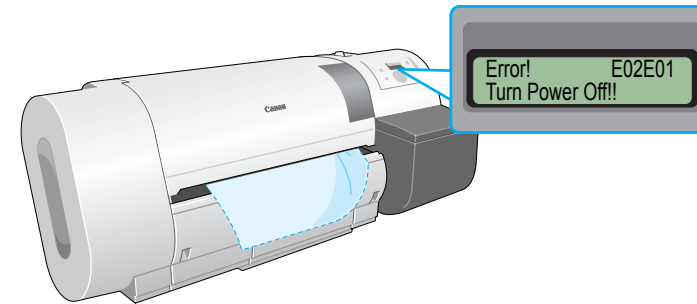
1. Open the Printer Setup Utility (Print Center).
2. From the **Printers** menu select **Start Jobs** to release the print pause.

**Problem3:** With Mac OS 8/9, the printer is shared via USB.

Solution1: Connect the printer directly to the computer to be used for printing through its USB or IEEE1394 port. If you want to share the printer, perform the print job from a Windows computer.

Error Message Displayed

Problem1: Media jam has occurred.



Solution1: Remove the jammed sheets. (→ P.6-35)

Problem2: The printer went offline.

Solution1: After correcting the problem in response to the error message, press the **Online** button to set the printer online.

Solution2: If the operation panel display reads **Offline** press the **Online** button to set the printer online.

Problem3: A problem occurred during printing.

Solution1: When an error message appears in the printer operation panel or the Windows display, read the message in the GARO Status Monitor, or in the GARO Printmonitor for Macintosh, then correct the problem. (→ P.6-2)

Problem4: No print media loaded.

Solution1: Replenish the print media in the specified media supply source.

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Problem5: The media type in the media source selection is not selected.

Solution1: Use the printer operation panel to select the correct setting for the media type. (→ [P.2-32](#))

Solution2: If the media type selection is incorrect, cancel the print job in the computer side, open the printer driver and select the correct setting for the print media loaded. (→ [P.1-46](#), [P.2-4](#))

Problem6: No ink.

Solution1: When the ink tank replacement message appears, replace the ink tank for the indicated color. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Ink initialization operation starts unexpectedly

Problem1: When the printer was switched off previously, this force cancelled a cleaning operation.

Solution1: Wait for the ink initialization operation to finish. Ink filling may require up to 10 minutes to complete.

Printing Halts During Print Job

Error Message Displayed

Problem1: An error message is displayed during printing.

Solution1: Read the message displayed in the GARO Status Monitor or GARO Printmonitor, and correct the problem indicated by the error message. (→ [P.6-2](#))

Problem2: Roll media ran out during the print job and the tape on the trailing edge of the media sheet is preventing the rest of the sheet from feeding.

Solution1: Follow the procedure for removing a media jam. Remove the used roll and replace it with a new one. (→ [P.6-35](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Ejected Paper Is Blank

Problem1: A blank page is ejected from the previous print job.

Solution1: The print job starts after the blank page is ejected.

Problem2: The leading edge of the roll media is cut to an even length.

Solution1: When the roll was loaded, a plain cut sheet was ejected as part of the normal procedure to align the roll media correctly. When the preparation is finished, the printer is ready to print.

Problem3: Printhead nozzles are blocked.

Solution1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a nozzle is blocked, perform the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-38](#))

Problem4: An ink tank has run out of ink.

Solution1: Check the ink tanks and replace any empty ink tanks. (→ [P.4-2](#))

Problem5: Printer is damaged.

Solution1: Contact a Canon service center.

Cannot Print on Network

Cannot Print from a TCP/IP Network

Problem1: The LAN port and network cable are not connected correctly.

Solution1: Confirm that the connection of the cable that connects the printer to the network is secure, then press the **Power** button to cycle the printer off and on again. (→ [P.5-5](#))

Problem2: The printer cannot recognize automatically the LAN communication method.

Solution1: Use the printer operation panel to select **Interface Setup > Ethernet Driver** then set each item for the communication method that is being used on the LAN. (→ [P.5-5](#))

Problem3: The TCP/IP network is not set correctly.

Solution1: Confirm that the IP Address is set correctly. (→ [P.5-7](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

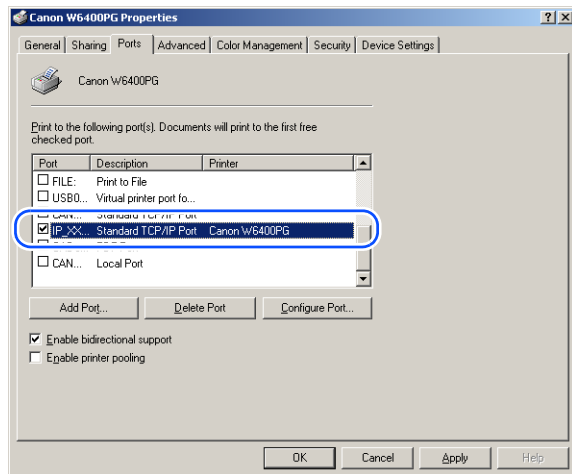
Contents

Index

Problem4: The settings for the computer used for printing are not set correctly.

Solution1: Confirm the following points:

1. Correct printer driver installed?
The printer driver must be installed on every computer that will be printing from Windows.
2. Is the output destination port set correctly for every computer that will be used for printing?
Select **Printers** under **Control Panel** to check the output destination.



Problem5: The name of the file you are trying to print is too long.

Solution1: Normally, LPR (with Windows NT: Microsoft TCP/IP printing) sends the job name based on the name of the software application and the name of the file. However, if the name of the job is more than 255 characters, LPR cannot send the job. In such a case, shorten the name of the file.

Cannot Print on AppleTalk Network

Problem1: The LAN port and network cable are not connected correctly.

Solution1: Confirm that the connection of the cable that connects the printer to the network is secure, then press the **Power** button to cycle the printer off and on again. (→ P.5-5)

Problem2: The printer cannot recognize automatically the LAN communication method.

Solution1: Use the printer operation panel to select **Interface Setup > Ethernet Driver** then set each item for the communication method that is being used on the LAN. (→ P.5-5)

Problem3: The AppleTalk protocol has not been enabled for the printer.

- Solution1:** Follow the procedure below to use the Remote UI to enable the AppleTalk protocol.
1. Open the Remote UI and log in as an Administrator.
 2. On the **Device Manager** menu, click **Network**.
 3. Click the **Edit** button under **AppleTalk**.
 4. Under **Phase Type** select **Phase 2**, then under **Zone** select the **Zone** where the printer is located, then click the **OK** button (if zones have not been set for the network, you will see an asterisk (*) displayed).
 5. Return to the **Network** page of the Remote UI and click the **Reset** button.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

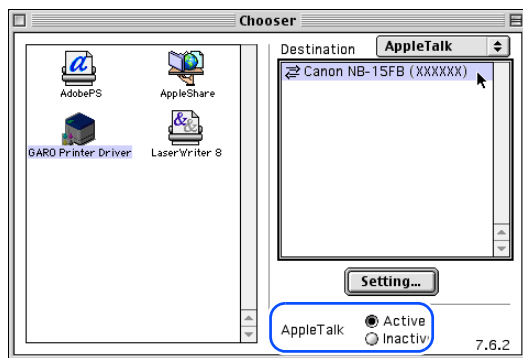
Problem4: The computer and the printer are not on the same network.

Solution1: If the number of routers are exceeded with the Zeroconf function, the computer cannot connect to the printer if it is on a different network. Connect the computer and printer to the same network. For more about the network settings, please contact the network manager.

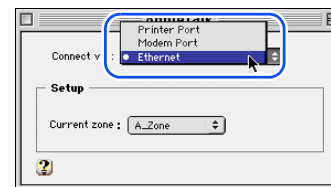
Problem5: The settings for the computer used for printing are not set correctly.

Solution1: Mac OS 8.6/9x:

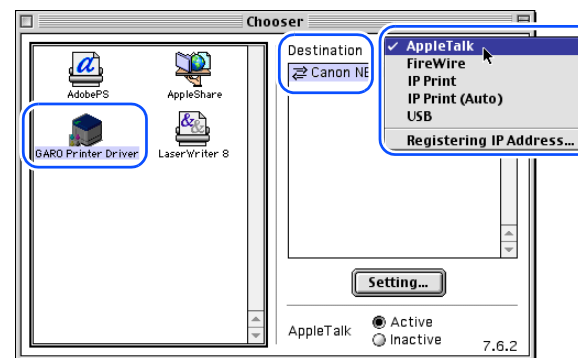
1. Open **Chooser** from the Apple menu.
2. Under **AppleTalk** make sure that **Active** is selected.



3. Under **AppleTalk** in the **Control Panels** of the Apple menu, make sure that the printer is selected for connection to the correct port for the destination.



4. In **Chooser** make sure that the GARO Printer Driver is installed.
5. In **Chooser**, select **GARO Printer Driver**, and under **Destination** select **AppleTalk**, then select again the name of the printer in the printer list.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

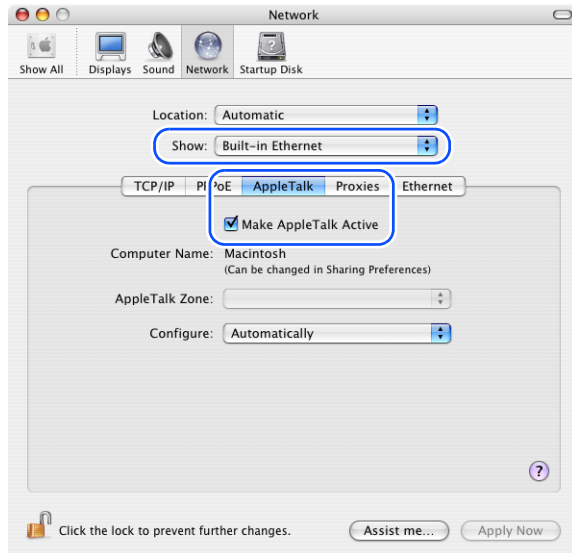
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Solution2: Mac OS X:

1. Open **Network** for **System Preferences**.
2. Under **Show**, select the name of the LAN port where the printer is connected.
3. Open the **AppleTalk** panel and make sure that **Make AppleTalk Active** is checked on.



4. Open **Printer Setup Utility (Print Center)** and make sure that the name of this printer is displayed in the printer list. If the name is not displayed, click the **Add** button to add the name of the printer.
5. If the name of the printer does not display after clicking the **Add** button, use the provided User Software CD-ROM to reinstall the printer driver for the printer.

Cannot print from the NetWare network.

Problem1: The printer LAN port and cable are not connected correctly.

Solution1: Confirm that the connection of the cable that connects the printer to the network is secure, then press the **Power** button to cycle the printer off and on again. (→ P.5-5)

Problem2: The printer cannot recognize automatically the LAN communication method.

Solution1: Use the printer operation panel to select **Interface Setup > Ethernet Driver** then set each item for the communication method that is being used on the LAN. (→ P.5-5)

Problem3: The NetWare network is not set correctly.

Solution1: Confirm the following points:

1. Make sure that the NetWare file server is running.
2. Is there enough disk space available on the NetWare file server? You may not be able to perform large print jobs if there is not enough free space available.
3. Start NWADMIN or PCONSOLE and confirm (1) that the print service is set correctly, and (2) that the print queue has been enabled for use. (→ P.5-38)
4. Make sure that the printer network settings are correct. Especially, confirm that a frame type is enabled for the **Frame Type** setting. (→ P.5-20, P.5-34)

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Problem4: The settings for the computer used for printing are not set correctly.

Solution1: Confirm the following points:

1. Correct printer driver installed? Before printing, the printer driver must be installed on every computer. (→ P.5-31)
2. Is the output destination port set correctly for every computer that will be used for printing? Select **Printers** under **Control Panel** to check the output destination.

Problem5: A print job data stream cannot be sent from the NetWare server to a printer in another subnet.

Solution1: When data is sent from NetWare to the printer, the data is sent in the NCP Burst mode, but in some network environments data sent to a printer on another subnet is lost. If this problem occurs, switch off the NCP Burst mode under the printer protocol settings and try again.

Problem6: **Parallel** is selected for the printer type when using the queue server in the queue server mode.

Solution1: Select **Other/Unknown** for the printer type.

The printer is not recognized, even with IP Print (Auto) selected with Mac OS 8.6.

Problem1: With OS 8.6 when the router on the network cannot be recognized, communication cannot be performed with TCP/IP.

Solution1: With **Chooser** select **Destination > Registering IP Address** and register the printer IP address, then with **Chooser** select **Destination > IP Print** then select the printer name of the registered IP address.

Solution2: With **Chooser** select **Destination > AppleTalk** and select the printer name.

Solution3: Use Mac OS 9.0.4 or later if you want to operate the printer with IP Print (Auto).

Solution4: Locate the printer and Macintosh in the same subnet, then assign them fixed IP addresses.

Solution5: If there is a DHCP server in the network, locate the printer and Macintosh in the same subnet, then assign the IP addresses from the DHCP server.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Unexpected Printing Results

If the results you see in the print job are not what you expect, check the items described below.

Poor Quality	Abnormal Content	Other Problems
Printing is faint	Broken lines are visible.	Ink consumption is exceedingly high.
Ink Smeared	Random, bizarre characters are printing.	The message MTCart Full Soon does not go off even after replacing a new maintenance cartridge.
Edges smeared with ink	Length for the media feed method is not correct.	Media is not cutting straight
Back sides of printed sheets are dirty	Printing in Monochrome	Power does not switch on
Black or white streaks visible	Color Tones Uneven	Roll media not inserted in feed slot
Horizontal stripes appear in images printed on Synthetic Paper.	Image color borders printing thick	
When printing on Glossy Photo Paper or Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, you may see differences between light and shaded areas on ripple surfaces of the media.	Image edges are faint.	
	The overall printout appears reddish or bluish.	

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Poor Quality

Printing is faint

Problem1: Printing on the incorrect side of the media.

Solution1: Check the front and back side of the media. If you print on the other side of the media, you will not achieve the correct results in printing.

Problem2: Black ink appears scratchy if black ink type is switched frequently.

Solution1: Perform **Head Cleaning B.** (→ [P.4-38](#))

Problem3: Printhead nozzles are blocked.

Solution1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a print head nozzle is blocked, perform the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-36](#), [P.4-38](#))

Solution2: If only the yellow colors appear smeared, you may be able to correct this by selecting on the operation panel **Med. Detail Set.> Correct Smear > On.** (→ [P.1-21](#))

Problem4: A printout is in the output stacker.

Solution1: The capacity of the output stacker is limited to one printout. Start the next print job only after you have removed the previous printout from the output stacker.

Problem5: The ink port needle is stuck and the ink has clogged.

Solution1: Leave the printer with the ink tanks installed for more than 24 hours and then execute **Head Cleaning B.** (→ [P.4-38](#))

Problem6: A piece of jammed sheet remains under the upper cover.

Solution1: Follow the procedure below to remove paper scraps from under the upper cover.

1. Press the **Online** button to display **Offline**.
2. Press and hold [◀] for at least 1 sec. to move the carriage to the center.
3. Open the upper cover.
4. Remove all the paper scraps under the upper cover.

Problem7: The ink was not dry enough for cutting during borderless printing.

Solution1: Select **Med. Detail Set.** on the operation panel, then select a longer setting for the **Drying Time.**

Problem8: You have used the wrong type of black ink tank.

Solution1: Obtain a new black ink tank then perform the Ink Change procedure. (→ [P.4-48](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Ink Smear

Problem1: The selected media type does not match the media loaded in the media supply source.

Solution1: Load the paper feed source named in the message. If the paper is not the same as that specified for the job, pause the print job temporarily, load the correct paper, then print again. (→ [P.2-26](#), [P.2-35](#))

Problem2: The printhead height adjustment lever was moved from the middle to the down position.

Solution1: Set the printhead height adjustment lever to the center position for normal printing. (→ [P.2-40](#))

Problem3: You are printing on thick paper or paper that buckles easily.

Solution1: Make sure that the printhead height adjustment lever is set at the up position. (→ [P.2-40](#))

Problem4: The output assist guides are not pulled out.

Solution1: Pull out on both sides of the output assist guides. (→ [P.2-31](#), [P.2-39](#))

Problem5: The media is wrinkled because it is set improperly.

Solution1: Release the release lever, and then once again align the media.

Edges smeared with ink

Problem1: The platen has become dirty after a borderless print job or printing a small media size.

Solution1: Open the upper cover and clean the platen. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Problem2: The selected **Media Type** is not correct for the media loaded in the media supply source.

Solution1: Load the paper feed source named in the message. If the paper is not the same as that specified for the job, pause the print job temporarily, load the correct paper, then print again. (→ [P.2-26](#), [P.2-35](#))

Problem3: The media is wrinkled or curled.

Solution1: Remove the creasing or curling then set the media again.

Problem4: A line is printed at the cutting position when the cutting dust reduction function is set.

Solution1: If the cutting dust reduction function is not needed, use the operation panel to switch off this feature for the print media in use.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Back sides of printed sheets are dirty

Problem1: A print job using large size media was executed after a print job on small size media.

Solution1: Clean the part of the platen under the upper cover. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Problem2: The platen was not cleaned after a borderless print job.

Solution1: Clean the part of the platen under the upper cover. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Problem3: Performed the print job with the media width detection function switched off.

Solution1: Clean the part of the platen under the upper cover. (→ [P.4-11](#))

Black or white streaks visible

Problem1: Printhead is out of alignment.

Solution1: Use the operation panel to adjust the amount of feed for the print media in use. (→ [P.4-42](#))

Problem2: Printing is not proceeding smoothly due to an interruption in the flow of data from the computer.

Solution1: Close other applications that are open and cancel other jobs that are executing.

Problem3: The **Feed Priority** item is set for **Print Length**.

Solution1: For the **Feed Priority** item, select **Band Joint** the adjust the amount of feed. (→ [P.4-42](#))

Horizontal stripes appear in images printed on Synthetic Paper.

Problem1: **Standard** is selected for **Print Quality**.

Solution1: In the printer driver, select **High** or **Highest** for **Print Quality**.

When printing on Glossy Photo Paper or Semi-Glossy Photo Paper, you may see differences between light and shaded areas on ripple surfaces of the media.

Problem1: You may not be able to achieve a sufficient image in some print patterns with the printhead in the middle (standard) position.

Solution1: Lower the printhead height adjustment lever to the low position. However, never print on media that wrinkles easily such as Coated Paper or Plain Paper with the printhead height adjustment lever in the low position. This could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Abnormal Content

Broken lines are visible.

Problem1: The printhead has not been aligned correctly.

Solution1: Use the printer operation panel to align the printhead. (→ [P.4-40](#))

Problem2: After switching the black ink type, the position of the printhead occasionally slips.

Solution1: Align the printhead.

Random, bizarre characters are printing.

Problem1: Data from the print job data stream has been lost.

Solution1: Switch the printer and computer off, then switch them on again and start the print job again.

Problem2: Another printer driver was selected for the print job.

Solution1: Select the correct printer driver for the printer and try again. (→ [P.1-32](#))

Problem3: The fonts of the printed data are deranged.

Solution1: Make sure that the software application you are using has the correct type of fonts and that they have been installed correctly.
(→ [Software Application Instructions](#))

Length for the media feed method is not correct.

Problem1: **Band Joint** is selected.

Solution1: If you want to match size the media feed direction correctly, select **Print Length** for the **Feed Priority** item, then enter the setting for the **Adjust Length**. The amount of media feed can be adjusted in 0.02% increments.

Printing in Monochrome

Problem1: The printer driver's **Color Mode** is set to **Monochrome (Photo), Monochrome, or Black Only**.

Solution1: Select **Color** for the **Color Mode** in the printer driver and try again.
(→ [Printer Driver Online Help](#))

Problem2: Color ink tank nozzle is clogged.

Solution1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a print head nozzle is blocked, perform the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-36](#), [P.4-38](#))

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Color Tones Uneven

Problem1: The color adjustment for the printer driver has not been performed.

Solution1: Use the printer driver to adjust the colors with the settings on the **Color Settings** of the **Color Mode** dialog box.
(→ Printer Driver Online Help)

Problem2: The computer and monitor have not been adjusted correctly for color.

Solution1: Perform monitor color correction.
(→ Monitor Instruction)

Solution2: The color management setting in the software application is not set correctly.
(→ Software Application Instructions)

Problem3: Color ink tank nozzle is clogged.

Solution1: Print a nozzle check pattern to confirm the condition of the printhead. If a print head nozzle is blocked, perform the printhead cleaning procedure. (→ [P.4-36](#), [P.4-38](#))

Problem4: A color ink tank is inserted in the wrong slot.

Solution1: On the printer operation panel, execute **Move Printer**, remove the ink tank from the printer, then insert the correct color ink tank.
(→ [P.4-32](#), Quick Start Guide)

Solution2: After performing the above procedure, execute **Nozzle Check**. If each color is not printing correctly, on the printer operation panel execute **Head Cleaning B** (→ [P.4-36](#), [P.4-38](#))

Problem5: Yellow ink is smearing.

Solution1: On the operation panel select **Med. Detail Set.** > **Correct Smear** > **On**. (→ [P.1-21](#))

Image color borders printing thick

Problem1: Ink is clogged in a nozzle.

Solution1: On the **Layout** sheet of the printer driver, under **Special Settings** set **SSC Adjustment** to **Level 1**, then execute the print job again. If printing at **Level 1** does not solve the problem, select **Level 2** and perform the print again. However, please remember that using this feature can cause changes in the color hues over the entire image so you should check the hues as you are printing.

Image edges are faint.

Problem1: The setting of the vacuum fan is too strong.

Solution1: Select a weaker setting for the vacuum fan. However, this solution does not apply to printing of a high-precision image.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

The overall printout appears reddish or bluish.

Problem1: Color balance is not correct.

Solution1: Follow the procedure below to select **Adjust Printer > Color Adj.** and then restore all the color settings to their factory default settings.

1. Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer** then press [▼].
3. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Color Adj.** then press [▼].
4. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Return Defaults** then press [▼].
5. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Yes**, then press **OK**.

Solution2: If the procedure above does not correct the color balance, select **Adjust Printer > Color Adj.** and then change the settings for each color.

1. Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.
2. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Adjust Printer** then press [▼].
3. Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Color Adj.** then press [▼].
4. Press [◀] or [▶] to select the ink color to correct then press [▼].

5. Press [◀] or [▶] to lighten or darken the selected color by selecting **1** or **3** then press the **OK** button.
6. To adjust the other colors, repeat **Step 4** and **5**.



- If you need to adjust dark colors, adjust the Y, M, C, K inks.
- If you need to adjust bright colors, adjust the PM, PC inks.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Other Problems

Ink consumption is exceedingly high.

Problem1: There are many sheets with large areas of color.

Solution1: Printing photographs or other images that require a lot of color fill consumes large amounts of ink. This is not unusual.

Problem2: Executing **Head Cleaning B** very often.

Solution1: **Head Cleaning B** consumes a large amount of ink (this is not unusual). It is not recommended to execute **Head Cleaning B** unless after the printer has been moved, after the printer has been stored and not used for a long period, or having problems with the printhead.

Problem3: The printer consumes ink for the initial ink tank filling.

Solution1: The first time the printer used after it is set up or moved to a new location, the ink level display may drop to as low as 80% as a result of filling the printhead and ink tanks with ink (this is not abnormal).

The message **MTCart Full Soon** does not go off even after replacing a new maintenance cartridge.

Problem1: The printer has not yet recognized the new maintenance cartridge.

Solution1: Replace the maintenance cartridge and press the **Information** button.

Solution2: After replacing a new maintenance cartridge the message disappears upon executing a print or cleaning operation.

Media is not cutting straight

Problem1: The media is wrinkled at the cutting position.

Solution1: Flatten the media at the cutting position.

Power does not switch on

Problem1: The power cord was unplugged with the printer power on.

Solution1: Wait three minutes with the power cord unplugged, then plug in the power cord again and switch the printer on.

Roll media not inserted in feed slot

Problem1: The roll media is curled.

Solution1: Insert either the left or right corner of the media at a skewed angle into the feed slot, then straighten the edge of the media so it is parallel with the back of the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

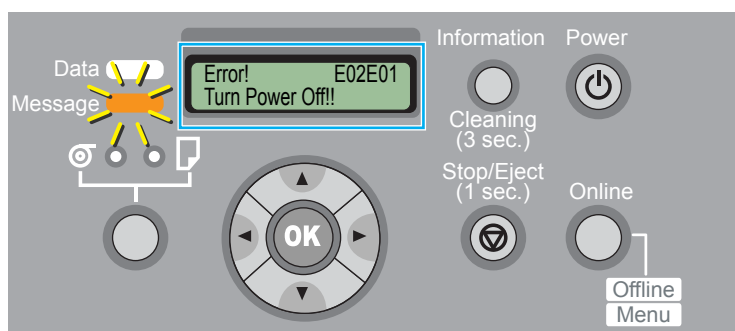
Contents

Index

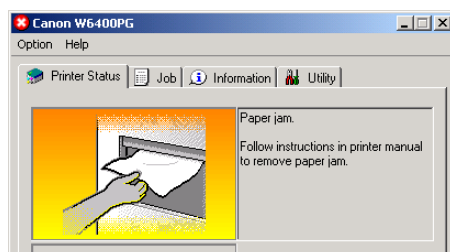
Handling Jams

The printer stops and a **Media Jam** or **Turn Power Off!!** message appears on the printer display as soon as a jam occurs. When a jam occurs, use the following procedure to check the jam points and remove the jammed media.

● Operation Panel



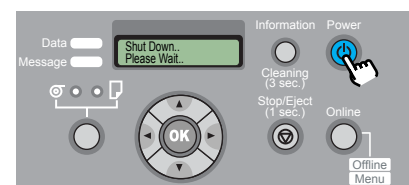
● GARO StatusMonitor (Windows)



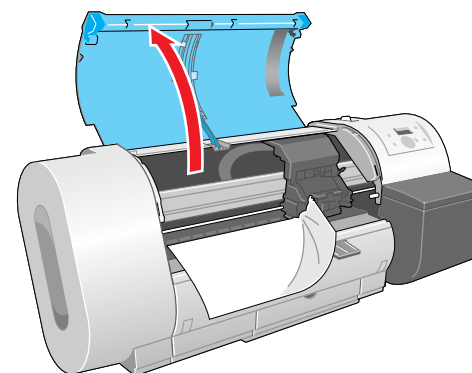
Removing a Roll Media Jam

Follow the procedure below to remove a roll media jam.

- 1 Hold down the **Power** button for more than 1 sec. to extinguish the Online lamp and switch the printer off.



- 2 Open the upper cover.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

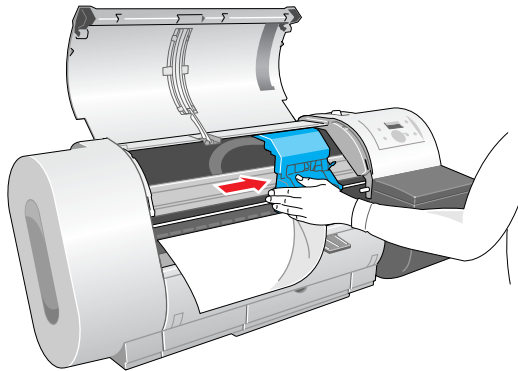
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

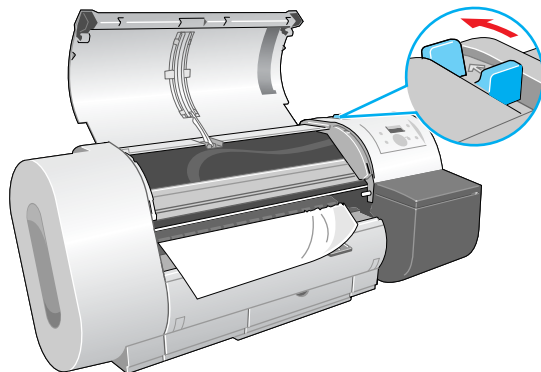
Index

- 3** Move the carriage manually when it is out of its normal park position.

Move it to the right or left edge of the carriage rail before attempting to remove the media.

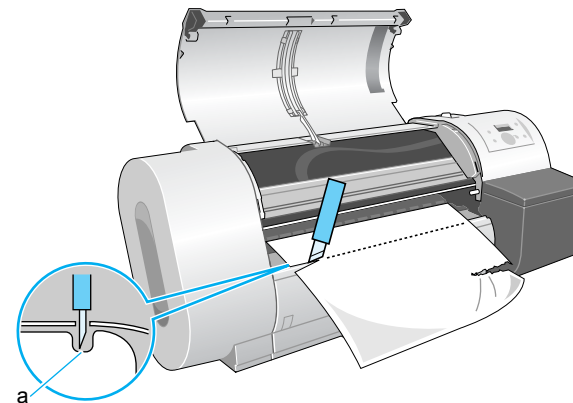


- 4** Push the release lever toward the rear to open.

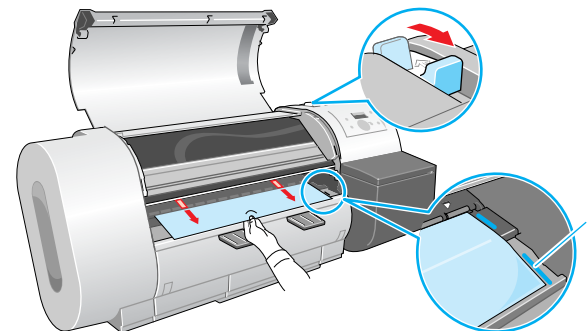


- 5** Hold the left and right corners of the jammed media and pull the sheet forward, then above the cutting groove (a), cut at the edge of the printed area or where the media is wrinkled.

Use a pair of scissors if the media is difficult to cut with a cutter.



- 6** While gently pulling out the center of the leading edge of the roll media, align the right edge of the media so it is parallel to guideline (b), then pull the release lever to the front to close it.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

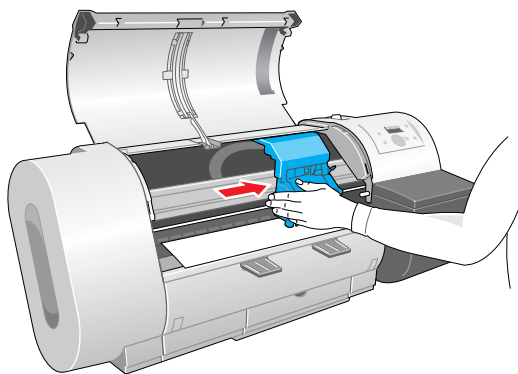
Index

Important

- Do not pull strongly on the roll media when you align it with the guideline. The roll media may not feed out straight in some cases.
- If you pull too much of the roll media out, more of the leading sheet than is needed will be cut.

7 Move the carriage manually when it is out of its normally parked position.

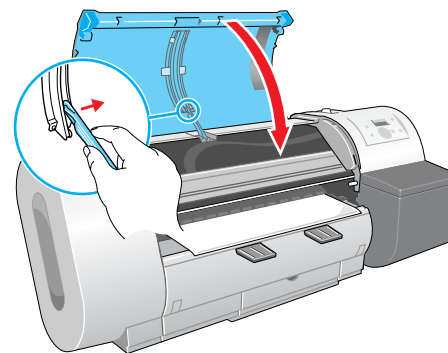
Push the carriage to the right until it stops.



Important

- Be sure to push the carriage to the right. If you push it to the left, the printer will display a carriage error after the printer is switched on.

8 Raise the upper cover stopper to release the lock then close the upper cover.



9 If the printer is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



The media starts to feed, and the printer is ready to use after feeding is finished.

Note

- If you need to correct the alignment of the leading edge, press the **Online** button to display **Offline**, press the [▼] button to feed the media, then select **Force Cutting** on **MAIN MENU** to cut the leading edge. (→ P.7-3)
- After switching roll media and specifying a new media type, please set the media type on the printer operation panel. (→ P.2-32)

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

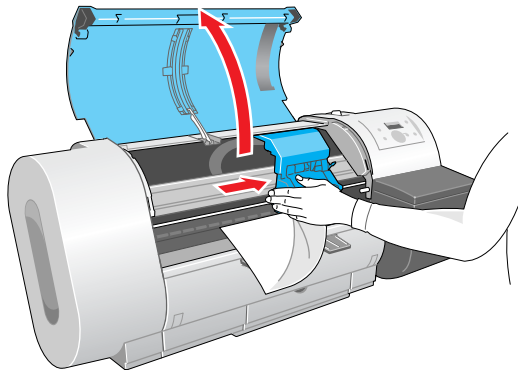
Removing a Cut Sheet Jam

Follow the procedure below to remove a cut sheet jam that occurs during printing.

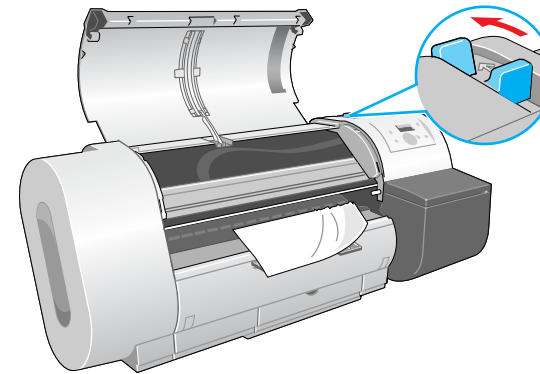
- 1 Hold down the **Power** button for more than 1 sec. to extinguish the Online lamp and switch the printer off.



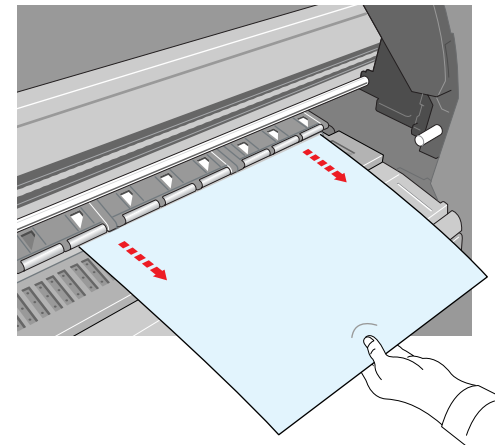
- 2 Open the upper cover and if the carriage is out move it to either the right or the left side.



- 3 Push the release lever toward the rear to open.



- 4 If the sheet is visible, pull the jammed sheet forward gently.



Important

- Do not touch any areas other than those indicated. Your hands could get dirty or this could damage the printer.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

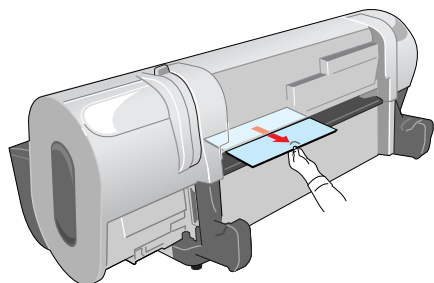
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

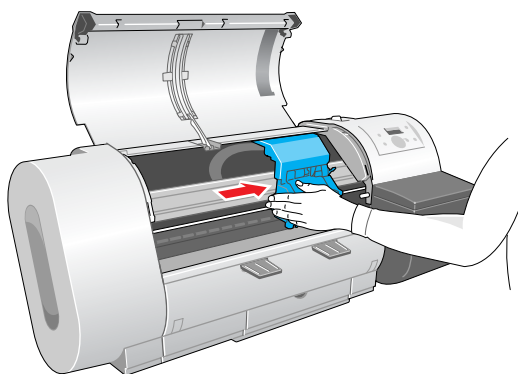
- 5** If the sheet is not visible, remove the jammed sheet from the back of the printer.



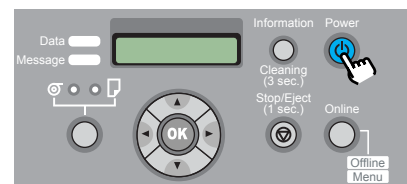
Visually inspect the interior to make sure that no pieces of the sheet remain in the printer.

- 6** If the carriage is on the left side, push it manually to the right side.

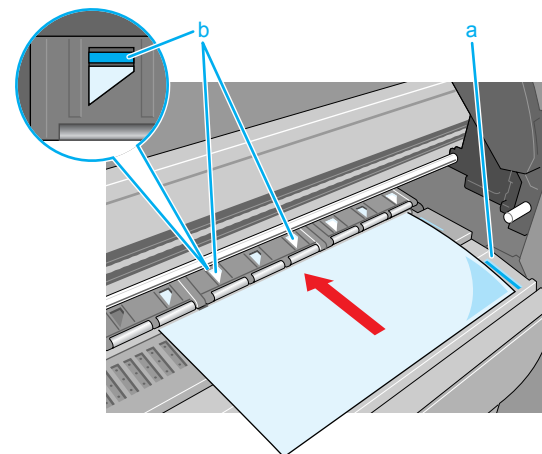
Push the carriage all the way to the right until it stops.



- 7** If the printer is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.



- 8** With the print side of the new sheet facing up, holding the sheet square between the paper restraints, making sure that the stack is aligned with the guideline (a) on the right and aligned with the guideline (b) at the back.



Important

- Be sure to push the carriage to the right. If you push it to the left, the printer may display a carriage error after the printer is switched on.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

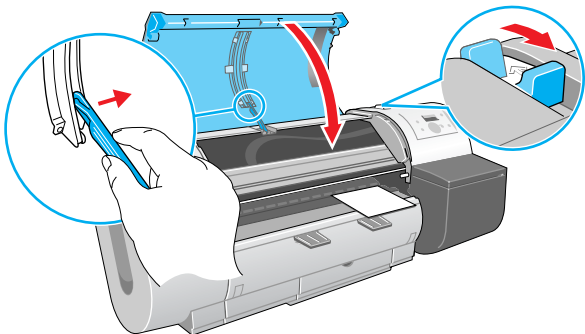
Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

9 Pull the release lever forward to close, raise the upper cover stopper and release the lock, then close the upper cover.



Cut sheet preparation begins. When preparation is finished, the printer is ready to print.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Updating the Firmware

By updating the firmware for this printer, you can add on new functions and improvements for existing functions.

Obtaining the Firmware Update

Contact a Canon service center, or the dealer where you purchased the printer, for details about how to obtain the most recent version of the firmware update.

Confirming the Firmware Version

Perform the procedure below to confirm the current version of the printer firmware before performing a firmware update. If the version of the firmware in use is older than the downloaded version, perform the firmware update.



Note

- If the version number of the printer is the same as or newer than the firmware update in hand, then you do not need to update the firmware.

- 1** If the printer power is off, press the **Power** button to switch the printer on.

After a few seconds **Online** is displayed in the operation panel and the Online lamp lights.

- 2** Press the **Online** button to display **MAIN MENU**.

- 3** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **Information** then press [▼].

MAIN MENU Information	↓
--------------------------	---

- 4** Press [◀] or [▶] to select **S/C: xx.xx.xx**.

Version S/C: xx.xx.xx

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 Driver

If you try to install the USB or IEEE1394 driver with the USB or IEEE1394 cable already connected to the printer, the driver may not be installed correctly.

In such a case, follow the procedure below to install the printer driver after reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 driver.

- 1** Right click the **My Computer** icon then select **Properties**.
- 2** On the **Hardware** sheet, click **Device Manager**. Next, in the **Device Manager** window click the **Unknown devices** icon then click the **Properties** button.
- 3** Click the **Device Manager** in the **Driver** sheet, the **Update Device Driver Wizard** opens, follow the instructions on the screen to complete the installation.
- 4** When the Wizard prompts you to select how to search for the driver source files, select only CD-ROM drive. Set the User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive then follow the instructions on the screen to install the interface driver.
- 5** Next, when the **Add New Hardware Wizard** opens, follow the instructions on the screen.

- 6** Select only **Specify a location** then click the **Browse** button.
- 7** Select the printer driver folder.
 - Windows Me/Windows 98
 - ▼ Open the CD-ROM Drive, open the appropriate language folder > **Drivers** > **WinMe_9X** > **Driver**, then click the **OK** button.
 - Windows server 2003/Windows XP/Windows 2000
 - ▼ Open the CD-ROM, open the appropriate language folder, then **Drivers** > **WinXP_2K** > **Driver** > **OK**.
- 8** Confirm that the correct folder has been selected for **Specify a location** then install the driver.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Uninstalling Software Applications

Follow the procedure below to delete the printer driver and software utility installed on the computer.

Important

- If you uninstall the software from Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, you must log in as a member of the Administrators group before the uninstallation.

Deleting the Printer Driver

Follow the procedure below to delete the printer driver for this printer.

■ Windows

Important

- If you uninstall the software from Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, Windows 2000, or Windows NT 4.0, you must log in as a member of the Administrators group before the uninstallation.

- 1** Click the **Start** button then select **Programs > Canon Printer Uninstaller > imagePROGRAF GARO Printer Driver Uninstaller**.

The **Delete Printer** screen appears.

- 2** Click the printer in the list you wish to delete, then click the **Delete** button.

A confirmation message appears.

- 3** Click the **Yes** button.

- 4** Confirm that the printer has been deleted from the list, then click the **Exit** button on the **Delete Printer** screen.

■ Macintosh

- 1** Mount the provided User Software CD-ROM in the CD-ROM drive.

- 2** Open the appropriate OS folder on the User Software CD-ROM.

For OS 8.6 or OS 9.x, in the **OS89** folder, open **GARO Installer for 8/9**.

For OS X, in the **OSX** folder, open **GARO Installer for X**.

- 3** In the upper left menu select **Uninstall** then click the **Uninstall** button.

- 4** Follow the messages on the screen to delete the **GARO Printer Driver**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Deleting the GARO Status Monitor

Follow this procedure to delete the GARO Status Monitor installed on Windows.

- 1** On the desktop click the **Start** button, point to **Programs**, click **GARO Status Monitor**, then select **Uninstaller (GARO Device Setup Utility)**.
- 2** When the selection screen appears, select then click the **Next** button.
GARO Status Monitor is deleted.
- 3** Follow the instructions on the screen to delete the **GARO Status Monitor**.

Deleting the GARO Device Setup Utility

Follow this procedure to delete the GARO Device Setup Utility installed on Windows.

- 1** Click the **Start** button then select **Programs > GARO Device Setup Utility > Uninstaller (GARO Device Setup Utility)**.
- 2** When the selection screen appears, select **Delete** then click the **Next** button.
- 3** Obey the instructions on the screen to delete the **GARO Device Setup Utility**.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 7 Operation of the Function Menus

Click on the checkbox to print the section contents.

Operating the Function Menus	7-2
Cutter Functions	7-3
When You Need to Cut Media	7-3
Replacing the Cutter	7-3
Media Functions	7-4
Changing the Media Type Settings	7-4
Printing to the Bottom Margin of the Original	7-5
Ink Functions	7-6
Replacing an Ink Tank During a Print Job	7-6
Changing the Black Ink Type	7-7
Print Quality Functions	7-8
Determining if the Printhead is Blocked	7-8
When the Printhead Nozzles Are Clogged	7-8
Correcting Image Offset	7-9
Correcting Horizontal Banding in Images	7-9
Printing to an Accurate Length	7-10
Printer Information Functions	7-11
Checking the Print Job History	7-11
Checking the Printer Settings Information	7-11
Checking the Media Type Settings Information	7-12
Checking the Printer Functions Menu	7-12

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

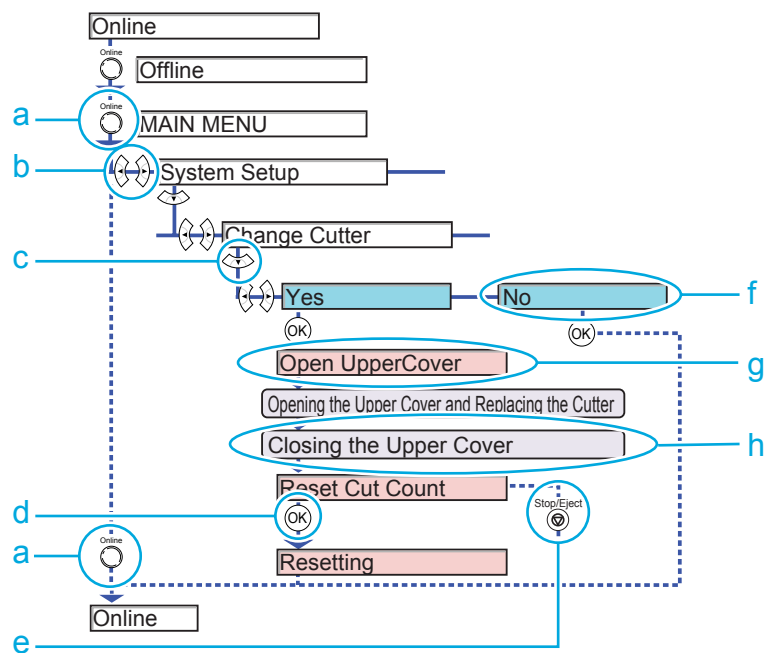
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Operating the Function Menus

This chapter introduces the commonly used functions of the printer function menus with task oriented procedures and message examples. The necessary procedures and various messages shown on the printer display appear in the diagrams.



	Press the Online button once. Also, pressing the Online button when using the menu cancels the setting before the OK button is pressed and returns the printer to the online mode (or offline standby mode for loading media).
	Press [◀] or [▶] repeatedly to display the items available for selection.
	Press [▼] once to go to the next level of the menu. Press [▲] to return to the previous level of the menu.
	Press OK once to select the currently displayed value for a setting, or to execute the selected item.
	Press Stop/Eject once to cancel execution.
	Denotes a value for a setting.
	Denotes a message on the display that appears as the result of an operation.
	Denotes any other action that should be performed but not on the printer operation panel.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

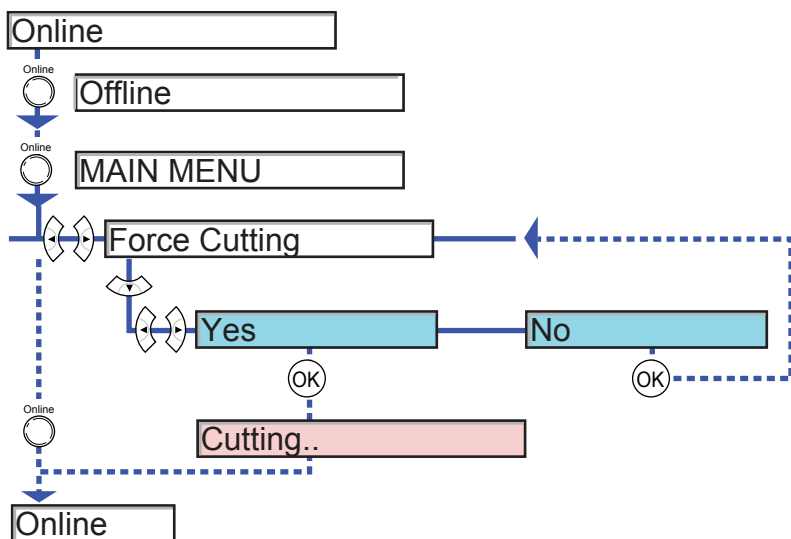
Index

Cutter Functions

The following cutter operations are provided in the printer function menus.

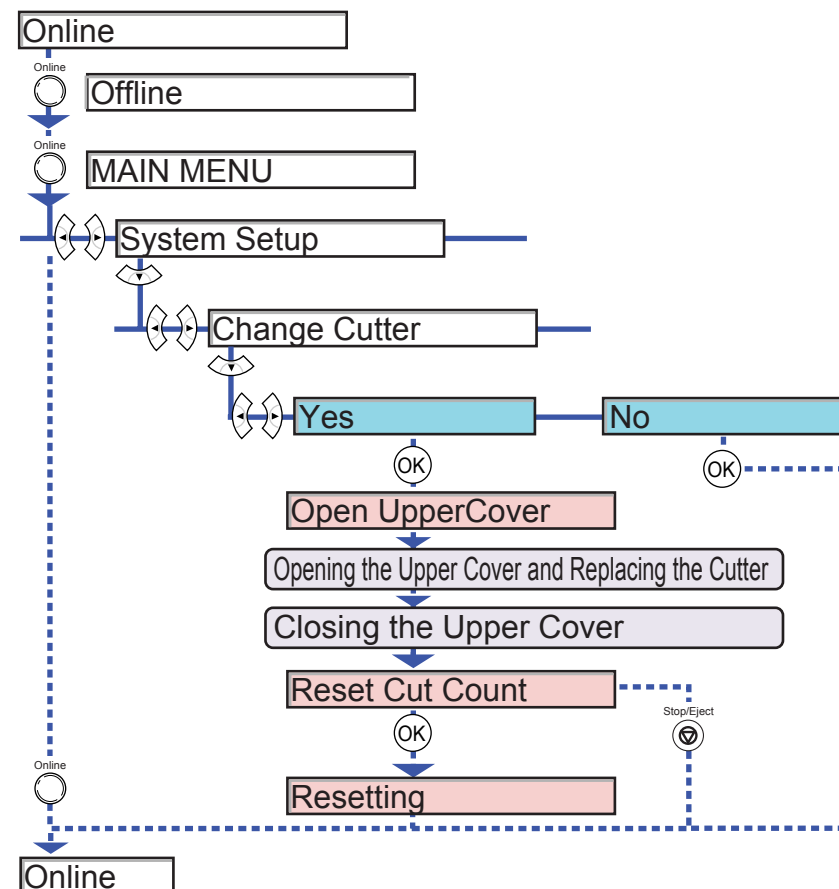
When You Need to Cut Media

Execute **Force Cutting** on the operation panel when you need to use the printer cutter to cut the media cleanly.



Replacing the Cutter

Execute **Change Cutter** on the operation panel when you need to replace the cutter. Reset the count for the number of sheets cut after the cutter has been replaced.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Media Functions

The following media settings are provided in the printer function menus.

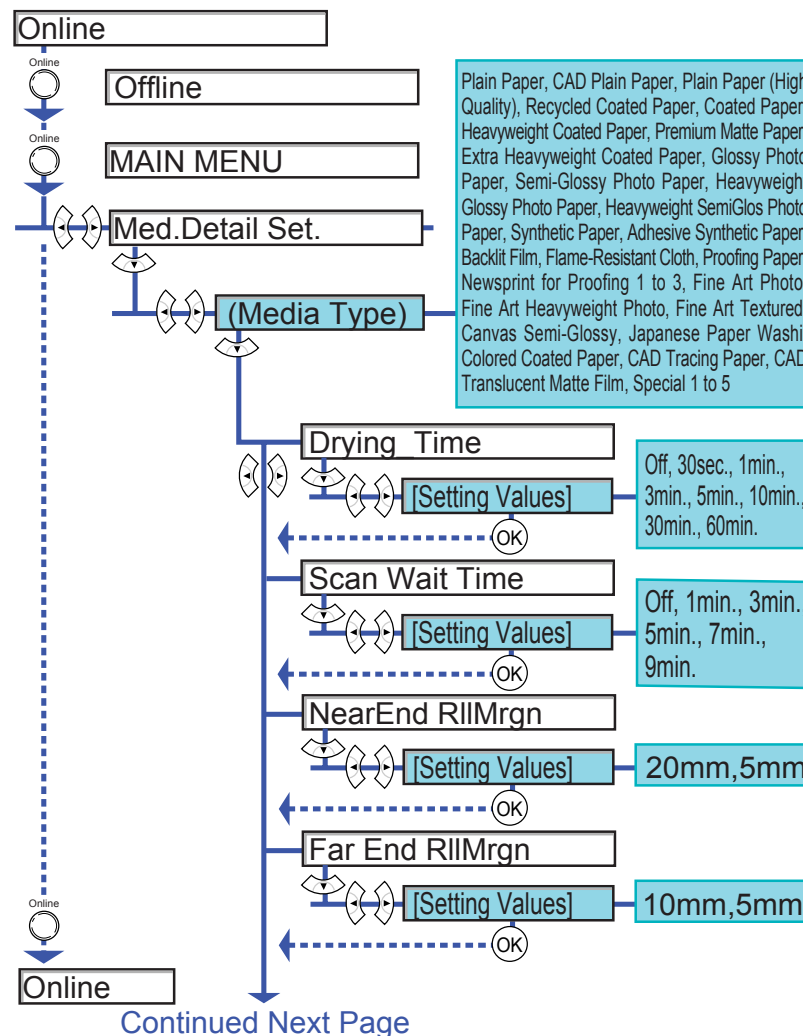
Changing the Media Type Settings

You can change the settings for each media type to match the print results and finish that you want.



Note

- Press the **OK** button to return to the previous level.
- Press the **Online** button to display **Online**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

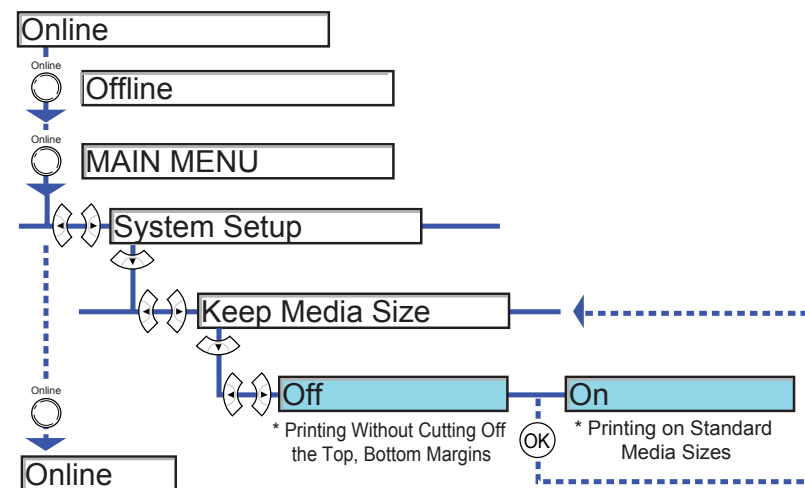
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

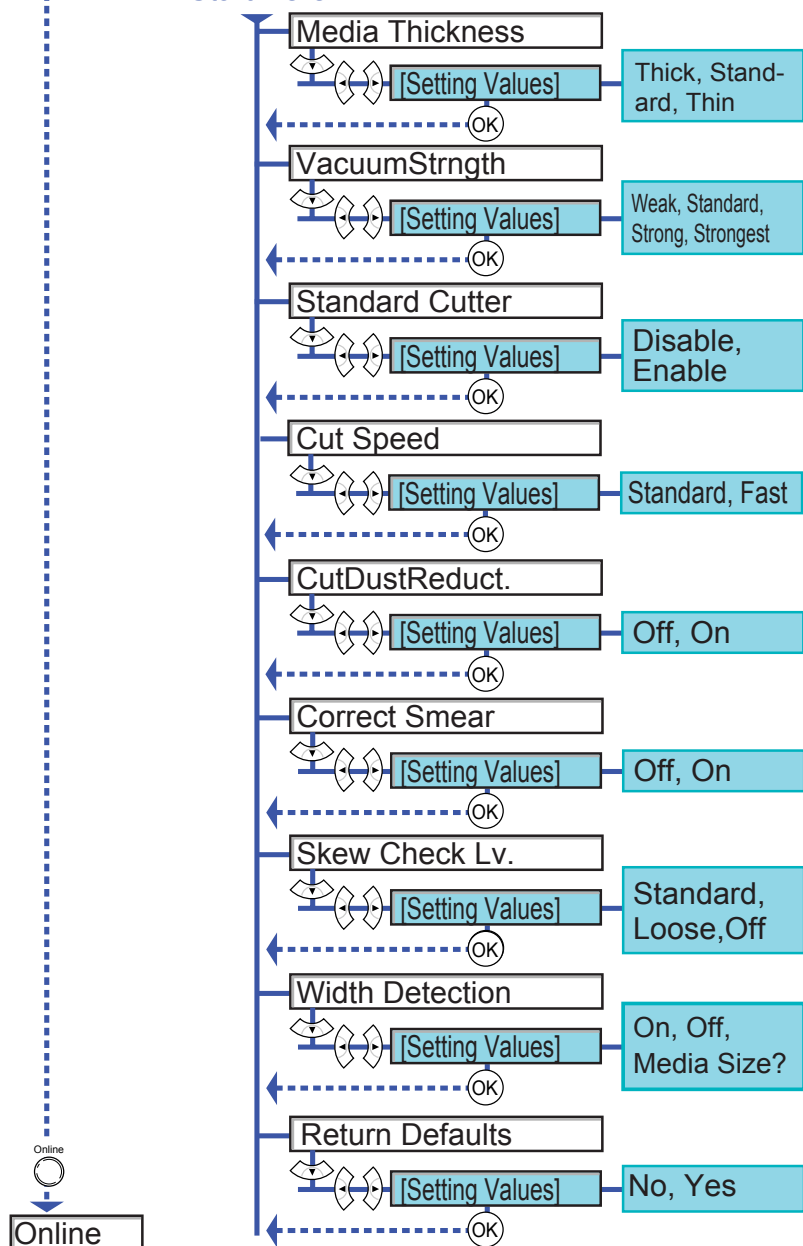
Index

Printing to the Bottom Margin of the Original

When printing on standard sizes, the images may occasionally be cut off at the top, bottom, left, or right margins, but if **Keep Media Size** is switched on then this ensures that the image will not be cut off at the top or bottom margins. However, the length of the finished image will be sized by the top and bottom margins.



Start Here

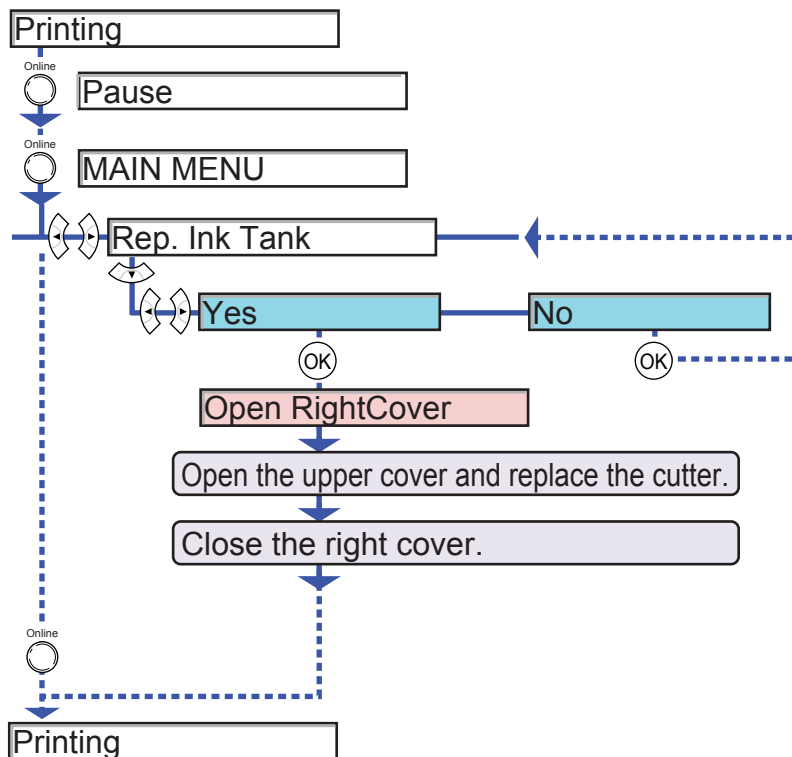


Ink Functions

The following ink operations are provided in the printer function menus.

Replacing an Ink Tank During a Print Job

Execute **Rep. Ink Tank** on the operation panel when you need to replace an ink tank during a print job.



* Printing restarts immediately as soon as the upper cover is closed after replacement.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

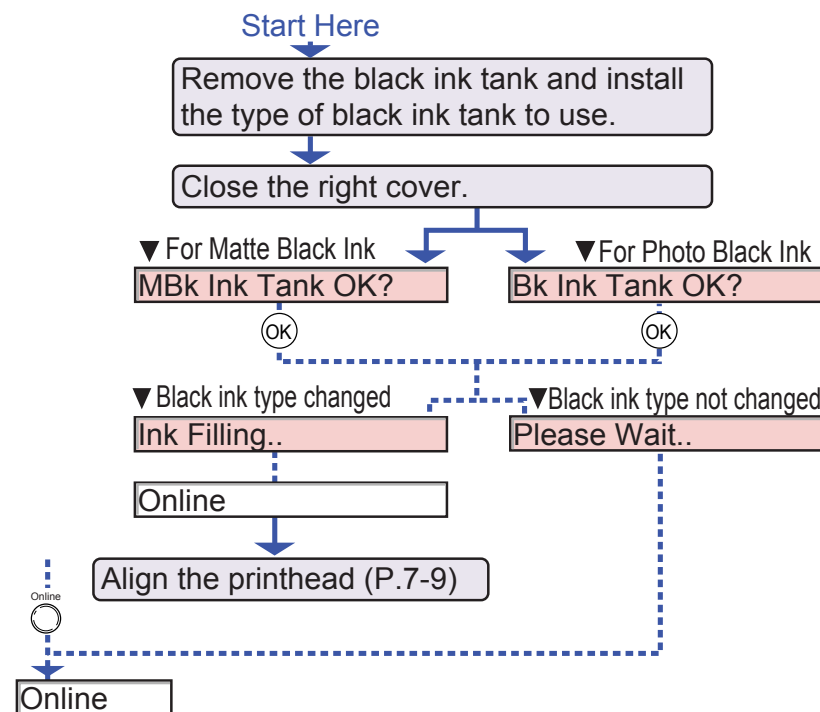
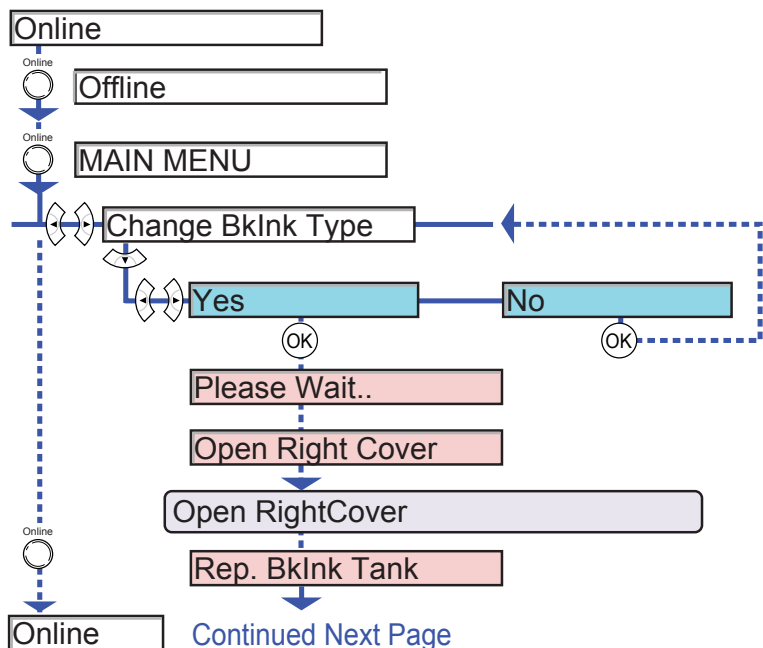
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Changing the Black Ink Type

This printer can use two types of black ink: Photo Black (Bk) and Matte Black (MBk). Execute **Change BkInk Type** to switch between the types of black ink and drain the black ink, and then install the new black ink tank.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

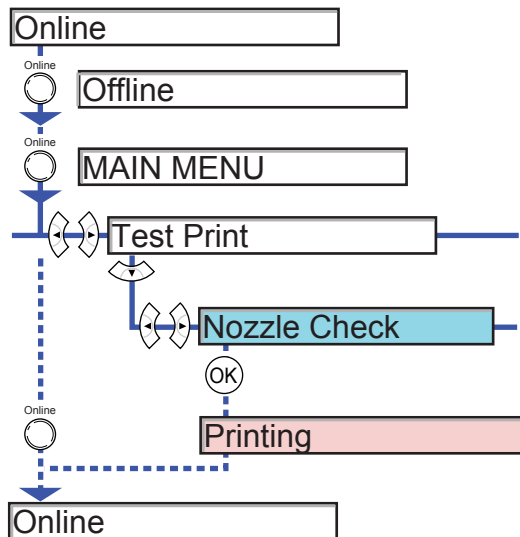
Index

Print Quality Functions

You can use the printer function menus to confirm the print quality settings and change the settings to recover poor printing results.

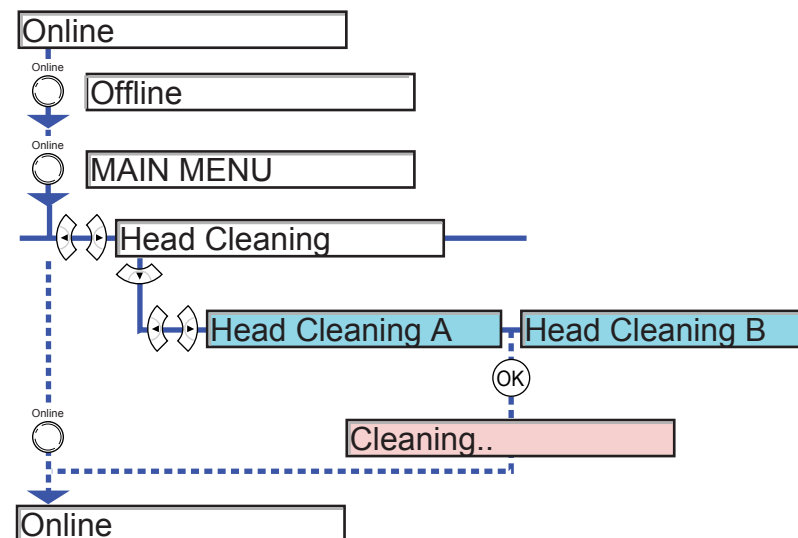
Determining if the Printhead is Blocked

You can print a **Nozzle Check** to check the condition of the printheads.



When the Printhead Nozzles Are Clogged

If the Nozzle Check reveals that the printheads are blocked, you can execute **Head Cleaning** to clear the blockage and recover operation of the printer. **Head Cleaning A** is for normal, everyday printhead cleaning and **Head Cleaning B** is used for scrupulous head cleaning. **Head Cleaning B** consumes a large amount of ink, so please always use **Head Cleaning A** unless **Head Cleaning B** is absolutely required.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

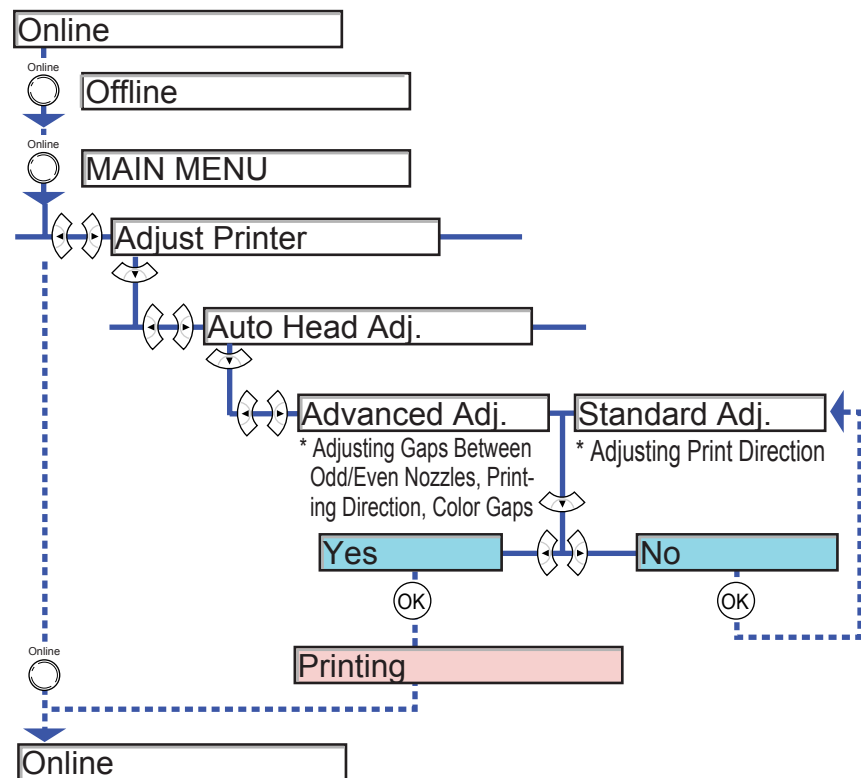
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Correcting Image Offset

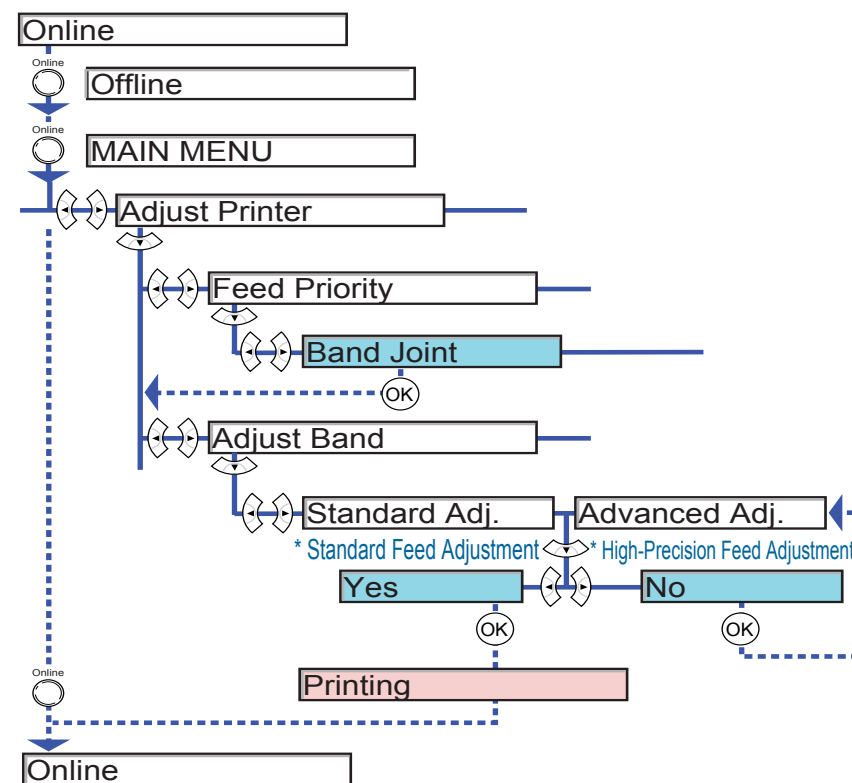
If vertical lines are bent, or when colors are faded and uneven, perform **Auto Head Adj.** to correct the position of the printhead. The printer reads the results of a printhead adjustment pattern as it prints and corrects the position of the printhead automatically.



Correcting Horizontal Banding in Images

Perform **Adjust Band** to adjust the amount of line feed and correct undesirable horizontal banding in printouts. The printer reads the results of a line feed adjustment pattern as it prints and corrects the amount of line feed automatically.

To adjust the amount of feed, select **Feed Priority > Band Joint** > then perform **Adjust Band**.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

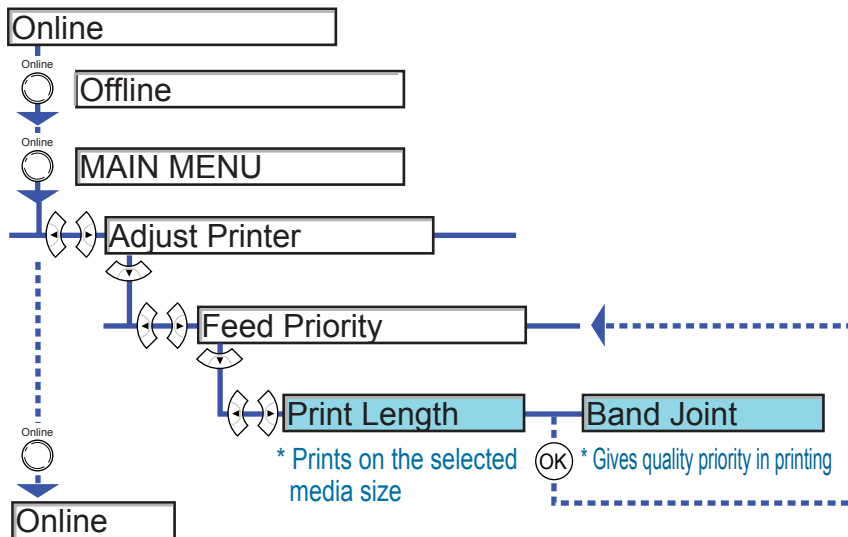
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printing to an Accurate Length

Perform **Feed Priority> PrintLength** to set the priority in the print job for the length when the length of the printout is very important to you. However, performing this setting may cause horizontal banding to appear in the prints. To set the priority for the quality of the print, perform the **Band Joint** setting.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

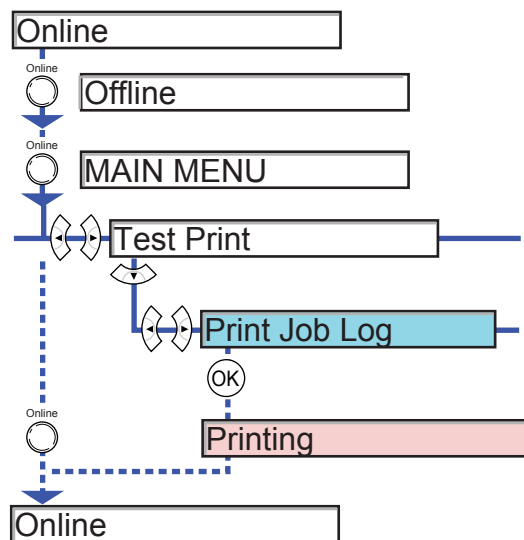
Index

Printer Information Functions

You can use the printer function menus to print information about print jobs and printer settings so you can check them.

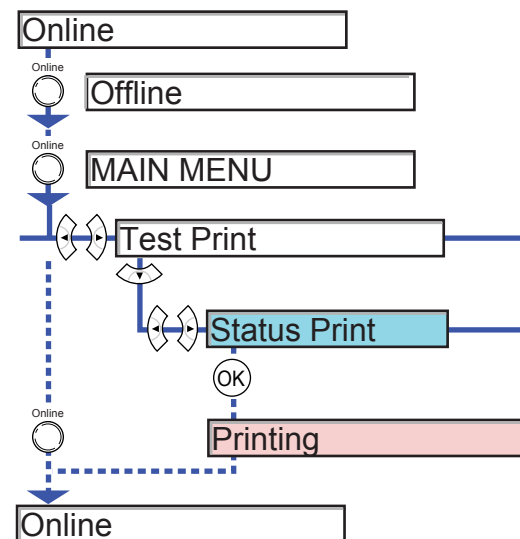
Checking the Print Job History

Perform **Print Job Log** to print information about print jobs so you can confirm how much ink was used for the jobs and other important information.



Checking the Printer Settings Information

Perform **Status Print** to print basic information about the printer and the settings of each function so you can check them.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

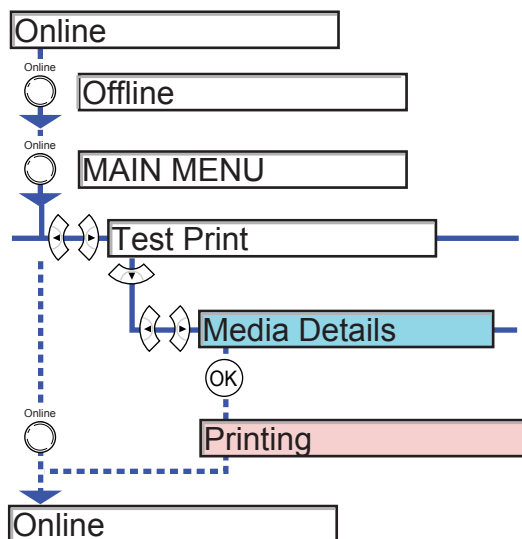
Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

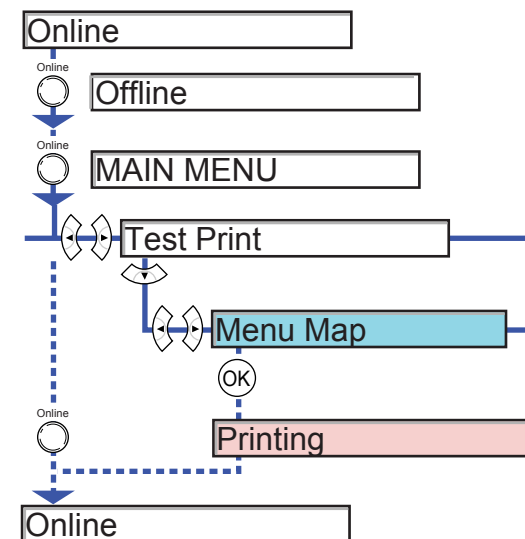
Checking the Media Type Settings Information

Perform **Media Details** to print the settings for each media type so you can check them.



Checking the Printer Functions Menu

Perform **Menu Map** so you can have a handy reference that shows you the items, levels, and sublevels of the printer function menus.



Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the Function Menus

Contents

Index

Contents

How to Use This Guide	ii
How to Use the Top Page	ii
How to Use the Chapter Contents Pages.....	iii

Chapter 1 Basic Procedures

Printer Part Names	1-2
Printer Main Unit.....	1-2
Switching the Printer On and Off	1-7
Switching the Printer On.....	1-7
Switching the Printer Off.....	1-8
Online and Offline.....	1-9
What's On the Operation Panel?	1-11
Viewing the Display	1-11
Using the Operation Panel Buttons	1-12
Reading Operation Panel Lamps	1-14
Function Menus	1-15
How to Perform Function Menu Settings.....	1-17
Menu Settings Summary Tables	1-19
Printer Driver	1-32
Printer Driver Features	1-32
Main Sheet	1-35
Page Setup Sheet	1-37
Layout Sheet	1-38
Maintenance Sheet.....	1-39
Printing	1-40
Printing From Windows	1-40
Printing from a Macintosh.....	1-42

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Canceling a Print Job	1-46
Canceling a Print Job from Windows.....	1-46
Canceling a Print Job from Macintosh.....	1-47
Options	1-52
Consumables	1-53
Specifications	1-56
Basic Environmental Performance	1-59

Chapter 2 Using a Variety of Media

Media You Can Use	2-2
The Suitable Black Ink for Media.....	2-2
Paper Type.....	2-4
Media Size.....	2-18
Original data the same as the media.....	2-20
Handling Paper and Other Print Media.....	2-25
Printing with Rolls	2-26
Loading Roll Media.....	2-26
Removing a Roll	2-33
Printing with Cut Sheets	2-35
Loading Cut Sheets.....	2-35
Removing a Cut Sheet	2-39
Adjusting the Height of the Printhead	2-40
Adjusting Printhead Height.....	2-40
Aligning the Printhead	2-42
Re-adjusting Printhead Height.....	2-42

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 3 Printing Methods for Different Objectives

Printing from Windows	3-2
Before You Begin	3-2
Enlarging and Reducing the Original.....	3-6
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-13
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-22
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-24
Printing Posters (Page Layout).....	3-26
Using Watermarks	3-28
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-30
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-38
Custom Print Quality.....	3-39
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing.....	3-42
About Media Size Options	3-51
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean.....	3-56
Software Provided for Windows	3-56
Printing from Macintosh	3-59
Before You Begin	3-59
Enlarging and Reducing the Original.....	3-65
Printing Photos and Illustrations without Borders (Borderless Printing)	3-77
Rotating the Page 90 Degrees for Printing (Conserve Paper)	3-86
Printing Several Pages on One Sheet (Page Layout)	3-89
Printing Posters (Page Layout)	3-92
Vertical and Horizontal Banner Printing (Long Prints)	3-94
Printing without Top and Bottom Margins (Conserve Paper)	3-100
Custom Print Quality.....	3-103
Fine Adjusting Color for Printing.....	3-107
Custom Sizes (User Print Settings)	3-121
When the Printout Quality Is Not Clean.....	3-125
Software Provided for Macintosh.....	3-126

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 4 Maintaining the Printer

Replacing Ink Tanks	4-2
How to Confirm Ink Levels.....	4-2
When to Replace an Ink Tank	4-3
Ink Tank Handling Precautions.....	4-4
Replacing an Ink Tank.....	4-5
Cautions About Using Refilled Ink Tanks for This Printer	4-8
Switching the Ink Level Detection Function Off	4-8
Executing a Print Job.....	4-9
Cleaning the Printer	4-10
Cleaning the Exterior Covers.....	4-10
Cleaning Inside the Upper Cover	4-11
Cleaning the Paper Restraint	4-14
Replacing the Maintenance Cartridge	4-16
Checking Spacing Remaining in the Maintenance Cartridge	4-16
When to Replace the Maintenance Cartridge.....	4-17
Maintenance Cartridge Handling Precautions	4-18
Maintenance Cartridge Replacement Procedure	4-18
Replacing the Printhead	4-23
Printhead Handling Precautions	4-23
How to Replace the Printhead.....	4-24
Replacing the Cutter Blade	4-29
Transporting the Printer	4-32
Checking the Condition of the Printer	4-36
Cleaning the Printhead	4-38
Types of Printhead Cleaning	4-38
Printhead Cleaning Procedures.....	4-38
Aligning the Printhead	4-40

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Adjusting Amount of Media Feed	4-42
Media Feed Adjustment Procedure	4-42
Adjusting Line Feed Manually	4-43
Reducing the Amount of Cutting Dust	4-45
Changing the Black Ink Type	4-47
Black Ink Tank Exchange Procedure	4-48

Chapter 5 Using the Printer in a Network Environment

Before Using the Printer	5-2
Required System Environment.....	5-2
The Network Environment.....	5-3
TCP/IP Network Settings (Windows, Macintosh, UNIX)	5-5
Procedures Required for a TCP/IP Network.....	5-5
Connecting the LAN Cable.....	5-5
Setting the Printer IP Address	5-7
Performing the TCP/IP Protocol Settings	5-15
Setting the Printer for Sharing	5-18
Macintosh Network Settings	5-20
Procedures Required for a Macintosh Network.....	5-20
Setting a Macintosh.....	5-21
Setting AppleTalk Protocol	5-25
Install the Printer Driver.....	5-31
NetWare Settings (Windows)	5-33
Procedures Required for a NetWare Network.....	5-33
Setting the Printer Frame Type	5-34
Setting Up a NetWare Print Service	5-37
Setting NetWare Protocol.....	5-40
Setting the Computer for NetWare	5-44
Printing with UNIX	5-45
Using LPD to Print.....	5-45
Using FTP to Print.....	5-46

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Initializing the Settings	5-47
List of Network Settings	5-48
Software Applications that can be used for Network Settings	5-51

Chapter 6 Troubleshooting

Responding to Error Messages	6-2
Operation Panel Message List	6-3
Media Messages	6-4
Ink Messages	6-11
Other Messages	6-14
When You Cannot Print	6-18
Printing Will Not Start	6-18
Printing Halts During Print Job	6-21
Cannot Print on Network	6-22
Unexpected Printing Results	6-27
Poor Quality	6-28
Abnormal Content	6-31
Other Problems	6-34
Handling Jams	6-35
Removing a Roll Media Jam	6-35
Removing a Cut Sheet Jam	6-38
Updating the Firmware	6-41
Obtaining the Firmware Update	6-41
Confirming the Firmware Version	6-41
Reinstalling the USB or IEEE1394 Driver	6-42
Uninstalling Software Applications	6-43
Deleting the Printer Driver	6-43
Deleting the GARO Status Monitor	6-44
Deleting the GARO Device Setup Utility	6-44

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Chapter 7 Operation of the Function Menus

Operating the Function Menus	7-2
Cutter Functions	7-3
When You Need to Cut Media.....	7-3
Replacing the Cutter.....	7-3
Media Functions	7-4
Changing the Media Type Settings	7-4
Printing to the Bottom Margin of the Original.....	7-5
Ink Functions	7-6
Replacing an Ink Tank During a Print Job.....	7-6
Changing the Black Ink Type.....	7-7
Print Quality Functions	7-8
Determining if the Printhead is Blocked.....	7-8
When the Printhead Nozzles Are Clogged.....	7-8
Correcting Image Offset	7-9
Correcting Horizontal Banding in Images	7-9
Printing to an Accurate Length	7-10
Printer Information Functions	7-11
Checking the Print Job History	7-11
Checking the Printer Settings Information.....	7-11
Checking the Media Type Settings Information.....	7-12
Checking the Printer Functions Menu	7-12
Contents	C-1
Index	I-1
Regulations for this product	I-7

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Index

Numerics

- ◀ button 1-13
- ▶ button 1-13
- ▲ button 1-13
- ▼ button 1-13

A

- Accessory pocket 1-3
- Adhesive Synthetic Paper 2-11
- Adjust Band 4-42
- Adjusting Printhead Height 2-40
- Administrator mode 5-16, 5-26, 5-40
- AppleTalk 1-43, 5-2, 5-4, 5-21, 6-23
- AppleTalk phase 5-9
- AppleTalk settings 5-49
- ARP/PING command 5-7, 5-10, 5-51

B

- Backlit Film 2-12
- Banner printing 3-30, 3-94
- Banners 3-30, 3-94
- Basic Environmental Performance 1-59
- Bindery 5-37
- Black Ink 2-2, 4-47, 7-7
- Border line 3-25, 3-91
- Borderless Printing 2-22, 3-13, 3-77
 - Basic operations 3-13, 3-78
 - Fit Roll Paper Width 3-17, 3-83
 - Print Image with Actual Size 3-20
 - Required settings 3-13, 3-77
- Borderless printing ink groove 4-12

C

- CAD Plain Paper 2-5
- CAD Tracing Paper 2-17
- CAD Translucent Matte Film 2-17
- Canceling a Background Print Job 1-47
- Canceling a Foreground Print Job 1-50
- Canceling a Print Job
 - Macintosh 1-47
 - Windows 1-46
- Canon imagePROGRAF HDI Printer Driver 3-58
- Canvas SemiGlos 2-15
- Carriage 1-5, 4-31, 6-36, 6-37
 - Part names 1-5
- Carriage cover 1-5, 4-25
- Carriage rail 1-4
- Chooser 1-42
- Cleaner brush 4-12
- Cleaning exterior covers 4-10
- Coated paper 2-7
- Color Adjustment 3-42, 3-107
- Color Matching 3-46, 3-113
- Color Mode 3-43, 3-108
- Colored Coated Paper 2-16
- Confirming print job status 4-36
- Conserve Paper 3-22, 3-38, 3-82, 3-86, 3-88, 3-100
- Consumables 1-53
- Cookies 5-15, 5-25, 5-40
- Custom Media Settings 3-121
- Custom Size Settings 3-32
- Custom Sizes 3-51, 3-96, 3-121, 3-123

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Cut Sheet	2-19
Cut Sheet lamp	1-14, 2-35
Cut Sheets	1-53, 2-35
Jams	6-38
Cutter	7-3
Replace	7-3
Cutter Blade	1-5, 1-55, 4-29, 4-30
Cutter dust reduction function	4-45
Cutter position adjustment dial	4-30
Cutting groove	1-2

D

Data lamp	1-14
Default G/W	5-14
Device Management	5-16, 5-26, 5-29, 5-41
Device Status Extension	3-57
Digital Photo Print Pro	3-58
Display	1-11
Display Series	3-55, 3-124
DSE	5-19

E

Enhance Text With Photos	3-42, 3-106
Enlarged/Reduced Printing	3-6, 3-65
Fit Media Size	3-7, 3-65
Fit Roll Paper Width	3-9, 3-69
Specify Scaling	3-11, 3-73
Ethernet	5-22, 5-23, 5-24
Expansion board slot	1-3
Extra Heavyweight Coated Paper	2-8

F

Feed adjustment	4-42, 7-9
Feed Priority	7-10

Fine Art Heavyweight Photo	2-14
Fine Art Photo	2-14
Fine Art Textured	2-15
Fit Roll Paper Width	3-30, 3-94
Flame-Resistant Cloth	2-12
Function Menu	
Flow Summaries	1-15
Function menus	7-12

G

GARO Device Setup Utility	3-57, 5-7, 5-34, 5-51
Deleting	6-44
Installing	5-7
GARO Printer Driver	1-42
GARO Printmonitor	3-126
GARO Status Monitor	1-46, 3-56
Deleting	6-44
Gateway address	5-12
General Controls	5-48
Glossy Photo Paper	2-9

H

Halftones	3-42, 3-106
HDI Printer Driver	3-58
Head Cleaning	7-8
Heavyweight coated paper	2-7
Heavyweight Glossy Photo Paper	2-10
Heavyweight SemiGlos Photo Paper	2-10
Holder stopper	1-3, 2-27
How to Perform Function Menu Settings	1-17

I

IEEE1394	1-52
IEEE1394 Expansion Board	1-52

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

IIS5-19
 imagePROGRAF Print Plug-In for Photoshop
 3-58, 3-126
 imagePROGRAF Printer Driver 2005 3-56, 3-126
 Information button 1-13
 Ink capacity4-2
 Ink level detection4-8
 Ink replacement7-6
 Ink Tank Cover 1-6, 4-6
 Ink Tanks 1-6, 1-54, 4-2, 4-7, 4-33
 Handling precautions4-4
 Ink replacement time4-3
 Procedures4-5
 IP address 5-7, 5-11, 5-13

J

Jams6-35
 Japanese Paper Washi2-16
 JavaScript 5-15, 5-25, 5-40

L

LAN cable5-5
 LAN port 1-52, 5-5
 Layout 3-24, 3-26, 3-89, 3-90, 3-92
 Layout Sheet 1-38
 Lift handles 1-3
 Loading Cut Sheets2-36
 Loading the Roll Media2-27
 LPR Port3-57

M

MAC address 5-10, 5-11
 Mac OS 8.6/9.x 1-42, 1-47, 5-21, 5-23
 Mac OS X 1-43, 1-49, 5-22, 5-24

Macintosh 5-4, 5-21, 6-43
 MAIN MENU 1-16
 Main Menu 1-19
 Main Sheet 1-35
 Maintenance cartridge 1-2, 1-54
 Replacement procedure4-18
 When to replace4-17
 Maintenance cartridge capacity4-16
 Maintenance cartridge cover 1-2
 Maintenance Sheet 1-39
 Managing the printer5-15
 Matching Mode3-50, 3-117
 Matte Black Ink2-2, 4-47
 Media2-2
 Troubleshooting6-35
 Media Configuration Tool3-58, 3-127
 Media Detailed Settings3-56, 3-125
 Media Size2-18, 2-20, 3-54, 3-55, 3-123, 3-124
 Media Size Options 3-32, 3-51, 3-121
 Media size series3-124
 Media Type
 Settings 2-30, 2-38, 7-4
 Media Type details7-12
 Menu Map7-12
 Menu Settings Summary Tables 1-19
 Message lamp 1-14
 Messages6-2
 Multicast DNS5-29, 5-49

N

NDS5-37
 NetSpot Console3-57
 NetWare5-37, 6-25

Chapter 1
 Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
 Using a Variety of
 Media

Chapter 3
 Printing Methods for
 Different Objectives

Chapter 4
 Maintaining the
 Printer

Chapter 5
 Using the Printer in a
 Network Environ-
 ment

Chapter 6
 Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
 Operation of the
 Function Menus

Contents

Index

NetWare frame type	5-35
NetWare print service	5-37
NetWare settings	5-49
Printer operation panel	5-35
Network environment	5-3
Network information settings	
GARO Device Setup Utility	5-8
Printer operation panel	5-12, 5-30
Network initial settings	5-47
Network settings	5-48
Newsprint for Proofing	2-13
No Spaces at Top or Bottom (Conserve Paper)	
.....	3-38, 3-82, 3-100
Novell Directory Service	5-37
Nozzle Check	7-8
Nozzle check print	4-36
NWADMIN	5-38

O

OK button	1-13
Online button	1-12
Online lamp	1-14
Operating the Printer	
Macintosh	1-45
Windows	1-40
Operation Panel	1-2, 1-11
Operation Panel Buttons	1-12
Operation Panel Lamps	1-14
Options	1-52
OS	5-2
Output assist guides	1-2, 4-12
Output guides	4-12
Output stacker	1-2

Oversize	2-23, 3-55
----------------	------------

P

Page Setup Sheet	1-37
Page Size	3-55, 3-124
PageComposer	3-5
Paper Design	3-96, 3-124
Paper restraint	1-4, 4-14
Paper Source	2-35
Paper Source button	1-13, 2-26
Paper Type	2-4
PCONSOLE	5-38
Phase Type	5-27
Photo Black Ink	2-2, 4-47
ping	5-12
Plain paper	2-5
Plain Paper (High Quality)	2-6
Platen	1-4, 2-35, 4-12
Port settings	5-44
Poster Printing	3-26, 3-92
PosterArtist	3-57
Power button	1-7, 1-8, 1-12
Power connector	1-3
Premium Matte Paper	2-8
Preview	
Print Preview	3-5, 3-64
Settings Preview	3-4, 3-62
Print Centered	3-12, 3-76
Print Job Log	7-11
Print Media	1-53
Print Plug-In for Photoshop	3-58, 3-126
Print quality	3-39, 3-103, 3-105

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Printer	
Cleaning	4-10
Part Names	1-2
Specifications	1-56
Printer driver	1-32, 1-40, 1-42, 5-31, 5-44
Deleting	6-43
Printer Driver 2005	3-56, 3-126
Printer Function Priorities	1-15
Printer names	5-27
Printer operation panel	5-7, 5-25, 5-51
Printer protocol settings	3-120, 5-25
Printer server	5-18
Printer Setup Utility	1-43
Printer sharing	5-18
Printhead	1-54, 4-23, 4-26
Adjustment	4-40
Cleaning	4-38
Handling precautions	4-23
Position adjustment	4-40
Replacement procedure	4-24
Printhead adjustment	7-9
Printhead cleaning	
Procedure	4-38
Types	4-38
Printhead height	2-40
Printhead height adjustment lever	1-5, 2-41
Printhead lock cover	1-5, 4-26
Printhead lock lever	1-5, 4-26
Printing multiple pages on 1 sheet	3-24, 3-89
Printing types of jobs	3-2, 3-59
Profiles	3-61
Proofing Paper	2-13
Proxy server	5-15, 5-25, 5-40
<hr/>	
Q	
Queue server mode	5-37
<hr/>	
R	
Recycled Coated Paper	2-6
Release lever	1-3, 2-36, 6-36, 6-38
Remote printer mode	5-37
Remote UI	3-57, 3-126, 5-15, 5-25, 5-40, 5-47, 5-51
Replaceable Printhead	1-5
Resolution	3-41, 3-106
Resume Printing	1-48
Right cover	1-2, 1-6, 4-7, 4-48
Roll holder	1-3
Roll Holder Sets	1-52
Roll holder slot	1-3
Roll Media	2-18, 2-26
Roll Media lamp	1-14, 2-26
Roll Media Sizes	1-53
Roll Paper	
Jams	6-35
Rotate Page 90 Degrees (Conserve Paper)	
.....	3-22, 3-86, 3-88
<hr/>	
S	
Selecting the Media Type	2-32
Selecting the Paper Source	2-26, 2-35
Selecting the Printer	1-42
SemiGlos Photo Paper	2-9
Setup Menu	5-7
Shaft cleaner	4-21
Sheet holder	2-37
Software applications	5-51, 6-43
Stand	1-2

Chapter 1
Basic ProceduresChapter 2
Using a Variety of
MediaChapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different ObjectivesChapter 4
Maintaining the
PrinterChapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
mentChapter 6
TroubleshootingChapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Status Print 5-10, 7-11
 Stop button 1-46, 1-48, 1-50
 Stop/Eject button 1-13
 Stopper 1-2
 Sub Menus 1-16, 1-31
 Subnet Mask 5-12, 5-13
 Switching the Printer Off 1-8
 Switching the Printer On 1-7
 Synthetic Paper 2-11

T

TCP/IP 5-2, 5-3, 5-23, 6-22
 TCP/IP settings 5-48
 Transporting the printer 4-32
 Troubleshooting 6-27
 Type 1-53

U

Upper cover
 1-2, 1-5, 2-36, 2-41, 4-11, 4-25, 4-30, 6-35, 6-38
 Cleaning inside the printer 4-11
 Names of parts inside the printer 1-4
 Upper cover handles 4-12
 Upper cover rollers 4-12
 Upper cover stopper 1-4
 USB port 1-3

V

Vertical banners 3-30, 3-94

W

Watermark printing 3-28
 Web browser 5-15, 5-25, 5-47, 5-51
 Windows 1-40, 5-3, 6-43
 Windows 2000 5-18

Windows NT 5-18
 Windows XP 5-18

Z

Zeroconf 5-23
 Zeroconf function 5-21, 5-29, 5-48
 Zone 5-28

Chapter 1
 Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
 Using a Variety of
 Media

Chapter 3
 Printing Methods for
 Different Objectives

Chapter 4
 Maintaining the
 Printer

Chapter 5
 Using the Printer in a
 Network Environ-
 ment

Chapter 6
 Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
 Operation of the
 Function Menus

Contents

Index

Regulations for this product

FCC Regulations

Canon Large Format Printer, Model K90049

IEEE1394 Expansion Board EB-04, Model K90050

Network Interface Board NB-15FB, Model K90051

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Use of shielded cable is required to comply with Class B limits in Subpart B of Part 15 of FCC Rules.

Do not make any changes or modifications to the equipment unless otherwise specified in the manual. If such changes or modifications should be made, you could be required to stop operation of the equipment.

Canon U.S.A. Inc.

One Canon Plaza, Lake Success, NY 11042, U.S.A.

Tel No. 516-328-5600

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

Canadian Radio Interference Regulations

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class B limits for radio noise emissions from digital apparatus as set out in the interference-causing equipment standard entitled “Digital Apparatus”, ICES-003 of the Industry and Science Canada.

Cet appareil numérique respecte les limites de bruits radioélectriques applicables aux appareils numérique de Classe B prescrites dans la norme sur le matériel brouiller: “Appareils Numériques”, NMB-003 édictée par l’Industrie et Sciences Canada.

International ENERGY STAR® Program

As an ENERGY STAR® Partner, Canon Inc. has determined that this product meets the ENERGY STAR® guidelines for energy efficiency. The international ENERGY STAR® Office Equipment Program is a global program that promotes energy saving through the use of computers and other office equipment. The program backs the development and dissemination of products with functions that effectively reduce energy consumption. It is an open system in which businesses can participate voluntarily. The targeted products are office equipment such as computers, monitors, printers, facsimiles, and copiers. Their standards and logos are uniform among participating nations.



Trademarks

Canon, the Canon logo, imagePROGRAF, imagePROGRAF logo, NetSpot, Font Gallery, and Font Composer are trademarks of Canon Inc.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT® and MS-DOS® are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple, AppleTalk, EtherTalk, LocalTalk, and Macintosh are trademarks of Apple Computer, Inc. in the United States.

NetWare and Novell are registered trademarks of Novell, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

NDS, NDPS, NLM and Novell Client are trademarks of Novell, Inc. in the United States.

Other brand and product names may be trademarks or registered trademarks of their respective companies.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index

各安全規格マーク / 宣言文に関するご注意

各安全規格マーク / 宣言文は、それぞれ該当する国 / 地域の電圧 / 周波数にのみ有効です。

Caution for each safety standard mark and declaration

Each safety standard mark and declaration is valid only for the voltage and frequency of the respective country or territory where it applies.

Attention pour le chaque marque et déclaration de norme de sécurité

Chaque marque et déclaration de norme de sécurité est valable pour la tension et fréquence du pays ou territoire respectif où elle est applicable.

Attenzione a ciascuna norma, marchio e dichiarazione di sicurezza

Ciascuna norma, marchio e dichiarazione di sicurezza è valida solamente per il voltaggio e frequenza del rispettivo paese o territorio nel quale viene applicata.



EU WEEE 指令マークに関するご注意

このマークは EU WEEE 指令 (2002/96/EC) に基づく分別回収対象製品であることを示し、EU 域内においてのみ有効である。



Caution for the WEEE symbol

This symbol indicates separate collection for electrical and electronic equipment required under the WEEE Directive (Directive 2002/96/EC) and is effective only within the European Union.



Attention pour le symbole WEEE

Ce symbole indique la collecte séparé des équipements électriques et électroniques requises par la Directive WEEE (Directive 2002/96/EC) et n'est applicable qu'au sein de l'Union européenne.



Attenzione al simbolo WEEE

Il presente simbolo indica la raccolta differenziata per gli apparecchi elettrici ed elettronici, prescritta dalla Direttiva WEEE (Direttiva 2002/96/EC) ed è valida solamente entro l'Unione Europea.

Achtung für jede Sicherheitskennzeichnung und -erklärung

Jede Sicherheitskennzeichnung und -erklärung gilt nur für die Spannung und Frequenz des jeweiligen Landes oder Gebiets, in dem sie gültig ist.

Atención con cada marca y declaración de la norma de seguridad

Cada marca y declaración de la norma de seguridad es válida sólo para el voltaje y la frecuencia del país y territorio en la que sea aplicable.

注意各安全标准的标志和说明

各安全标准的标志和说明仅对各个国家或地区适用的电压和频率有效。

조심 각 안전규격 심볼 그리고 강령에 관한 주의

각각의 안전 기준 마크 그리고 강령은 적용되는 해당 국가 또는 지역의 전압 그리고 주파수에만 유효합니다.



Achtung für das WEEE-Symbol

Dieses Symbol weist auf die durch die WEEE-Richtlinie (Richtlinie 2002/96/EC) vorgeschriebene getrennte Sammlung von elektrischen und elektronischen Altgeräten hin und gilt nur innerhalb der Europäischen Union.



Atención con el símbolo WEEE

Este símbolo indica una recogida diferente para el equipo eléctrico y el electrónico de conformidad con la Directiva WEEE (Directiva 2002/96/EC), aplicable sólo en la Unión Europea.



注意符号表示按照 WEEE 指令

该符号表示按照 WEEE 指令 (废弃电气电子设备指令) (指令 2002/96/EC) 的要求对电气和电子设备进行分类收集, 仅在欧盟范围内有效。



조심 지시 심볼에 관한 주의

이 심볼은 WEEE 지시문서 (지시문서 2002/96/EC) 에 명기된 전기 및 전기 기기용 분별 수거를 가리키며 유럽연합내에서만 유효합니다.

Chapter 1
Basic Procedures

Chapter 2
Using a Variety of
Media

Chapter 3
Printing Methods for
Different Objectives

Chapter 4
Maintaining the
Printer

Chapter 5
Using the Printer in a
Network Environ-
ment

Chapter 6
Troubleshooting

Chapter 7
Operation of the
Function Menus

Contents

Index